Advances in CLINICAL CHEMISTRY

VOLUME 45

Edited by

Gregory S. Makowski

ADVANCES IN CLINICAL CHEMISTRY

VOLUME 45

This page intentionally left blank

Advances in CLINICAL CHEMISTRY

Edited by

GREGORY S. MAKOWSKI

Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
Hartford Hospital
Hartford, Connecticut

VOLUME 45

ELSEVIER

AMSTERDAM • BOSTON • HEIDELBERG • LONDON
NEW YORK • OXFORD • PARIS • SAN DIEGO
SAN FRANCISCO • SINGAPORE • SYDNEY • TOKYO
Academic Press is an imprint of Elsevier

Academic Press is an imprint of Elsevier
30 Corporate Drive, Suite 400, Burlington, MA 01803, USA
525 B Street, Suite 1900, San Diego, California 92101-4495, USA
84 Theobald's Road, London WC1X 8RR, UK

This book is printed on acid-free paper. ♾

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Application Submitted

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

ISBN: 978-0-12-374208-7

For information on all Academic Press publications
visit our Web site at www.books.elsevier.com

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA
08 09 10 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

CONTENTS

CONTRIBUTORS ix

PREFACE xiii

Inhibins as Diagnostic Markers in Human Reproduction
ANASTASIA TSIGKOU, STEFANO LUISI, FERNANDO M. REIS, AND FELICE PETRAGLIA

1. Abstract 1
2. History and Background 2
3. Inhibins in Women's Reproductive Function 6
4. Pregnancy 12
5. Inhibins in Men's Reproductive Function 17
6. Conclusion 19
   References 19

uPA AND PAI-1 in Breast Cancer: Review of Their Clinical Utility and Current Validation in the Prospective NNBC-3 TRIAL
K. ANNECKE, M. SCHMITT, U. EULER, M. ZERM, D. PAEPKE, S. PAEPKE, G. VON MINCKWITZ, C. THOMSSEN, AND N. HARBECK

1. Abstract 31
2. The uPA/PAI-1 System 32
3. Clinical Relevance of uPA and PAI-1 in Breast Cancer 33
4. Methods for Determination of uPA and PAI-1 37
5. Clinical NNBC-3 Trial 37
6. Current Use of uPA/PAI-1 in Clinical Decision Making 40
   References 42

Advances in Multiple Analyte Profiling
VIRGINIA M. SALAS, BRUCE S. EDWARDS, AND LARRY A. SKLAR

1. Abstract 47
2. Introduction 48
3. Multiple Analyte Profiling Platforms 49
4. Fluorescence Technology 56
5. Flow-Cytometry High-Content Profiling Applications 59

6. Future Directions 67
References 68

Immune Monitoring of Clinical Trials with Biotherapies

THERESA L. WHITESIDE

1. Abstract 75
2. Introduction 76
3. Rationale for Immune Monitoring 78
4. Selection of Assays for Immune Monitoring 80
5. Profiling of in Immune Biomarkers 85
6. The QA/QC Program and Assay Quality 89
7. Interpretation of Immune Monitoring Assays 91
8. Conclusions 94
References 96

Dietary Modification of Brain Function: Effects on Neuroendocrine and Psychological Determinants of Mental Health- and Stress-Related Disorders

A. R. WALADKHANI AND J. HELLHAMMER

1. Abstract 99
2. Introduction 100
3. Meal Composition 101
4. Meal Frequency 113
5. Meal Size 113
6. Appetite 114
7. Emotion 114
8. Metabolic Acidosis 115
9. Glucocorticoids 116
10. Monoamine 118
11. Stress 119
12. Conclusion 121
References 122

Menopause, Estrogen, and Gonadotropins in Alzheimer's Disease

GEMMA CASADESUS, RAJ K. ROLSTON, KATE M. WEBBER, CRAIG S. ATWOOD, RICHARD L. BOWEN, GEORGE PERRY, AND MARK A. SMITH

1. Abstract 139
2. Introduction 140
3. Hypothesized Pathogenic Mechanisms of AD 141
4. Gender Dichotomy in AD: Role of Sex Steroids 142
5. A Gonadotropin Evidence-Based Hypothesis for AD:
High Gonadotropin vs Low Estrogen 144

6. Conclusion 147
References 148

Immunosuppression Routed Via the Kynurenine Pathway: A Biochemical and Pathophysiologic Approach

Álvaro González, Nerea Varo, Estibaliz Alegre, Angel Díaz, and Ignacio Melero

1. Abstract 156
2. Introduction 157
3. Trp-Kynurenine Degradation Pathway 157
4. Biochemistry of IDO 160
5. IDO Induction 162
6. Measurement of Kynurenines in Human Biological Fluids 164
7. Nitric Oxide and the Kynurenine Pathway 166
8. Role of IDO in the Defense Against Infectious Pathogens 167
9. IDO as an Immunosuppressive Molecule 167
10. Protective Role of IDO in Rejection of the Fetus During Pregnancy 174
11. Clinical Implications of the Immunosuppression Provoked by the Kynurenine Pathway 176
12. Conclusions 184
References 186

Pathophysiology of Tumor-Associated Macrophages

Ang Yuan, Jeremy J.-W. Chen, and Pan-Chyr Yang

1. Abstract 199
2. Introduction 200
3. Association Between TAM Density and Patient Prognosis 201
4. Antitumor Activity of TAMs and the Association Between High TAM Density and a Good Prognosis 205
5. Polarization of TAM into M1 and M2 Phenotype Macrophage in Tumor Microenvironment 208
6. Effect of TAMs on Cancer Cells 209
7. Possible Regulatory Mechanism of Gene Expression in TAMs or Cancer Cells After the TAM–Cancer Cell Interaction 211
8. Effect of TAMs on Stromal Cells in the Tumor Microenvironment 213
9. A Global View on Changes in Gene Expression in Cancer Cells After Interaction with TAMs 213
10. Implication of TAMs in Immunotherapy of Human Cancers 214
11. Concluding Remarks 216
References 216

Index 225

This page intentionally left blank

CONTRIBUTORS

Numbers in parentheses indicate the pages on which the authors' contributions begin.

ESTIBALIZ ALEGRE (155), *Laboratory of Biochemistry, University Clinic of Navarra, Avda Pio XII 36, Pamplona 31008, Spain*

K. ANNECKE (31), *Frauenklinik und Poliklinik der Technischen Universität München, München 81675, Germany*

CRAIG S. ATWOOD (139), *Department of Medicine, University of Wisconsin and Geriatric Research, Education and Clinical Center, Veterans Administration Hospital, Madison, Wisconsin 53705*

RICHARD L. BOWEN (139), *Voyager Pharmaceutical Corporation, Raleigh, North Carolina 27615; Current Address: Raleigh, NC 27615*

GEMMA CASADESUS (139), *Department of Neurosciences, Case Western Reserve University, Cleveland, Ohio 44106*

JEREMY J.-W. CHEN (199), *Institutes of Biomedical Sciences and Molecular Biology, National Chung-Hsing University, Taichung, Taiwan; Center for Genomic Medicine, National Taiwan University College of Medicine, Taipei, Taiwan*

ANGEL DÍAZ (155), *Laboratory of Biochemistry, University Clinic of Navarra, Avda Pio XII 36, Pamplona 31008, Spain*

BRUCE S. EDWARDS (47), *New Mexico Molecular Libraries Screening Center, University of New Mexico, Cancer Research and Treatment Center, 2325 Camino de Salud, Albuquerque, 87131 New Mexico*

U. EULER (31), *Frauenklinik und Poliklinik der Technischen Universität München, München 81675, Germany*

ÁLVARO GONZÁLEZ (155), *Laboratory of Biochemistry, University Clinic of Navarra, Avda Pio XII 36, Pamplona 31008, Spain*

N. HARBECK (31), *Frauenklinik und Poliklinik der Technischen Universität München, München 81675, Germany*

J. HELLHAMMER (99), *Novalisstrasse 12a, D-54295 Trier, Germany*

STEFANO LUISI (1), *Chair of Obsterics and Gynecology, Department of Pediatrics, Obstetrics and Reproductive Medicine, University of Siena, Policlinico, S. Maria alle Scotte Viale Bracci, 53100 Siena, Italy*

IGNACIO MELERO (155), *Department of Internal Medicine, University Clinic of Navarra, Spain; Centro de Investigación Médica Aplicada (CIMA), University of Navarra, Spain*

D. PAEPKE (31), *Frauenklinik und Poliklinik der Technischen Universität München, München 81675, Germany*

S. PAEPKE (31), *Frauenklinik und Poliklinik der Technischen Universität München, München 81675, Germany*

GEORGE PERRY (139), *College of Sciences, University of Texas at San Antonio, San Antonio, Texas 78249; Department of Pathology, Case Western Reserve University, Cleveland, Ohio 44106*

FELICE PETRAGLIA (1), *Chair of Obsterics and Gynecology, Department of Pediatrics, Obstetrics and Reproductive Medicine, University of Siena, Policlinico, S. Maria alle Scotte Viale Bracci, 53100 Siena, Italy*

FERNANDO M. REIS (1), *Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, University of Minas Gerais, Belo Horizonte, Brazil*

RAJ K. ROLSTON (139), *Department of Pathology, Case Western Reserve University, Cleveland, Ohio 44106*

VIRGINIA M. SALAS (47), *New Mexico Molecular Libraries Screening Center, University of New Mexico, Cancer Research and Treatment Center, 2325 Camino de Salud, Albuquerque, 87131 New Mexico*

M. SCHMITT (31), *Frauenklinik und Poliklinik der Technischen Universität München, München 81675, Germany*

LARRY A. SKLAR (47), *New Mexico Molecular Libraries Screening Center, University of New Mexico, Cancer Research and Treatment Center, 2325 Camino de Salud, Albuquerque, 87131 New Mexico*

MARK A. SMITH (139), *Department of Pathology, Case Western Reserve University, Cleveland, Ohio 44106*

C. THOMSSEN (31), *Frauenklinik, Martin-Luther-Universität Halle, Germany*

ANASTASIA TSIGKOU (1), *Chair of Obsterics and Gynecology, Department of Pediatrics, Obstetrics and Reproductive Medicine, University of Siena, Policlinico, S. Maria alle Scotte Viale Bracci, 53100 Siena, Italy*

NEREA VARO (155), *Laboratory of Biochemistry, University Clinic of Navarra, Avda Pio XII 36, Pamplona 31008, Spain*

G. VON MINCKWITZ (31), *German Breast Group, Neu-Isenburg, Germany*

A. R. WALADKHANI (99), *Novalisstrasse 12a, D-54295 Trier, Germany*

KATE M. WEBBER (139), *Department of Pathology, Case Western Reserve University, Cleveland, Ohio 44106*

THERESA L. WHITESIDE (75), *University of Pittsburgh Cancer Institute, Hillman Cancer Center, Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania 15213*

PAN-CHYR YANG (199), *Department of Internal Medicine, National Taiwan University Hospital, Taipei, Taiwan; Center for Genomic Medicine, National Taiwan University College of Medicine, Taipei, Taiwan*

ANG YUAN (199), *Department of Emergency Medicine, National Taiwan University Hospital, Taipei, Taiwan; Department of Internal Medicine, National Taiwan University Hospital, Taipei, Taiwan*

M. ZERM (31), *German Breast Group, Neu-Isenburg, Germany*

This page intentionally left blank

PREFACE

I am pleased to present volume forty-five of *Advances in Clinical Chemistry* series for the year 2008.

In the first chapter of this volume, the role of gonadal inhibins as diagnostic markers in human pathophysiology is explored. This chapter highlights the development of specific immunoassays that helped to elucidate this important hormone in biochemical control systems. The clinical utility of plasminogen activators and their inhibitors is reviewed with respect to their pleiotropic roles in neoplastic growth including fibrinolysis, cell migration, and angiogenesis. Special emphasis is put on their role in breast cancer. The continuing evolution of multiple analyte profiling is also explored in this volume with respect to its useful and widespread application in complex biological systems. An interesting chapter evaluates the use of immune biomarkers in clinical trials. This chapter includes multiplex, genomic and proteomic technology for cytokine analysis. Biochemical indices of brain function are explored through the use of dietary modulation in another chapter that brings together biochemical and physiologic aspects of mental health. The role of gonadotropins in Alzheimer's disease is explored in a chapter that comprehensively reviews etiologic, epidemiologic, and pathologic evidences in the literature. The use of gonadotropins as specific therapeutic targets is also investigated. A chapter on kynurenines explores the important biochemical and pathophysiologic roles of this key enzymatic pathway in immunosuppression. Lastly, the prognostic significance of tumor-associated macrophages as a human defense mechanism is reviewed with respect to their pro- or antitumor activity.

I extend my appreciation to each contributor of volume forty-five and also thank colleagues who contributed to the peer review process. I extend my most sincere thanks to my editorial liaison at Elsevier, Ms. Pat Gonzalez, for her advice and continued support.

I hope the first volume of 2008 will be enjoyed by our readership. As always, I warmly invite comments on past volumes and suggestions for future review articles for the *Advances in Clinical Chemistry* series.

In keeping with the tradition of the series, I would like to dedicate volume forty-five to my brother Keith.

GREGORY S. MAKOWSKI

INHIBINS AS DIAGNOSTIC MARKERS IN HUMAN REPRODUCTION

Anastasia Tsigkou,* Stefano Luisi,* Fernando M. Reis,† and Felice Petraglia*,[1]

***Chair of Obsterics and Gynecology, Department of Pediatrics, Obstetrics and Reproductive Medicine, University of Siena, Policlinico, S. Maria alle Scotte Viale Bracci, 53100 Siena, Italy**
†Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, University of Minas Gerais, Belo Horizonte, Brazil

1. Abstract 1
2. History and Background 2
3. Inhibins in Women's Reproductive Function 6
   3.1. Effects of Inhibin on Pituitary FSH Secretion 6
   3.2. Inhibin During the Menstrual Cycle 7
   3.3. Control of Inhibin B by FSH in GnRH-Deficient Women 8
   3.4. Inhibins and Activin A in Ovulation Induction 8
   3.5. Premature Ovarian Failure 9
   3.6. Inhibin and Activin in Polycystic Ovary Syndrome 10
   3.7. Reproductive Aging 11
4. Pregnancy 12
   4.1. Inhibin in Abnormal Pregnancy 13
   4.2. Pre-eclampsia 14
   4.3. Down's Syndrome 16
5. Inhibins in Men's Reproductive Function 17
6. Conclusion 19
   References 19

1. Abstract

Over the past 75 years, many publications have focused on measurement of inhibin concentration and/or activity in biological samples in order to

[1]Corresponding author: Felice Petraglia; e-mail: petraglia@unisi.it.

0065-2423/07 $35.00
DOI: 10.1016/S0065-2423(07)00001-7

understand its role in physiology and disease. This chapter highlights the accomplishments within this area of research over the past decade including development of specific inhibin assays. Inhibin A is a marker of dominant follicle and corpus luteum activity and decreases in polycystic ovary syndrome (PCOS). Inhibin A increases in gestational diseases such as pre-eclampsia and fetal Down's syndrome, and this increase in inhibin A improves early diagnosis of both conditions. The measurement of inhibin A in women with threatened abortion provides useful information about the likelihood of pregnancy loss. Inhibin B increases markedly in women with granulosa cell tumor and appears closely related to gametogenesis in men, that is, reflecting Sertoli cell activity. On the contrary, Inhibin B decreases in women with declining ovarian function and correlates with female response to ovulation induction. This review evaluates the biochemical significance of inhibins including their use in clinical practice.

2. History and Background

Inhibin is a gonadal hormone that exerts specific negative feedback on pituitary secretion of follicle stimulating hormone (FSH). The existence of inhibin was postulated in 1923 by Mottram and Cramer who observed hypertrophy of pituitary cells after irradiation of the testis of adult rats [1]. McCullagh [2] subsequently investigated this phenomenon by injecting a water-soluble extract from bovine testes and found that it could inhibit hypertrophy of the pituitary and thus named the active, water-soluble principle "inhibin" [2].

The concept of inhibin was refined after the discovery of two separate pituitary hormones, FSH and luteinizing hormone (LH), which together regulate the gonadal function. Klinefelter *et al*. [3] observed that serum levels of FSH were elevated in oligo- or azoospermic men. Heller and Nelson [4] suggested that the increased serum levels of FSH were caused by a lack of utilization of FSH by the defective seminiferous tubules. Some groups [5, 6] showed that the injection of water-soluble testicular extracts into rats could suppress peripheral FSH levels. de Jong and Sharpe [7] also found FSH-suppressing activity in ovarian follicular fluid. Little, however, was understood about the mechanism of action of inhibin on pituitary cells until Franchimont *et al.* [8] demonstrated that the addition of inhibin-containing preparations to pituitary cells caused an increase in the secretion of cGMP and a decrease in cAMP secretion. This finding was then followed by Jenner [9] who speculated that the decrease in cAMP in incubated hemipituitaries is followed by a decrease in the synthesis of FSH.

The combination of an FSH radioimmunoassay (RIA) and an *in vitro* primary pituitary cell culture led to the purification of inhibin from bovine [10] and porcine [11–13] follicular fluids. Cloning established the protein sequence of inhibin as a 32-kDa dimeric glycosylated molecule consisting of an α and a β subunit. It soon became clear that there were two forms of inhibin. Each contains a common α subunit associated with either β_A (inhibin A) or β_B (inhibin B) subunits that also possess a high degree of homology (Table 1) [12]. Inhibin A and inhibin B were found to be equipotent in the rat pituitary cell bioassay [14], but in the sheep pituitary cell bioassay [10], inhibin A was much more potent than inhibin B. During the purification in bovine, it became clear that there was a large amount of free α chain inhibin that had no bioactivity [10] and could potentially interfere with quantitative assay unless the models were specifically configured to ignore its presence. Initially, inhibin was identifiable as a distinct entity only by bioassays [15–18]. These, of course, were of limited specificity, and generally unsuitable for use with complex body fluids. The development of highly specific and sensitive immunoassays proved essential in advancing the study of inhibin in physiologic as well as pathophysiologic conditions.

The original Monash RIA [19] was widely used in physiological studies before it was realized that it was detecting mostly free α subunits rather than dimeric bioactive inhibin forms in human body fluids [20]. The breakthrough in our understanding of the biology of inhibin came when Groome and collaborators established a specific immunoassay for the measurement of dimeric inhibin A in the menstrual cycle [21]. An assay for measurement of dimeric inhibin B was also subsequently developed by this group [22]. Both assays have been found to be useful for many clinical applications, some of which are detailed below.

TABLE 1
Schematic Representation of Precursor and Mature Forms of Inhibin A and Inhibin B and Mature Forms of Activin

		Structure	Molecular weight (kDa)
α-Subunit precursor	α Chain	pro + αN + αC	55
	pro-αC	pro + αC	26
β-Subunit precursor	β_A Chain	proβ_A + β_A	58
	β_B Chain	proβ_B + β_B	58
Mature forms	Inhibin A	$\alpha + \beta_A$	32
	Inhibin B	$\alpha + \beta_B$	32
	Activin A	$\beta_A + \beta_A$	28
	Activin B	$\beta_B + \beta_B$	28
	Activin AB	$\beta_A + \beta_B$	28

During the purification of inhibin from porcine follicular fluid, two research groups isolated a protein that displayed FSH-releasing activity from the gonadotrophs *in vitro* [23–26]. This protein was termed "activin," signifying its antagonistic effect to inhibin. The discovery of new genes related to the inhibin β subunit through the use of degenerate polymerase chain reaction (PCR) cloning methods further complicated the inhibinstory. There are now three known types of bioactive activins: activin A, activin AB, and activin B (Table 1). Three recently identified activins (C, D, and E) are not known to have any bioactivity and have a relatively restrictive tissue distribution. Activin has proven relevant to diverse research fields, including cell biology, developmental biology, and endocrinology. Activin bioassays have the same problems as inhibin, that is, a lack of specificity.

During purification of inhibin, another weak inhibitor of FSH secretion was identified, named follistatin, which was purified from both porcine [27] and bovine follicular fluid. It was soon realized that follistatin acted by binding to activin and thus neutralizing its actions. The protein is expressed abundantly in the granulosa cells of healthy antral follicles. Shimonaka *et al.* [27] demonstrated by double ligand blotting technique that activin A has two binding sites for follistatin, whereas inhibin A has one. From this, it can be shown that follistatin interacts with inhibin A and activin A through the common β subunit. Follistatin has the ability to neutralize activin-induced FSH release from pituitary cell cultures but this bioassay, like those for inhibins and activins, is susceptible to interference [28]. A number of immunoassays for total follistatin have now been established [29].

Another activin-binding protein of 70 amino acids (aa) has been identified as a follistatin-related gene (FLRG) product, based upon its primary sequence homology to follistatin and its modular architecture, which is remarkably similar to that of follistatin [30, 31]. Like follistatin, FLRG also interacts physically with activin A. This interaction prevents binding to activin receptors (ActRs) [31, 32], thus suggesting a regulatory role on activin-mediated cellular processes.

Both activin and inhibin have been classified as members of the transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β) superfamily [23, 25, 28, 32–34]. They are synthesized as large precursors containing a signal sequence, a pro-domain of variable size, and a mature C-terminal segment that ranges from 110 to 140 aa in length. Within the mature segment, there are seven cysteine residues that are invariant across the superfamily.

Inhibin A consists of an α subunit disulfide linked to a β_A [$\alpha + \beta_A$] subunit, and inhibin B consists of an α subunit and a β_B [$\alpha + \beta_B$] subunit (Table 1). Activin A contains two β_A subunits, activin B has two β_B subunits, and activin AB has one β_A and one β_B subunit (Table 1). cDNAs for the α, β_A,

and β_B subunits have been cloned from porcine, human [9, 32, 35], bovine [36, 37], rat [38], mouse [39], and *Xenopus* [40] cDNA libraries.

In humans, the α and β_B subunits are encoded by individual genes and have been assigned to chromosome 2. β_A subunit gene has been assigned to chromosome 7 [35, 36]. The subunits are produced as large precursors containing an N-terminal signal peptide targeting the polypeptides to the endoplasmic reticulum (ER), a pro-region, and a mature C-terminal domain, which is found in the bioactive dimers [41]. The pro-regions, which are needed for correct folding and/or dimerization of the subunits, are cleaved from the mature bioactive inhibin and activin proteins before secretion [42]. However, there is an exception identified in the 56 kDa bovine inhibin [37] and the 65 and 55 kDa human inhibin [14] in which either the fully or partially processed pro-regions are cleaved after secretion. Recombinant inhibins of 55–65 kDa show bioactivity comparable to that of the 32 kDa inhibin [43], indicating that the cleavage of the pro-region is not required for bioactivity.

The α subunit is unique to inhibin molecules. It is synthesized as a 53 kDa, 366 aa (depending on species) precursor containing an 18 aa signal sequence, a 43 aa pro-region, also called a pro-α, and a 305 aa mature form. The mature form is itself divided into a 171 aa N-terminal segment (αN) and a 133–134 aa C-terminal segment (αC). Unlike the β chain, however, the mature (αC) fragment has sites for glycosylation, and usually shows mono- and diglycosylation [41].

The genomic organization of the human [35], rat [38], mouse [39], and bovine [37] α subunit gene has been determined. In these species, only one inhibin α subunit gene has been found, containing two exons and a single intron of about 2 kilobases (kb) located in the sequence encoding the pro-region.

The mammalian mRNA for both β subunits encodes ~400 aa polypeptide chains, which, like the α subunit, includes a signal sequence, a pro-region and a C-terminal mature region (Table 1). The mature β_A subunit has 116 aa, and the β_B has 115 aa. These proteins are characterized by the cleavage of the mature region from the C-terminal of the large precursor, and by the presence of nine cysteine residues in the mature region. These are involved in disulfide linkage; eight of these cysteine residues are involved in intra-subunit disulfide linkage, and the remaining one is used for the inter-subunit disulfide linkage. Recent studies show three new activin β chains [44–46] named activin β_C, β_D, and β_E subunits. The β_C subunit was cloned from a human liver cDNA library and shows about 50% homology with the β_A and the β_B subunit. The β_D was cloned from *Xenopus* liver cDNA and shows 60% homology with β_C [45], while the β_E subunit was cloned from mouse liver [46] and shows 60% homology with β_D and β_C.

3. Inhibins in Women's Reproductive Function

3.1. Effects of Inhibin on Pituitary FSH Secretion

It is clear from the preceding section that inhibin acts as an endocrine signal generated from the gonads to provide a monitor of gonadal activity to control pituitary FSH secretion. In addition, the α and the β_B subunits, but not the β_A subunit, were found to be localized in the cytoplasm of FSH- and LH-immunoreactive gonadotropes. This suggests that the gonadotropes are sources, as well as targets, of inhibin-related peptides, where their expression is modulated by ovarian factors [47, 48].

Passive immunoneutralization of inhibin stimulated FSHβ mRNA levels and FSH secretion in rats [49], whereas the addition of inhibin to cultured pituitary cells suppressed FSHβ mRNA levels [50]. Pituitary activin has been demonstrated to play an autocrine role in maintaining FSHβ mRNA levels and FSH secretion *in vitro* [51], and exogenous activin stimulated FSHβ mRNA levels within 2 hours in cultured cells [49]. Activin has also been shown to increase GnRH receptor expression through a specific transcriptional activin response element [52]. Thus, activin could influence FSH synthesis indirectly through enhancement of GnRH signaling. Furthermore, follistatin can block GnRH-induced FSH secretion *in vitro*, suggesting that some of the actions of GnRH on FSH may involve local activin stimulation [53].

Immunoneutralization of activin B in primary pituitary cell cultures resulted in suppression of FSH secretion, while follistatin has recently been shown to exert the same effect *in vivo* [54] and *in vitro* [55]. In rats, inhibin B is synthesized in the pituitary and both α and β_B subunits and mRNA are present in rat gonadotropes [56]. Thus, all the components of an activin B driver, follistatin modulator, and inhibin B inhibitor system are present within the pituitary, allowing autocrine control of FSH synthesis and secretion.

The past years have seen rapid changes and increases in the use of transgenic mouse technology for studying mammalian development [57–60]. Three mouse models in which the regulation of FSH expression by inhibins and activins has been evaluated have been developed by Matzuk *et al.* [60]. Mice lacking the inhibin α subunit demonstrate increased FSH concentrations, and this confirms the known function of inhibins [60].

Mice deficient in activin receptor type II have markedly suppressed pituitary and serum concentrations of FSH. Thus, this receptor appears to be the major pituitary receptor through which activins regulate FSH synthesis and secretion. In addition, the suppressed FSH synthesis in the activin receptor type II-deficient mice leads to hypogonadal phenotype in both sexes.

In general, although effects of the gonadal peptides could be measured in specific biological experiments, the overall regulatory role appeared to be less powerful than that of the sex steroids and GnRH. The ability, however, of activin and inhibin preferentially to modulate FSH provides an attractive basis to explain some of the divergent secretory profiles of LH and FSH during the reproductive cycle.

3.2. Inhibin During the Menstrual Cycle

The ovary is responsible for the circulation of inhibin A and inhibin B in healthy women [61]. Inhibin is secreted by the granulosa cells of the developing follicles in the corpus luteum in response to gonadotropins and various other factors. These include insulin-like growth factor (IGF), TGF-β, and activin, while FSH-induced inhibin secretion is suppressed by epidermal growth factor (EGF), TGF-β, and follistatin [13, 62, 63].

In the follicular phase of the menstrual cycle, both ovaries secrete similar amounts of inhibin. In the luteal phase, most of the inhibin is secreted by the corpus luteum [61]. Dimeric inhibins were assayed by Groome *et al.* [21] for the first time in healthy women throughout the menstrual cycle. The inhibin A plasma concentration remains low ($<$10 pg/ml) during the early follicular phase, then shows a small midfollicular phase peak. The concentration rises rapidly with ovulation to a maximum of $\sim$60 pg/ml. The inhibin A concentration falls synchronously with the drop in progesterone during the late luteal phase.

Inhibin B is different in that the plasma concentration is high in the early follicular phase and falls in the late follicular phase during the days before ovulation (Fig. 1). There is no increase in its concentration in the midcycle LH peak. Two days later, there is a short-lived peak of the hormone concentration before the concentration drops to a low level by the middle of the luteal phase. The plasma inhibin B concentration subsequently remains low during the luteal phase [22].

The expression of inhibin α and β_A subunit mRNAs in granulosa cells increases with follicular development [64]. Dimeric inhibin A levels in the follicular fluid increase as the preovulatory follicles mature [21], coincident with the late follicular phase raise in peripheral serum inhibin A concentrations. Conversely, the expression of β_B subunit mRNA in granulosa cells and levels of inhibin B in follicular fluid are highest in immature follicles present during the ovary follicular phase of the menstrual cycle, when peripheral serum concentrations of inhibin B are also increased [23, 65, 66]. Hence, the data demonstrate a clear inverse correlation between similar plasma levels of inhibin B and the corresponding FSH concentration. This suggests that the developing follicles secrete inhibin B, suppressing FSH secretion in the follicular phase, whereas inhibin A is secreted from the luteal cells, which control FSH in the luteal phase.

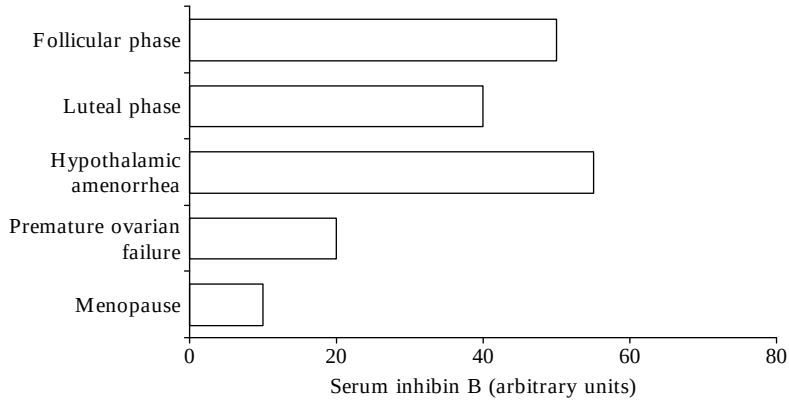


FIG. 1. Serum inhibin B concentration in women's reproductive function.

3.3. CONTROL OF INHIBIN B BY FSH IN GNRH-DEFICIENT WOMEN

It is difficult to distinguish the relationship between inhibin and FSH, as gonadotrophin stimulation is known to promote inhibin secretion, which, in turn, exerts a negative feedback on FSH. The study conducted by Welt *et al.* [67] used a model of GnRH-deficient women to explore the relationship between FSH and inhibin B secretion during the luteal-follicular transition by manipulating FSH levels via changes in the frequency of exogenous GnRH administration. The GnRH pulse frequency was either increased from every 4 hours in the late luteal phase to every 90 min on the day of menses to mimic normal cycling women or kept constant at a late luteal phase frequency through the first 6 days of the subsequent cycle. The slower rate of rise in FSH observed in the group in which the GnRH pulse frequency was maintained at the slow luteal phase frequency was associated with significantly lower inhibin B levels in the early follicular phase. Hall *et al.* [68] suggest that there may be a critical rate of rise in FSH required for inhibin B stimulation. In these studies, the difference in the inhibin B responses to varying FSH levels was evident before changes were apparent in estradiol levels, indicating that inhibin B may be an important early prognostic indicator of follicular response during ovulation induction therapy [67, 69, 70].

3.4. INHIBINS AND ACTIVIN A IN OVULATION INDUCTION

Several studies have reported an increase in total immunoreactive inhibin (ir-inhibin) levels after the administration of exogenous gonadotropins for ovulation induction [71]. These studies have noted a correlation between the

inhibin response and the number of follicles stimulated as well as a decline in the inhibin response with increasing reproductive age. More detailed information has come from studies employing pituitary downregulation with GnRH analogue before stimulation with recombinant FSH for *in vitro* fertilization (IVF), as this regimen creates a hormonal environment that allows the impact of high doses of FSH on ovarian inhibin secretion to be selectively elucidated.

In a study of women with normal ovarian function participating in such an IVF treatment protocol, Lockwood *et al.* [70] demonstrated that both inhibin A and inhibin B were significantly suppressed in association with pituitary desensitization, whereas levels of pro-αC and activin A were largely unaltered. Levels of both inhibin A and inhibin B rose markedly during stimulation with FSH. The positive correlation observed between inhibin A levels in the late follicular phase and the number of follicles larger than 10 mm suggests that inhibin A may be useful as a marker of dominant follicle development in IVF. These data indicate that ovarian production of dimeric inhibin A and inhibin B in women is gonadotropin dependent, whereas the regulation of pro-αC may have a significant gonadotrophin-independent component [72, 73]. Casper *et al.* [74] also investigated the concentrations of inhibin/activin in women undergoing stimulation with recombinant FSH for IVF treatment. There was no change in activin A levels with rFSH stimulation, which is in agreement with Lockwood *et al.* [70]. In women with sonography-detected leading follicle >17 mm in diameter, levels of inhibin A, pro-αC, and estradiol increased significantly, but not that of inhibin B. In patients without adequate follicle development during FSH stimulation, serum levels of inhibins remained low and did not significantly deviate, indicating a possible marker of follicular development.

Other potential applications of inhibin assays in relation to IVF have been proposed. Eldar-Geva *et al.* [75] found that serum inhibin B concentrations measured during the early stage after administration of fixed-dose recombinant human FSH treatment provided an early predictor of the number of recruited follicles. Lindheim *et al.* [76] reported that the measurement of inhibin A may be used to identify the women undergoing natural-cycle embryo transfer who should be prepared for egg retrieval. Lockwood *et al.* [70] found initially a rise in maternal serum inhibin A levels and then a rapid decline in pregnancies in embryonic failure, indicating a possible clinical application in the diagnosis of failed pregnancies.

3.5. Premature Ovarian Failure

Inhibin A and inhibin B are dramatically reduced in women with premature ovarian failure (POF) [77]. Serum levels of both inhibins are as low as in normal postmenopausal women matched for time elapsed since last menstrual period,

and do not correlate with patient age, length of amenorrhoea, or serum gonadotropin levels [77]. In addition, circulating levels of inhibin A, inhibin B, and pro-αC are reduced after oophorectomy. Women with amenorrhoea induced by GnRH analogue treatment or by antineoplastic chemotherapy still produce inhibin A and pro-αC [73]. This probably reflects a residual ovarian function and hormone synthesis.

Welt *et al.* [78] demonstrated high inhibin B serum concentrations in women with presumptive autoimmune oophoritis, who developed multiple follicles with low to undetectable estradiol levels in circulation. These data may provide further evidence for an important role of inhibin B and inhibin A in the negative feedback control of FSH. In addition, the normal inhibin A and inhibin B production in the absence of estradiol precursors and estradiol provide insight into the selective dysfunction of the theca cells in autoimmune oophoritis.

3.6. Inhibin and Activin in Polycystic Ovary Syndrome

One of the most common causes of female infertility is the PCOS, affecting approximately 6-8% of women of reproductive age [79]. PCOS is characterized by an excessive number of small antral follicles in the ovaries that fail to produce a dominant follicle on a regular basis, and by dissociation in LH and FSH release [79].

Inhibin A and inhibin B are produced by the granulosa cells of human ovary. Since the α subunit is also expressed by the theca interna cells in addition to the granulosa cells, the levels of α subunit mRNA in the ovary are higher than those of β subunit mRNA [80].

Levels of inhibin B have been found to be either increased [81] or unchanged [82–85] in women with PCOS, and this disagreement might be due to the large range of inhibin B levels seen in PCOS and also to the confounding effect of obesity—an independent factor that reduces inhibin B concentration [84–85]. In addition, women with clomiphene-resistant PCOS show no pattern of regular inhibin B pulsatility when compared to normal individuals [81].

We have also observed that inhibin A concentrations are consistently lower in women with PCOS (Tsigkou *et al.*, unpublished data), confirming previous findings in a large, well-characterized sample of women with PCOS [82]. The low circulating levels of inhibin A and the lack of increase in inhibin B levels despite the numerous antral follicles in women with PCOS converge to the same pathophysiological mechanism, which is the insufficient production of dimeric inhibins by the many small follicles that fail to reach dominance and ovulation [86].

Magoffin and Jakimiuk [86] investigated follicular fluid concentrations of inhibin A, inhibin B, and activin A in women with regular cycles and in

women with PCOS. In both control ovaries and polycystic ovaries, they found that concentrations of inhibin B were approximately tenfold higher than those of activin A. There was no difference in activin A concentration between PCOS and control follicles. In control ovaries, the inhibin A and inhibin B concentrations in dominant follicles were significantly higher than in cohort follicles, while inhibin A concentrations were lower in PCOS follicles than in normal cohort follicles. However, there was no difference in inhibin B concentrations between PCOS follicles and normal cohort follicles [86].

3.7. Reproductive Aging

One of the areas of increasing interest in female reproductive endocrinology is the hormonal environment during the early phase of reproductive aging, a time when there is a selective rise in FSH levels. Given that no significant changes have been observed in ovarian steroid secretion at this time, it has been postulated that early decreases in ovarian inhibin secretion might account for the monotropic FSH rise seen in older ovulatory women [87].

Initial studies measuring total ir-inhibin demonstrated that inhibin levels were decreased in perimenopausal women and were undetectable in postmenopausal women [88]. An increase in activin A secretion was also observed during reproductive aging in women [89]. In a correlative study employing dimer-specific ELISAs, Klein *et al.* [90] reported that higher early follicular phase FSH levels in a group of older, ovulatory women (aged 40–45 years) were associated with significantly lower mean inhibin B concentrations compared to those in younger cycling controls [90]. Burger *et al.* [88] identified a fall in inhibin B circulating during the follicular phase and no changes in estradiol and inhibin A as the most significant endocrine observation of reproductive aging. These observations were also confirmed by Welt *et al.* [69].

Danforth *et al.* [91] reported a fall in circulating inhibin A during the luteal phase of women undergoing the menopause transition [91]. The decrease in inhibin B levels demonstrated in these women of advanced reproductive age likely reflects the presence of a diminished follicular pool. The association between decreased inhibin B and elevated FSH concentrations suggests that inhibin B may be an important regulator of the monotropic FSH rise that occurs with aging, as well as being a biochemical index of prenatal follicles. This concept of inhibin B acting as a marker of reproductive age is supported by clinical data. These show that women with low day 3 serum inhibin B levels demonstrate a poorer response to ovulation induction and are less likely to conceive a clinical pregnancy through assisted reproductive technology than do women with high day 3 inhibin B levels [92]. By contrast, Klein

et al. [90] observed no difference in the day 3 inhibin A levels between older and younger women.

Seifer *et al.* [92] investigated whether inhibin B might be the physiological basis for the clomiphene citrate challenge test, commonly used to assess ovarian reserve. Clomiphene citrate blocks estradiol effects on the pituitary and induces increased FSH levels after treatment. The findings of this study demonstrated a decrease in inhibin B serum concentrations and a negative correlation with FSH levels in women with diminished ovarian reserve on day 3 and day 10. Taken together, these data suggest that inhibin B levels reflect the number of follicles present, whereas inhibin A may be a marker of the quality of a mature follicle.

Previous studies indicate that the menstrual cycles of older reproductive age women are characterized by a selective elevation of FSH associated with early development and ovulation of a dominant follicle. A study by Klein *et al.* [90] examined follicular fluid hormones and growth factors in the dominant follicle during unstimulated cycles of older ovulatory women. This was analyzed for estradiol, progesterone, testosterone, androstenedione, inhibin A and inhibin B, total activin A, total follistatin, IGF-I, IGF-II, IGF-binding protein-2 (IGFBP-2), IGFBP-3, and vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) concentrations. They demonstrated that the dominant follicles from older women contain normal concentrations of steroids, inhibin A and inhibin B, IGF-II, IGFBP-2, and IGFBP-3; increased concentrations of follistatin, activin A, and VEGF; and decreased concentrations of IGF-I. The elevated follicular fluid activin A may be related to the early ovulation observed in older women, whereas elevated VEGF may be related to the meiotic spindle abnormalities observed in the oocytes of older reproductive age women.

4. Pregnancy

During pregnancy, the placenta is the main source of inhibin and high serum levels of inhibin are reported [93–96]. There is a rapid decrease in inhibin concentration after delivery [97–101]. Specifically, total inhibin rises after ovulation, peaks at 9–10 weeks of gestation, reaches a plateau at $\sim$15 weeks, and then rises again in the third trimester.

Inhibin A is the principal (bioactive) form in pregnancy [96]. However, inhibin B levels are extremely low during early gestation, as neither the corpus luteum nor trophoblasts secrete this protein into circulation. Although inhibin β_B subunits have previously been detected in the placenta [102–104], their level of expression is considerably lower than that of either α or β_A [104, 105]. Although the β_B is heavily expressed in the amnion [102],

the virtual absence of inhibin B from circulation suggests that if the amnion synthesizes inhibin B, it should have a local action, possibly involving prostaglandin synthesis [102, 103]. The corpus luteum is known to make a significant contribution to the circulating inhibin concentrations during pregnancy [103, 106, 107, 108]. It has been demonstrated that treatment with exogenous human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) produces a marked rise in the peripheral concentration of ir-inhibin [104].

Illingworth *et al.* [95] demonstrated that stimulation and maintenance of luteal function with hCG resulted in an increase in inhibin A concentration. In contrast to inhibin A, concentrations of inhibin B continued to fall in the late luteal phase despite maintenance of luteal function. This suggests that the corpus luteum is not a source of inhibin B and that the peak of inhibin B seen early in the normal luteal phase represents the passage of inhibin B from the follicular fluid into circulation rather than *de novo* synthesis [95]. The absence of detectable mRNA for the β_B subunit in either luteinized granulosa cells or the corpus luteum of women has been reported [64, 106].

It has been demonstrated that inhibin and activin influence hormonogenesis in cultured placental tissue, with activin increasing hCG and progesterone production. Activin measurements have been carried out by several groups using a bioassay [109] or an RIA [110] despite the difficulties of measuring activin due to its high affinity binding to follistatin. With the development of a total (bound + free) assay [111], Muttukrishna *et al.* [94] measured activin A throughout the pregnancy. By 8 weeks of gestation, serum activin A concentrations were higher than those during the normal menstrual cycle. The concentrations of activin A did not vary significantly during the remainder of the first and second trimesters. After 24 weeks, there was an increase in inhibin A and activin A near term, suggesting a role for these proteins in labor. Furthermore, studies confirm the presence of pro-αC, follistatin [112, 113], inhibin A, and activin A in circulation during pregnancy [114, 115].

4.1. Inhibin in Abnormal Pregnancy

There are identifiable differences in inhibin A production during normal pregnancies compared with abnormal pregnancies (Figs. 2 and 3). Seifer *et al.* [116] compared inhibin A and inhibin B levels in 19 women with confirmed ectopic pregnancy and in 24 women of similar gestational age with ultrasound-confirmed intrauterine pregnancy [116]. Both total and dimeric inhibin levels in the patients who had ectopic pregnancies were less than 60% of those in women with normal intrauterine pregnancy. We have noted this difference with respect to spontaneous abortions, as there was no difference in inhibin B levels in women undergoing a miscarriage compared with normal gestational controls [117].

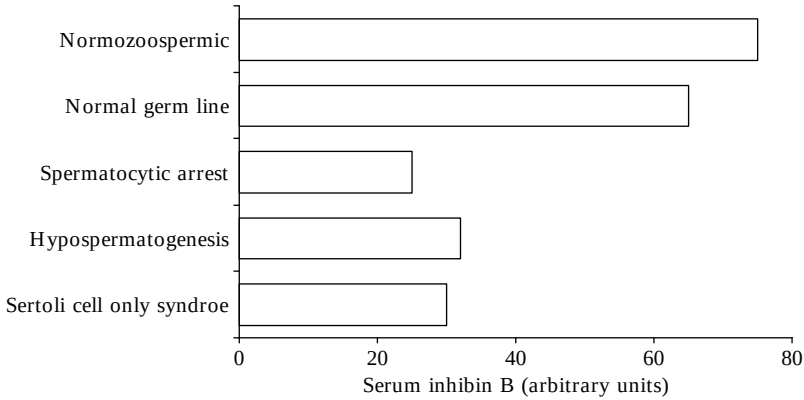


FIG. 2. Serum inhibin A concentration in gestational diseases.

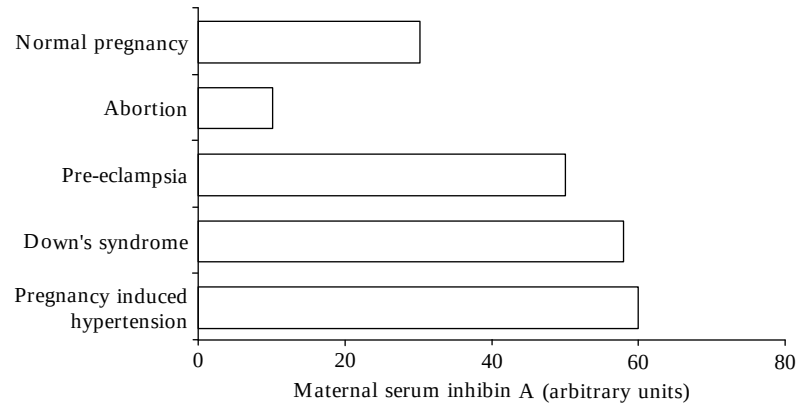


FIG. 3. Serum activin A concentration in gestational diseases.

4.2. PRE-ECLAMPSIA

Pre-eclampsia is one of the most serious conditions during pregnancy, as it markedly increases the risk of prenatal morbidity and mortality of both mother and fetus. Pre-eclampsia is defined as hypertension with proteinuria, edema, or both induced by pregnancy after 20 weeks of gestation [118].

Intense effort has been devoted to develop screening tests for pre-eclampsia and biochemical markers that could predict the subsequent development of disease [119–133]. Inhibin A and pro-αC subunit levels are increased in pre-eclampsia and show a positive correlation with hCG; thus inhibin A might be

a paracrine modulator or, at least, an additional marker of the placental overgrowth that characterizes this disease [114]. There is a significant increase in the levels of mRNA for inhibin α and β_A in the placenta of those with pre-eclampsia compared with controls, suggesting that the placenta is a source of the increased serum inhibin levels in pre-eclampsia [125, 134]. Serum activin A and inhibin A concentrations are tenfold higher in women with severe pre-eclampsia compared with gestational age-matched controls [126]. Furthermore, studies have demonstrated that activin A and inhibin A concentrations are elevated prior to the onset of pre-eclampsia [129]. It has been observed that inhibin A is increased at midtrimester [122, 123] with a twofold increase in the median among women who later developed pre-eclampsia [124], while inhibin A may be altered already in the first trimester (Table 2).

A combined measurement of maternal serum inhibin A and other uteroplacental markers may be an effective means of screening for pre-eclampsia in the second trimester of pregnancy [130]. The combination of the values of inhibin A, free β subunit of hCG, and uE3 to form a screening test would detect an estimated 55% of affected pregnancies, with a false positive rate of 5% [124]. There is no difference in serum inhibin B levels observed between healthy controls and patients at risk but who did not develop hypertension [117].

Hamasaki *et al.* [131] evaluated maternal serum ir-inhibin concentrations in women with pre-eclampsia, and assessed the correlation between serum ir-inhibin and hCG. The study found that there were no significant differences in maternal characteristics between the pre-eclamptic group and the

TABLE 2
POSSIBLE CLINICAL APPLICATIONS OF INHIBIN A AND ACTIVIN A MEASUREMENT DURING PREGNANCY IN MATERNAL SERUM

Phase of gestation	Predictive/diagnostic marker	References
First trimester		
Impending abortion	Inhibin A	Luisi *et al.* [162] Florio *et al.* [163]
Pre-eclampsia	Inhibin A	Zwahlen *et al.* [164]
Second trimester		
Down's syndrome	Inhibin A	Malone *et al.* [165]
Fetal demise	Activin A (amniotic fluid)	Petraglia *et al.* [166]
Pre-eclampsia	Inhibin A/activin A	Florio *et al.* [167]
Third trimester		
Pre-eclampsia	Inhibin A/activin A	Muttukrishna *et al.* [168]
Pregnancy-induced hypertension	Inhibin A/activin A	D'Antona *et al.* [169]
Intrauterine growth restriction	Inhibin A/activin A	Florio *et al.* [134]
Preterm delivery	Activin A	Farina *et al.* [170]

control group. The pre-eclamptic group had significantly higher concentrations of serum ir-inhibin and hCG compared with the control group. The serum concentrations of ir-inhibin correlated positively with those of hCG. Pre-eclamptic patients displayed high serum levels of ir-inhibin and hCG, and this might reflect hyperplasia of trophoblastic cells.

Also, urinary concentrations of activin A and inhibin A are altered in pre-eclampsia and the relationship between uterine vein and peripheral vein concentrations of these hormones in pre-eclamptic patients [132]. Urinary activin A and inhibin A are raised in groups 2 and 3 pre-eclamptic patients, thus suggesting that these proteins may rise in patients before the onset of the clinical symptoms of pre-eclampsia.

4.3. Down's Syndrome

Total or partial trisomy of chromosome 21 is responsible for the occurrence of Down's syndrome, which is the most common and severe abnormality at birth. Down's syndrome is characterized by an alteration in the secretion of placental and fetal proteins and steroids. Hence, the measurement of maternal serum markers has been shown to be useful in the screening for Down's syndrome [133, 135, 136]. Numerous pregnancy-associated maternal serum markers for Down's syndrome have been evaluated. Efforts to improve biochemical screening have centered on the search for a better marker in order to improve the detection rate or to reduce the number of false positives.

The levels of dimeric inhibin A are elevated in the maternal serum of women carrying a Down's syndrome pregnancy [135, 137], whereas inhibin B, pro-αC [138], and activin A levels [124] are not altered, at least between 16 and 19 weeks of gestation. These changes suggested a possible clinical role for measuring inhibin A levels in the biochemical screening of Down's syndrome.

Wenstrom *et al.* [139, 140] compared all combinations of α-fetoprotein (AFP), free β subunit of hCG, unconjugated estriol (uE3), and inhibin A. They concluded that the best triple test for screening was AFP, free β subunit of hCG, and inhibin A. In further studies, this group concluded that the multiple-marker test plus inhibin was superior to the traditional multiple-marker screening test and two other analyte combinations, with lower false-positive rates and increased detection of all aneuploidies in a high-risk population [140]. Subsequent data confirmed these observations [141].

In Down's syndrome pregnancies, median inhibin A levels were found to be significantly elevated in placental extracts and in maternal serum, when compared with the levels in uncomplicated pregnancies. Median activin A was also elevated in placental extracts and in maternal serum [142].

A dissociation between inhibin and activin subunit mRNA levels and the corresponding protein levels in maternal serum, and an increase in inhibin A levels that is not explained by mRNA upregulation has been reported in Down's syndrome [143]. In an addition to this study, ovarian cortex tissue from term pregnancies was examined. Only the α subunit mRNA was expressed at a higher level than in the placenta, suggesting that the ovary could be a source of inhibin pro-αC during pregnancies [143]. Table 2 lists possible clinical applications of the measurement of inhibin A, inhibin B, and activin A in pregnancy.

5. Inhibins in Men's Reproductive Function

The physiological role of inhibin in men became clearer since the availability of specific inhibin A and inhibin B ELISAs led to the demonstration that the predominant form in the male is inhibin B [144, 145]. There is general agreement that the major source of inhibin in the testis is the Sertoli cell, and in culture of rat Sertoli cells a linear relationship exists between the number of cells in culture and the inhibin levels secreted into the medium [146]. These cells respond to FSH by the increased production of inhibin. At high doses, FSH produces an excess of free α subunits [146]. Thus, in testicular damage, elevated levels of free α subunits can be detected in the circulation [145]. Further support for these concepts emerged from a prospective study of the effects of chemotherapy on the testis and its influence on serum FSH and inhibin B levels [147]. In the same study, it was shown that following spermatogenetic damage, inhibin B levels decreased as FSH levels increased. They also noted that an increase in pro-αC levels, which contributed to the maintenance of ir-inhibin levels measured by an assay, detects both inhibin and subunit products (Fig. 2).

There is a positive relationship between the levels of inhibin B in the circulation of rats and the number of Sertoli cells present in the testes in a variety of experimental states [148]. These results highlight the possibility that inhibin B levels in serum may provide an index of Sertoli cell function. Indeed, several earlier studies using a bioassay for inhibin strongly suggested that testicular damage in rats was accompanied by a change in Sertoli cell function reflected by a decrease in inhibin secretion [149].

There are limited data from *in vitro* approaches to indicate the importance of inhibin-related proteins in a paracrine action in the testis. Activin A has been shown to stimulate spermatogonial mitosis when these cells are co-cultured with immature rat Sertoli cells *in vitro* [150]. The role of activin A in the maintenance of an unusual form of mitochondria was found only in meiotic and postmeiotic germ cells in the testis and ovary [151], and these

mitochondria are termed "condensed" forms. When primary spermatocytes are placed in culture, the condensed forms are lost or change back to the orthodox forms found in spermatogonial and somatic cells [152]. The addition of activin A to the culture medium maintains the mitochondria in the "condensed" state, indicating that activins produced by the germ cells or by the Sertoli cells can exert a paracrine and autocrine function [153].

Inhibin B secretion in the adult is partly, but not completely, under gonadotrophin control. Administration of GnRH to men with hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism results in an increase in blood inhibin B levels from undetectable concentrations into the normal range in many cases [154–156] (Fig. 4). A further degree of complexity has been demonstrated by the studies of Bilezikjian *et al.* who showed that significant changes in these proteins occurred during GnRH and testosterone action on the pituitary [157]. For instance, GnRH stimulated follistatin mRNA and decreases β subunit mRNA levels, whereas testosterone decreases the levels of follistatin and β subunit mRNA (Figs. 3 and 4).

In another study, the relationship between testosterone and inhibin B was investigated [158]. In this study, administration of testosterone enanthate resulted in a fall in inhibin B concentration and azoospermia was achieved. It is possible that gonadotrophin secretion was more completely suppressed by those regimes that resulted in a clear fall in inhibin B. Hence, the presence or degree of fall in inhibin B does not predict whether azoospermia will be achieved, but it may indicate the degree of suppression of spermatogenesis or the step at which spermatogenesis is arrested [159].

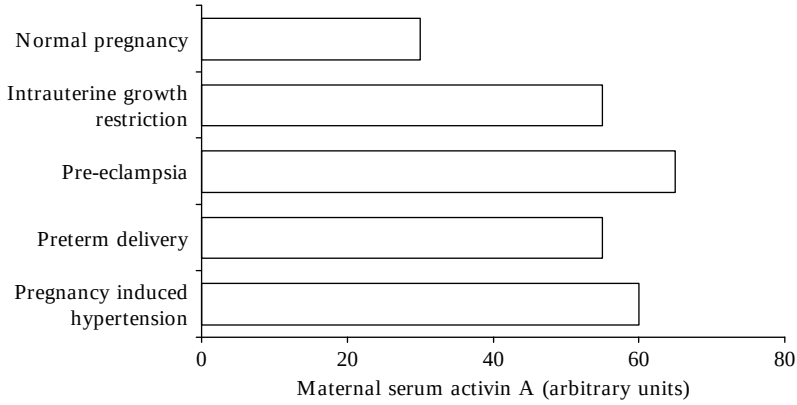


FIG. 4. Serum inhibin B concentration in man's reproductive function.

Aging in men is accompanied by a decline in reproductive function. A study has compared inhibin B concentrations in men aged 70–85 years with those in younger men [160]. The older men had lower inhibin B concentrations and high FSH concentrations, although the fall in inhibin was relatively modest (~25%) compared to the fourfold rise in FSH. The fall in inhibin B occurred at a relatively early age; thus the concentrations were lower in the 35- to 55-year-old age group compared with those younger than 35 years. The prevalence of low inhibin B concentrations was increased in the 35- to 55-year-old age group, whereas the prevalence of low testosterone concentrations appeared to rise only in the older groups [161]. The findings need to be confirmed, however, particularly the age at which inhibin B starts to fall. These studies indicate that inhibin B is the physiologically important form of inhibin in men. Although FSH stimulates inhibin B, there is also evidence for a gonadotrophin-independent component to its regulation in men. Inhibin B appears to play a significant role in the negative feedback loop regulating FSH secretion and may provide a useful marker of Sertoli cell function.

6. Conclusion

In humans, there appears to be important gender differences in the forms of inhibin present in the circulation. Both inhibin A and inhibin B are present in women, whereas only inhibin B circulates in physiological concentrations in men. In addition, there is evidence for a gonadotropin-independent component to inhibin B secretion in men; in fact, a dramatic switch from a positive to a negative relationship between inhibin B and FSH accompanies the initiation of puberty in boys [161]. The mechanism for this differential regulation in the male and female gonads is not known.

Measurement of dimeric inhibin A and inhibin B may provide sensitive diagnostic tools for determining gonadal maturity in early puberty of both genders, gonadal activity during reproductive life, and ovarian reserve in late reproductive years, besides monitoring feto-placental health at all phases of human gestation.

References

[1] Mottram JC, Cramer W. Report on the general effects of exposure to radium on metabolism and tumor growth in the rat and the special effects on the testis and pituitary. J Exp Physiol 1923; 13:209–229.

[2] McCullagh DR. Dual endocrine activity of the testes. Science 1932; 76:19–20.

[3] Klinefelter HF, Reifenstein EC, Albright F. Syndrome characterized by gynecomastia, aspermatogenesis without a-Leydigism and increased excretion of follicle-stimulating hormone. J Clin Endocrinol 1942; 2:615–627.

[4] Heller CG, Nelson WG. The testis-pituitary relationship in man. Recent Prog Horm Res 1948; 3:229–255.
[5] Setchell BP, Jacks F. Inhibin like activity in rete testis fluid. J Endocrinol 1974; 62:675–676.
[6] Lee W, Mason AJ, Schwall R, Szonyi E, Mather JP. Secretion of activin by interstitial cells in the testis. Science 1989; 243:396–398.
[7] de Jong FH, Sharpe RM. Evidence of inhibin-like activity in bovine follicular fluid. Nature 1976; 263:71–72.
[8] Franchimont P, Hazee-Hagelstein M, Jasper J, Charlet-Renard C, Demoulin A. Inhibin and related peptides: Mechanisms of action and secretion. J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol 1989; 32:193–197.
[9] Jenner AA, de Koning J, van Rees GP. Effect of inhibin-like activity on LH-RH-stimulated release of FSH by pituitary glands from female rats *in vitro*. Life Sci 1983; 32:1091–1098.
[10] Robertson DM, Foulds LM, Leversha L, Morgan FJ, Hearn MTW, Burger HG, et al. Isolation of inhibin from bovine follicular fluid. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 1985; 126:220–226.
[11] Ling N, Ying SY, Ueno N, Shimasaki S, Hotta M, Guillemin R, et al. Isolation and partial characterization of a 32,000 KD protein with inhibin activity from pocrine follicular fluid. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1985; 82:7217–7221.
[12] Miyamoto K, Hasegawa Y, Fukuda M, Nomura M, Igarashi M, Kangawa K, et al. Isolation of porcine follicular fluid inhibin of 32 K daltons. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 1985; 129:396–403.
[13] Rivier J, Spiess J, McClintock R, Vaughan J, Vale W. Purification and partial characterization of inhibin from porcine follicular fluid. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 1985; 133:120–127.
[14] Ying SY. Inhibins, activins, and follistatins: Gonadal proteins modulating the secretion of follicle-stimulating hormone. Endocr Rev 1988; 9:267–293.
[15] Knight PG, Beard AJ, Wrathall JHM, Castillo RJ. Evidence that the bovine ovary secretes large amounts of monomeric inhibin α-subunit and its isolation from bovine follicular fluid. J Mol Endocrinol 1989; 2:189–200.
[16] Baker RJ, Hildebrandt RH, Rouse RV. Inhibin and CD99 (MIC2) expression in uterine stromal neoplasms with sex-cord-like elements. Hum Pathol 1999; 30:671–679.
[17] Scott RS, Burger HG, Quigg H. A simple and rapid *in vitro* bioassay for inhibin. Endocrinology 1980; 107:1536–1542.
[18] Scott RS, Burger HG, Quigg H, Dobos M, Robertson DM, Dekretser DM. The specificity of inhibin bioassay using cultured pituitary-cells. Mol Cell Endocrinol 1982; 26:307–316.
[19] McLachalan RI, Healy DL, Lutjen PY, Findlay JK, de Kretser DM, Burger HG. The maternal ovary is not the source of circulating inhibin levels during human pregnancy. Clin Endocrinol 1987; 27:663–668.
[20] Schneyer AL, Mason AJ, Burton LE, Ziegner JR, Crowel Y. Immunoreactive inhibin alpha-subunit in human serum: Implications for radioimmunoassay. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1990; 70:41208–41212.
[21] Groome NP, Illingworth PJ, O'Brien M, Cooke I, Ganesan TS, Baird DT, et al. Detection of dimeric inhibin throughout the human menstrual cycle by two-site enzyme immunoassay. Clin Endocrinol 1994; 40:717–723.
[22] Groome NP, Illingworth PJ, O'Brien M, Pai R, Rodger FE, Mather JP, et al. Measurement of dimeric inhibin B throughout the human menstrual cycle. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1996; 81:1401–1405.
[23] Ling N, Ying SY, Ueno N, Shimasaki S, Esch F, Hotta M, et al. Pituitary FSH is released by a heterodimer of the α-subunits from the two forms of inhibin. Nature 1986; 321:779–782.

[24] Ling N, Ying SY, Ueno N, Shimasaki S, Esch F, Hotta M, et al. A homodimer of the beta-subunits of inhibin A stimulates the secretion of pituitary follicle stimulating hormone. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 1986; 138:1129–1137.
[25] Vale W, River J, Vaughan J, McClintock R, Corrigan A, Woo W, et al. Purification and characterization of and FSH releasing protein from porcine ovarian follicular fluid. Nature 1986; 321:776–779.
[26] Ueno N, Ling N, Ying SY, Esch F, Shimasaki S, Guillemin R. Isolation and partial characterization of follistatin: A single-chain Mr 35,000 monomeric protein that inhibits the release of follicle stimulating hormone. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1987; 84:8282–8286.
[27] Shimonaka M, Inouye S, Shimasaki S, Ling N. Follistatin binds to both inhibin and activin through the common α-subunit. Endocrinology 1991; 128:3313–3315.
[28] Evans LW, Muttukrishna S, Groome NP. Development, validation and application of an ultra-sensitive two-site enzyme immunoassay for human follistatin. J Endocrinol 1998; 156:275–282.
[29] Mayo KE. Inhibin and activin: Molecular aspects of regulation and function. Trends Endocrinol Met 1994; 5:407–415.
[30] Hayette S, Gadoux M, Martel S, Bertrand S, Tigaud I, Magaud JP, et al. FLRG (follistatin-related gene), a new target of chromosomal rearrangement in malignant blood disorders. Oncogene 1998; 16:2949–2954.
[31] Tortoriello DV, Sidis Y, Holtzman DA, Holmes WE, Schneyer AL. Human follistatins-related protein: A structural homologue of follistatin with nuclear localization. Endocrinology 2001; 142:3426–3434.
[32] Barton DE, Yang-Feng TL, Mason AJ, Seeburg PH, Francke U. Mapping of genes for inhibin α, beta A and beta B on human and mouse chromosomes and studies of jsd mice. Genomics 1989; 5:91–99.
[33] Mayo KE, Cerelli GM, Spiess J, Rivier J, Rosenfeld MG, Evans RM, et al. Inhibin A subunit cDNAs from porcine ovary and human placenta. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1986; 83:5849–5853.
[34] Mason AJ, Niall HD, Seeburg PH. Structure of two human ovarian inhibins. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 1986; 135:957–964.
[35] Stewart AG, Milborrow HM, Ring JM, Growther CE, Forage RC. Human, inhibin genes: Genomic characterization and sequencing. FEBS Lett 1986; 206:329–335.
[36] Thomson DA, Cronin CN, Martin F. Genomic cloning and sequence analyses of bovine α-, β_A-and β_B-inhibin/activin genes. Eur J Biochem 1994; 226:751–764.
[37] de Kretser DM. Cloning and sequence analysis of cDNA species coding for the two subunits of inhibin from bovine follicular fluid. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1986; 83:3091–3095.
[38] Esch FS, Shimasaki S, Cooksey K, Mercado M, Mason AJ, Ying SY, et al. Complementary deoxyribonucleic acid (cDNA) cloning and DNA sequence analysis of rat ovarian inhibins. Mol Endocrinol 1987; 5:388–396.
[39] Su J-GJ, Hsueh AJ. Characterisation of mouse inhibin α genes and its promoter. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 1992; 186:293–300.
[40] Dohrmann CE, Hemmati-Brivanlou A, Thomsen GH, Fields A, Woolf TM, Melton DA. Expression of activin mRNA during early development in *Xenopus laevis*. Dev Biol 1993; 157:474–483.
[41] Russel DL, Findlay JK. The N-terminal peptide of the inhibin α-subunit: What are its endocrine and paracrine roles? Trends Endocrinol Metab 1995; 6:305–311.
[42] Gray AG, Mason AJ. Requirement for activin-A and transforming growth factor-β1 pro-regions in homodimer assembly. Science 1990; 247:1328–1330.

[43] Mason AJ, Farnworth PG, Sullivan J. Characterisation and determination of the biological activities of no cleavable high molecular weight forms of inhibin A and activin A. Mol Endocrinol 1996; 10:1055–1065.
[44] Schmitt J, Gertrud H, Jenkins NA, Gibert DJ, Copeland NG, Pohl J. Structure, chromosomal localization, and expression analysis of the mouse Inhibin/Activin βC (inhβc) gene. Genomics 1996; 32:358–368.
[45] Oda S, Nishimatsu S, Murakami K, Ueno N. Molecular cloning and functional analysis of a new activin-β subunit: A dorsal mesoderm-inducing activity in Xenopus. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 1995; 210:581–588.
[46] Fang JM, Yin WS, Smiley E, Qing S, Wang SQ, Bonadio J. Molecular cloning of the mouse activin β_E-subunit gene. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 1996; 228:669–674.
[47] Hsueh AJ, Dahl KD, Vaughan J, Tucker E, Rivier J, Bardin CW, Vale W. Heterodimers and homodimers of inhibin subunits have different paracrine action in the modulation of luteinizing hormone-stimulated androgen biosynthesis. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1987; 84:5082–5086.
[48] Attardi B, Keeping HS, Winter SJ, Kotsuji F, Troen P. Comparison of the effects of cycloheximide and inhibin on the gonadotropin subunit messenger ribonucleic acids. Endocrinology 1991; 128:119–125.
[49] Carroll RS, Corrigan AZ, Gharib SD, Vale W, Chin WW. Inhibin, activin, and follistatin: Regulation of follicle-stimulating hormone messenger ribonucleic acid levels. Mol Endocrinol 1989; 12:1969–1976.
[50] Weiss J, Harris PE, Halvorson LM, Crowley WF, Jameson JL. Dynamic regulation of follicle-stimulating hormone-beta mRNA levels by activin and gonadotropin-releasing hormone in perifused rat pituitary cells. Endocrinology 1992; 131:1403–1408.
[51] Duval DL, Ellsworth BS, Clay CM. Is gonadotrope expression of the gonadatropin releasing hormone receptor gene mediated by an autocrine/paracrine stimulation of an activin response element? Endocrinology 1999; 140:1945–1952.
[52] Besecke LM, Guedener MJ, Schneyer AI, Bauer-Dontoin AC, Jamieson JL, Weiss J. Gonadotrophin-releasing hormone regulates follicle-stimulating hormone-beta gene expression though an activin/follistatin autocrine or paracrine loop. Endocrinology 1996; 137:3667–3673.
[53] Meriggiola MC, Dahl KD, Mather PJ, Bremner WJ. Follistatin decreases activin-stimulated FSH secretion with no effect of GnRH- stimulated FSH secretion in prepubertal male monkeys. Endocrinology 1994; 134:1967–1970.
[54] Kogawa K, Nakamura T, Sugino K, Takio K, Tiitani K, Sugino H. Activin-binding protein is present in pituitary. J Endocrinol 1991; 128:1434–1440.
[55] Bilezikjian LM, Corrigan AZ, Blount AL, Vale WW. Pituitary follistatin and inhibin subunit mRNA are differentially regulated by local and hormonal factors. Endocrinology 1996; 137:4277–4284.
[56] Wilson ME, Handa RJ. Activin subunit, follistatin, and activin receptor gene expression in the pubertal female rat pituitary. Biol Reprod 1998; 59:278–283.
[57] Palmiter RD, Brinster RL. Germ-line transformation of mice. Annu Rev Genet 1986; 20:465–499.
[58] Capecchi MR. Targeted gene replacement. Sci Am 1994; 270:52–59.
[59] Camper SA, Saunders TL, Kendall SK, Keri RA, Seasholtz AF, Gordon DF, et al. Implementing transgenic and embryonic stem cell technology to study gene expression, cell-cell interactions and gene function. Biol Reprod 1995; 52:246–247.
[60] Matzuk MM, Finegold MJ, Su JG, Hsueh AJ, Bradley A. Inhibin α is a tumour suppressor gene with gonadal specificity in mice. Nature 1992; 360:313–319.

[61] Illingworth P, Reddi K, Smith KB, Baird DT. The source of inhibin secretion during the human menstrual cycle. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1991; 73:667–673.
[62] Hiller G, Yong EL, Illingworth PJ, Baired DT, Schwall RH, Mason AJ. Effect of recombinant activin on androgen synthesis in cultured human thecal cells. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1991; 72:1206–1211.
[63] McNeilly AS. Activin and follistatin: More than FSH regulators. J Endocrinol 1999; 161:177–178.
[64] Roberts V, Barth S, EI-Roeity A, Yen S. Expression of inhibin/activin subunits and follistatin messenger ribonucleic acids and proteins in ovarian follicles and the corpus luteum during the human menstrual cycle. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1993; 77:1402–1410.
[65] Hall JE, Welt CK, Cramer DW. Inhibin A and inhibin B reflect ovarian function in assisted reproduction but are less useful at predicting outcome. Hum Reprod 1999; 14:409–415.
[66] Bhasin S, de Kretser DM. Editorial: Measurement of circulating inhibin levels: Revisiting the inhibin hypothesis. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1996; 81:1318–1320.
[67] Welt CK, Martins KA, Taylor AE, Lambert-Messerlian GM. Frequency modulation of follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) during the luteal-follicular transition: Evidence for FSH control of inhibin B in normal women. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1997; 82:2645–2652.
[68] Hall JE, Lavoice HB, Marsh EE, Martin KA. Decrease in gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) pulse frequency with aging in postmenopausal women. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2000; 85:1794–1800.
[69] Welt CK, McNicholl DJ, Taylor AE, Hall JE. Female reproductive aging is marked by decreased secretion of dimeric inhibin. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1999; 84:105–111.
[70] Lockwood GM, Muttukrishna S, Groome NP, Knight PG, Ledger WL. Circulating inhibins and activin A during GnRH-analogue down-regulation and ovarian hyperstimulation with recombinant FSH for in-vitro fertilization-embryo transfer. Clin Endocrinol 1996; 45:741–748.
[71] Takagi T, Mizunuma H, Andoh K, Obara M, Yamaguchi M, Hasegawa Y, et al. Changes in serum immunoreactive inhibin during ovulation induction in women with amenorrhea. Endocrinol J 1994; 41:703–708.
[72] Hayes FJ, Hall JE, Beopple PA, Crowley WF. Clinical review 96: Differential control of gonadotrophin secretion in the human: endocrine role of inhibin. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1998; 83:1835–1841.
[73] Cobellis L, Luisi S, Pezzani I, Reis FM, De Leo V, Petraglia F. Serum inhibin A, inhibin B, and pro-alphaC levels are altered after surgically or pharmacologically induced menopause. Fertil Steril 2002; 77:745–749.
[74] Casper RW, Seufert RJ, Schaffrath M, Pollow K. Concentrations of inhibins and activin in women undergoing stimulation with recombinant FSH for *in vitro* fertilization treatment. Fertil Steril 2001; 75:32–37.
[75] Eldar-Geva T, Roberston DM, Cahir N, Groome N, Gabbe MP, Maclachlan V, et al. Relationship between serum inhibin A and B and ovarian follicle development after a daily fixed dose administration of recombinant follicle-stimulating hormone. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2000; 85:607–613.
[76] Lindheim SR, Chang PL, Vidali A, Ferin M, Sauer MV. The utility of serum progesterone and inhibin A for monitoring natural-cycle IVF-ET. J Assist Reprod Genet 1998; 15:538–541.
[77] Petraglia F, Luisi S, Pautier P, Sabourin JC, Rey R, Lhomme C, et al. Inhibin B is the major form of inhibin/activin family secreted by granulosa cell tumors. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1998; 83:1029–1034.

[78] Welt CK, Hall JE, Adams JM, Taylor AE. Relationship of estradiol and inhibin to the follicle-stimulating hormone variability in hypergonadotropic hypogonadism or premature ovarian failure. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2005; 90:826–830.
[79] Carmina E, Azziz R. Diagnosis, phenotype, and prevalence of polycystic ovary syndrome. Fertil Steril 2006; 86:7–8.
[80] Roberts VJ, Barth S, El-Roeiy A, Yen SS. Expression of inhibin/activin system messenger ribonucleic acids and proteins in ovarian follicles from women with polycystic ovarian syndrome. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1994; 79:1434–1439.
[81] Lockwood GM, Muttukrishna S, Groome NP, Matthews DR, Ledger WL. Mid-follicular phase pulses of inhibin B are absent in polycystic ovarian syndrome and are initiated by successful laparoscopic ovarian diathermy: A possible mechanism regulating emergence of the dominant follicle. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1998; 83:1730–1735.
[82] Pigny P, Cortet-Rudelli C, Decanter C, Deroubaix D, Soudan B, Duhamel A, et al. Serum levels of inhibins are differentially altered in patients with polycystic ovary syndrome: Effects of being overweight and relevance to hyperandrogenism. Fertil Steril 2000; 73:972–977.
[83] Welt CK, Taylor AE, Martin KA, Hall JE. Serum inhibin B in polycystic ovary syndrome: Regulation by insulin and luteinizing hormone. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2002; 87:5559–5565.
[84] Cortet-Rudelli C, Pigny P, Decanter C, Leroy M, Maunoury-Lefebvre C, Thomas-Desrousseaux P, et al. Obesity and serum luteinizing hormone level have an independent and opposite effect on the serum inhibin B level in patients with polycystic ovary syndrome. Fertil Steril 2002; 77:281–287.
[85] Laven JS, Imani B, Eijkemans MJ, de Jong FH, Fauser BC. Absent biologically relevant associations between serum inhibin B concentrations and characteristics of polycystic ovary syndrome in normal gonadotrophic anovulatory infertility. Hum Reprod 2001; 16:1359–1364.
[86] Magoffin DA, Jakimiuk AJ. Inhibin A, inhibin B and activin A concentrations in follicular fluid from women with polycystic ovary syndrome. Hum Reprod 1998; 13:2693–2698.
[87] Laven JS, Fauser BC. Inhibins and adult ovarian function. Mol Cell Endocrinol 2004; 225:37–44.
[88] Burger HG, Cahir N, Robertson DM, Groome NP, Dudley E, Green A, et al. Serum inhibins A and B fall differentially as FSH rises in perimenopausal women. Clin Endocrinol 1998; 48:809–813.
[89] Santoro N, Adel T, Skurnick JH. Decreased inhibin tone and increased activin A secretion characterize reproductive aging in women. Fertil Steril 1999; 71:658–662.
[90] Klein NA, Battaglia DE, Miller PB, Branigan EF, Giudice LC, Soules MR. Ovarian follicular development and the follicular fluid hormones and growth factors in normal women of advanced reproductive age. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1996; 81:1946–1951.
[91] Danforth DR, Arbogast LK, Mrouch J, Kim MH, Kennard EA, Seifer DB. Dimeric inhibin: A direct marker of ovarian aging. Fertil Steril 1998; 70:119–123.
[92] Seifer DB, Lambert-Messerlian GM, Canik JA, Frishman GN, Schneyer AL. Serum inhibin levels are lower in ectopic than spontaneously conceived pregnancies. Fertil Steril 1996; 65:667–669.
[93] Petraglia F, Sawchenko P, Lim AT, Rivier J, Vale W. Localization, secretion, and action of inhibin in human placenta. Science 1987; 237:187–189.
[94] Muttukrishna S, Child TJ, Groome NP, Ledger WL. Feto-placental unit is the major source of inhibin-A and activin-A in early pregnancy. J Endocrinol 1996; 81:3328–3334.
[95] Illingworth PJ, Groome NP, Duncan WC, Grant V, Tovanabutra S, Baird DT, et al. Measurement of circulating inhibin forms during the establishment of pregnancy. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1996; 81:1471–1475.

[96] Luisi S, Florio P, Reis FM, Petraglia F. Inhibins in female and male reproductive physiology: Role in gametogenesis, conception, implantation and early pregnancy. Hum Reprod Update 2005; 11:123–135.
[97] Abe Y, Hasagawa Y, Miyamoto K, Yamaguchi M, Andoh A, Ibuki Y, et al. High concentrations of plasma immunoreactive inhibin during normal pregnancy in women. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1990; 71:133–137.
[98] Tabei T, Ochiai K, Terashima Y, Takanashi N. Serum levels of inhibin in maternal and umbilical blood during pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 1991; 164:896–900.
[99] Kettle LM, Roseff SF, Bangah ML, Burger HG, Yen SS. Circulating levels of inhibin in pregnant women at term: Simultaneous disappearance with estradiol and progesterone after delivery. Clin Endocrinol 1991; 34:19–23.
[100] Tovanabutra S, IIIingworth PJ, Ledger WL, Glasier AF, Baird DT. The relationship between peripheral immunoactive inhibin, human chorionic gonadotrophin, estradiol and progesterone during human pregnancy. Clin Endocrinol 1993; 38:101–107.
[101] D'Antona D, Mamers PM, Lowe PJM, Balazs N, Groome NP, Wallace EM. Evaluation of serum inhibin A as a surveillance marker after conservative management of tubal pregnancy. Hum Reprod 1998; 13:2305–2307.
[102] McLachalan RL, Healy D, Robertson DM, de Kreter D, Burger HG. The human placenta: A novel source of inhibin. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 1986; 140:485–490.
[103] McLachalan RI, Healy DL, Lutjen PY, Findlay JK, de Kretser DM, Burger HG. The maternal ovary is not the source of circulating inhibin levels during human pregnancy. Clin Endocrinol 1987; 27:663–668.
[104] Minami S, Yamoto M, Nakano R. Immunohistochemical localization of inhibin/activin subunits in human placenta. Obstet Gynecol 1992; 80:410–414.
[105] Li W, Olofsson JL, Jeung EB, Krisinger J, Yen BH, Leung PC. Gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) and cyclic AMP positively regulate inhibin subunit mRNA levels in human placental cells. Life Sci 1994; 55:1717–1724.
[106] Eramaa M, Heikinheimo K, Tuuri T, Hilden K, Ritvos O. Inhibin/activin subunit mRNA expression in human granulosa-luteal cells. Mol Cell Endocrinol 1993; 92:R15–R20.
[107] Treetampinich C, O'Connor AE, MacLachlan V, Groome NP, de Kretser DM. Maternal serum inhibin A concentrations in early pregnancy after IVF and embryo transfer reflect the corpus luteum contribution and pregnancy outcome. Hum Reprod 2000; 15:2028–2032.
[108] Illingworth PJ, Reddi K, Smith K, Baird DT. Pharmacological 'rescue' of the corpus luteum results in increased inhibin production. Clin Endocrinol 1990; 33:323–332.
[109] Sakai R, Shiozaki M, Tabuchi M, Eto Y. The measurement of activin/EDF in mouse serum: Evidence for extragonadal production. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 1992; 188:921–926.
[110] Robertson DM, Foulds LM, Prisk M, Hedger MP. Inhibin/activin α-subunit monomer: Isolation and characterization. Endocrinology 1992; 130:1680–1687.
[111] Knight PG, Muttukrishna S, Groome NP. Development and application of a two-site enzyme immunoassay for the determination of total activin-A concentrations in serum and follicular fluid. J Endocrinol 1996; 148:267–279.
[112] Fowler PA, Evans LW, Groome NP, Templeton A, Knight PG. A longitudinal study of maternal serum inhibin-A, inhibin-B, activin-A, activin-AB, pro-αC and follistatin during pregnancy. Hum Reprod 1998; 13:3530–3536.
[113] O'Connor AE, McFarlane JR, Hayward S, Yohkaichiya T, Groome NP, deKretser DM. Serum activin A and follistatin concentrations during human pregnancy: A cross-sectional and longitudinal study. Hum Reprod 1999; 14:827–832.

[114] Silver HM, Lambert-Messerlian GM, Star JA, Hogan J, Canick JA. Comparison of maternal serum total activin A and inhibin A in normal, pre-eclamptic, and nonproteinuric gestationally hypertensive pregnancies. Am J Obstet Gynecol 1999; 180:1131–1137.
[115] Florio P, Luisi S, Ciarmela P, Severi FM, Bocchi C, Petraglia F. Inhibins and activins in pregnancy. Mol Cell Endocrinol 2004; 225:93–100.
[116] Seifer DB, Lambert-Messerlian G, Hogan LW, Gardiner AC, Blazar AS, Berk CA. Day 3 serum inhibin B is predictive of assisted reproductive technologies outcome. Fertil Steril 1997; 67:110–114.
[117] Petraglia F, Luisi S, Benedetto C, Zonca M, Florio P, Casarosa E, et al. Changes of dimeric inhibin-B levels in maternal serum throughout healthy gestation and in women with gestational diseases. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1997; 182:2991–2995.
[118] Redman CW, Roberts JM. Management of pre-eclampsia and the placenta. Placenta 1993; 12:1451–1454.
[119] North RA, Ferrier C, Long D, Townend K, Kincaid-Smith P. Uterine artery Doppler flow velocity waveforms in the second trimester for the prediction of pre-eclampsia and fetal growth retardation. Obstet Gynecol 1994; 83:378–386.
[120] Suarez VR, Trelles JG, Miyahira JM. Urinary calcium in asymptomatic primigravidas who later developed pre-eclampsia. Obstet Gynecol 1996; 87:79–82.
[121] Ashour AM, Lieberman ES, Haug LE, Repke JT. The value of elevated second-trimester beta-human chorionic gonadotropin in predicting development of pre-eclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 1997; 172:438–442.
[122] Aquilina J, Barnett A, Thompson O, Harrington K. Second-trimester maternal serum inhibin A concentration as an early marker for preeclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 1999; 181:131–136.
[123] Cuckle H, Sehmi I, Jones R. Maternal serum inhibin A can predict pre-eclampsia. Br J Obstet Gynaecol 1998; 105:1101–1103.
[124] Lambert-Messerlian GM, Silver HM, Petraglia F, Luisi S, Pezzani I, Maybruck WM, et al. Second-trimester levels of maternal serum human chorionic gonadotropin and inhibin α as predictors of pre-eclampsia in the third trimester of pregnancy. J Soc Gynecol Investig 2000; 3:170–174.
[125] Silver HM, Lambert-Messerlian GM, Reis FM, Diblasio AM, Petraglia F, Canick JA. Mechanism of increased maternal serum total activin a and inhibin a in preeclampsia. J Soc Gynecol Investig 2002; 9:308–312.
[126] Petraglia F, De Vita D, Gallinelli A, Aguzzoli L, Genazzani AR, Romero R, et al. Abnormal concentration of maternal serum activin-A in gestational diseases. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1995; 80:558–561.
[127] Grobman WA, Wang EY. Serum levels of activin A and inhibin A and the subsequent development of pre-eclampsia. Obstet Gynecol 2000; 96:390–394.
[128] Itoh Y, Suzuki Y, Yamamoto T, Kojima K, Murakami I, Suzumori N. Increase in serum concentrations of inhibin in early onset pre-eclampsia with intrauterine growth restriction. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 2006; 32:80–85.
[129] Muttukrishna S, North RA, Morris J, Schellenberg JC, Taylor RS, Asslin J, et al. Serum inhibin A and activin A are elevated prior to the onset of pre-eclampsia. Hum Reprod 2000; 15:1640–1645.
[130] Spencer K, Yu CK, Savvidou M, Papgeorghiou AT, Nicolaides KH. Prediction of pre-eclampsia by uterine artery Doppler ultrasonography and maternal serum pregnancy-associated plasma protein-A, free beta-human chorionic gonadotropin, activin A and inhibin A at 22 + 0 to 24 + 6 weeks' gestation. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 2006; 27:658–663.

[131] Hamasaki T, Masuzaki H, Miyamura T, Yoshimura S, Hamaguchi N, Ishimaru T. High concentrations of serum inhibin in pre-eclampsia. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 2000; 71:7–11.
[132] Muttukrishna S, Hyett J, Paine M, et al. Uterine vein and maternal urinary levels of activin A and inhibin A in pre-eclampsia patients. Clin Endocrinol 2006; 64:469–473.
[133] Reis FM, D'Antona D, Petraglia F. Predictive value of hormone measurements in maternal and fetal complications of pregnancy. Endocrinol Rev 2002; 23:230–257.
[134] Florio P, Reis FM, Pezzani I, Luisi S, Severi FM, Petraglia F. The addition of activin A and inhibin A measurement to uterine artery Doppler velocimetry to improve the early prediction of pre-eclampsia. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 2003; 21:165–169.
[135] Aitken DA, Wallace EM, Crossley JA, Swanston IA, van Pareren Y, van Maarle M, et al. Dimeric inhibin A as a marker for Down's syndrome in early pregnancy. N Engl J Med 1996; 334:1231–1236.
[136] Harrison G, Goldie D. Second-trimester Down's syndrome serum screening: Double, triple or quadruple marker testing? Ann Clin Biochem 2006; 43:67–72.
[137] Wallace EM, Grant VE, Swanston IA, Groome NP. Evaluation of maternal serum dimeric inhibin-A as a first trimester marker of Down's syndrome. Prenat Diagn 1995; 15:359–362.
[138] Wallace EM, Crossley JA, Riley SC, Balfour C, Groome NP, Aitken DA. Inhibin-B and pro-alphaC-containing inhibins in amniotic fluid from chromosomally normal and Down syndrome pregnancies. Prenat Diagn 1998; 18:213–217.
[139] Wenstrom KD, Owen J, Chu DC, Boots L. Elevated second trimester dimeric inhibin A levels identify Down syndrome pregnancies. Am J Obstet Gynecol 1997; 177:992–996.
[140] Wenstrom KD, Owen J, Chu DC, Boots L. Prospective evaluation of free beta-subunit of human chorionic gonadotropin and dimeric inhibin A for aneuploidy detection. Am J Obstet Gynecol 1999; 181:887–892.
[141] Hackshaw AK, Wald NJ. Repeat testing in antenatal screening for Down syndrome using dimeric inhibin-A in combination with other maternal serum markers. Prenat Diagn 2001; 21:58–61.
[142] Dalgliesh GL, Aitken DA, Lyall F, Howatson AG, Connor JM. Placental and maternal serum inhibin-A and activin-A levels in Down's syndrome pregnancies. Placenta 2001; 22:227–234.
[143] Debieve F, Bouckaert A, Hubinont C, Thosmas K. Multiple screening for fetal Down's syndrome with the classic triple test, dimeric inhibin A and ultrasound. Gynecol Obstet Investig 2000; 49:221–226.
[144] Illingworth P, Groome NP, Byrd W, Rainey WE, McNeilly A, Mather JP, et al. Inhibin-B: A likely candidate for the physiologically important form of inhibin in men. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1996; 81:1321–1325.
[145] Anawalt BD, Bebb RA, Matsumot AM, Groome NP, Illingworth P, McNeilly A, et al. Serum inhibin-B levels reflect Sertoli cell function in normal men and in men with testicular failure. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1996; 81:3341–3345.
[146] Hancock AD, Robertson DM, de Krester DM. Inhibin and inhibin α chain precursors are produced by immature rat Sertoli cells in culture. Biol Reprod 1992; 46:155–161.
[147] Petersen PM, Andersson AM, Rorth M, Daugaard G, Skakkebaek NE. Undetectable inhibin B serum levels in men after testicular irradiation. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1999; 84:213–215.
[148] Sharpe RM, Turner KJ, McKinnell C, Groome NP. Inhibin B levels in plasma of the male rat from birth to adulthood: Effect of experimental manipulation of Sertoli cell number. J Androl 1999; 20:94–101.
[149] Au CL, Robertson DM, de Krester DM. Changes in testicular inhibin following a single episode of heating of rat testes. Endocrinology 1987; 120:973–977.

[150] Mather JP, Moore A, Li RH. Activins, inhibins and follistatins: Further thoughts on a growing family of regulators. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 1997; 215:209–222.
[151] Meinhardt A, MeFarlane JR, Seitz J, de Krester DM. Activin maintains the condensed type of mitochondria in germ cells. Mol Cell Endocrinol 2000; 168:111–117.
[152] Seitz J, Mobius J, Bergmann M, Meinhardt A. Mitochondrial differentiation during meiosis of male germ cells. Int J Androl 1995; 2:7–11.
[153] de Krester DM, Loveland KM. Inhibins, activins and follistatin: Actions on the testis. Mol Cell Endocrinol 2001; 180:87–92.
[154] Nachtigall LB, Boepple PA, Seminara SB, Khoury RH, Sluss PM, Lecain AC, et al. Inhibin B secretion in males with gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) deficiency before and during long-term GnRH replacement: Relationship to spontaneous puberty, testicular volume, and prior treatment—A clinical research center study. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1996; 81:3520–3525.
[155] Seminara SB, Boepple PA, Natchtigall LB, Pralong FP. Inhibin B in males with gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) deficiency: Changes in serum concentration after short term physiologic GnRH replacement—A clinical research center study. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1996; 81:3692–3696.
[156] Foresta C, Bettella A, Rossato M, LaSala G, DePaoli M, Plebani M. Inhibin B plasma concentrations in oligozoospermic subjects before and after therapy with follicle stimulating hormone. Hum Reprod 1999; 14:906–912.
[157] Bilezikjian LM, Blount AL, Corrigan AZ, Leal A, Chen Y, Vale WW. Actions of activins, inhibins and follistatins: Implications in anterior pituitary function. Clin Experimental Pharmacol P 2001; 28:244–248.
[158] Anderson RA, Wallace EM, Groome NP, Bellis AJ, Wu FC. Physiological relationships between inhibin B, follicle stimulating hormone secretion and spermatogenesis in normal men and response to gonadotrophin suppression by exogenous testosterone. Hum Reprod 1997; 12:746–751.
[159] Klingmuller D, Haidl G. Inhibin B in men with normal and disturbed spermatogenesis. Hum Reprod 1997; 12:2376–2378.
[160] Mahmoud AM, Goemaere S, De Bacquer D, Comhaire FH, Kaufman JM. Serum inhibin B levels in community-dwelling elderly men. Clin Endocrinol 2000; 53:141–147.
[161] Crofton PM, Illingworth PJ, Groome NP, Stirling HF, Swanston I, Gow S, et al. Changes in dimeric inhibin-A and B during normal early puberty in boys and girls. Clin Endocrinol 1997; 46:109–114.
[162] Luisi S, Florio P, D'Antona D, Severi FM, Sanseverino F, Danero S, et al. Maternal serum inhibin A levels are a marker of a viable trophoblast in incomplete and complete miscarriage. Eur J Endocrinol 2003; 148:233–236.
[163] Florio P, Luisi S, D'Antona D, Severi FM, Rago G, Petraglia F. Maternal serum inhibin A levels may predict pregnancy outcome in women with threatened abortion. Fertil Steril 2004; 81:468–470.
[164] Zwahlen M, Gerber S, Bersinger NA. First trimester markers for pre-eclampsia: Placental vs. non-placental protein serum levels. Gynecol Obstet Investig 2007; 63:15–21.
[165] Malone FD, Canick JA, Ball RH, Nyberg DA, Comstock CH, Bukowski R, et al. First-and Second-Trimester Evaluation of Risk (FASTER) Research Consortium. First-trimester or second-trimester screening, or both, for Down'' syndrome. N Engl J Med 2005; 353:2001–2011.
[166] Petraglia F, Gomez R, Luisi S, Florio P, Tolosa JE, Stomati M, et al. Increased mid-trimester amniotic fluid activin A: A risk factor for subsequent fetal death. Am J Obstet Gynecol 1999; 180:194–197.

[167] Florio P, Reis FM, Pezzani I, Luisi S, Severi FM, Petraglia F. The addition of activin A and inhibin A measurement to uterine artery Doppler velocimetry to improve the early prediction of pre-eclampsia. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 2003; 21:165–169.
[168] Muttukrishna S, Hyett J, Paine M, Moodley J, Groome N, Rodeck C. Uterine vein and maternal urinary levels of activin A and inhibin A in pre-eclampsia patients. Clin Endocrinol 2006; 64:469–473.
[169] D'Antona D, Reis FM, Benedetto C, Evans LW, Groome NP, de Kretser DM, et al. Increased maternal serum activin A but not follistatin levels in pregnant women with hypertensive disorders. J Endocrinol 2000; 165:157–162.
[170] Farina A, Lambert-Messerlian GM, Canick JA, Banzola I, Carletti A, Concu M, et al. Total activin A in maternal blood as a marker of preterm delivery in low-risk asymptomatic patients. Prenat Diagn 2006; 26:277–281.

This page intentionally left blank

uPA AND PAI-1 IN BREAST CANCER: REVIEW OF THEIR CLINICAL UTILITY AND CURRENT VALIDATION IN THE PROSPECTIVE NNBC-3 TRIAL

K. Annecke,* M. Schmitt,* U. Euler,* M. Zerm,† D. Paepke,* S. Paepke,* G. von Minckwitz,† C. Thomssen,‡ and N. Harbeck*

***Frauenklinik und Poliklinik der Technischen Universität München, München 81675, Germany**
†German Breast Group, Neu-Isenburg, Germany
‡Frauenklinik, Martin-Luther-Universität Halle, Germany

1. Abstract 31
2. The uPA/PAI-1 System 32
3. Clinical Relevance of uPA and PAI-1 in Breast Cancer 33
   3.1. Prognostic Impact of uPA and PAI-1 34
   3.2. Predictive Impact of uPA and PAI-1 35
4. Methods for Determination of uPA and PAI-1 37
5. Clinical NNBC-3 Trial 37
6. Current Use of uPA/PAI-1 in Clinical Decision Making 40
   References 42

1. Abstract

The plasminogen activator system is a complex system with multiple interactions and members participating in fibrinolysis, cell migration, angiogenesis, wound healing, embryogenesis, tumor cell dissemination, and metastasis in a variety of solid tumors. Increased levels of uPA and/or PAI-1 in primary tumor tissues of breast cancer patients correlate with tumor aggressiveness and poor clinical outcome. Patients with high tumor tissue antigen content of uPA and/or PAI-1 have a worse probability of disease-free and overall survival than patients with low levels of both of the biomarkers, serving as prognostic markers. The clinical utility of uPA and PAI-1 has

0065-2423/08 $35.00
DOI: 10.1016/S0065-2423(07)00002-9

been proven on the highest level of evidence (LOE-I). Next to being clinically useful prognostic factors allowing estimates of the course of disease in early breast cancer, uPA and PAI-1 may also serve as predictive factors predicting response to systemic therapy. Node-negative primary breast cancer patients with high uPA/PAI-1 levels benefit significantly from adjuvant chemotherapy. The aim of the ongoing NNBC-3 trial is to determine the benefits of a sequential anthracycline–docetaxel regimen in high-risk node-negative breast cancer patients compared to the current standard of anthracycline-based chemotherapy. At present, uPA and PAI-1 provide the unique opportunity to allow validated and clinically relevant risk assessment of breast cancer patients, over and above that provided by established risk factors. Therefore, in the evidence-based, annually updated AGO guidelines for breast cancer management, the German Working Group for Gynecological Oncology (AGO) has recommended both biomarkers as risk-group-classification markers for routine clinical decision making in node-negative breast cancer, next to established clinical and histomorphological factors.

2. The uPA/PAI-1 System

The plasminogen activator system, also known as the fibrinolytic system, consists of the serine protease-type plasminogen activators uPA (urokinase-type plasminogen activator) and tPA (tissue-type plasminogen activator), the high-affinity cell surface-associated receptor for uPA (u-PAR; CD87), the plasminogen activator inhibitors type 1 and 2 (PAI-1, PAI-2), and the proenzyme plasminogen which is activated by uPA or tPA into the proteolytically active serine protease plasmin. Although uPA and tPA are quite similar in structure and have common inhibitors and physiological substrates, their physiological roles are distinct [1]. This system is not only highly specific in catalyzing plasminogen into plasmin by tPA present in the blood stream (in the presence of fibrin) but is also effective in tissues when uPA is attached to its cellular receptor uPAR leading to activation of nearby plasminogen and subsequently to degradation of extracellular fibrin and other matrix proteins by the newly generated plasmin [2–5].

The plasminogen activator system is a complex system with multiple interactions among its members and also with constituents of the extracellular matrix. Traditionally, the role of tPA was primarily in fibrinolysis and that of uPA in cell migration, especially in angiogenesis, wound healing, embryogenesis, tumor cell dissemination, and metastasis [6–10]. The functional role of the plasminogen inhibitors is no longer simply to inhibit plasminogen activators: for PAI-1, a role in promoting cycles of attachment and detachment of the cell from the extracellular matrix that is independent

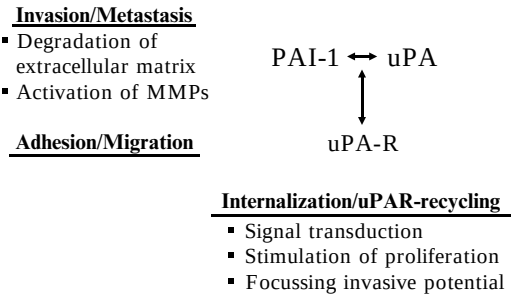


FIG. 1. Key role of the uPA/PAI-1 system in tumor invasion and metastasis.

of its role as an enzymatic inhibitor of uPA was revealed; PAI-2 has an unidentified role in the regulation of cell death, where it can alter gene expression, influence the rate of cell proliferation and differentiation, and inhibit programmed cell death (apoptosis) in a manner independent of urokinase inhibition [11,12].

Well-balanced production and activation of uPA/PAI-1 system components therefore can lead to changes in degradation of the extracellular matrix and also affect cell adhesion, angiogenesis, cell proliferation, and cell invasion, not only under physiological conditions but also under pathological conditions such as cancer (Fig. 1). Expression of uPA and PAI-1 is often higher in the epithelial and stromal cells of the tumor tissue than in the surrounding normal tissue pointing to the fact that in cancer, regulation of uPA-mediated extracellular proteolysis does involve a complex interplay between cancer cells, nonmalignant stroma cells, and components of the plasminogen activation system [13].

3. Clinical Relevance of uPA and PAI-1 in Breast Cancer

Elevated expression of uPA and PAI-1 at the mRNA and protein level was demonstrated in basically every solid malignant tumor type examined, such as cancer of the breast, ovary, esophagus, stomach, colorectum, kidney, lung, or liver. Increased levels of uPA and/or PAI-1 in primary tumor tissues correlate with tumor aggressiveness and poor patient outcome [9]. Among all of the articles published in the scientific literature on this subject, most data regarding the prognostic and predictive value of uPA/PAI-1 and their impact on clinical decision making are available for breast cancer. These data consistently show that high levels of uPA and/or PAI-1 determined in primary tumor tissue extracts by protein analysis or mRNA screening are associated with poor clinical outcome of the patient [14–22].

3.1. Prognostic Impact of uPA and PAI-1

In primary breast cancer, the validation process demonstrating the clinical utility of uPA and PAI-1 was achieved by several, mostly European, research centers. In 1988, Duffy *et al.* were the first to show that the serine protease uPA has a prognostic impact on breast cancer patients. They demonstrated that high enzymatic activity of uPA in primary breast cancer tissues correlates with tumor size, number of lymph nodes involved, and with shorter disease-free survival when compared to patients with low uPA activity [23].

Soon after this initial observation, Jänicke *et al.* demonstrated in 1989 that determination of the uPA antigen content in primary tumor tissue by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) also allows prediction of the course of disease in patients who did not receive any adjuvant treatment [24, 25]. At the same time, it also became apparent that not only the antigen level of uPA but also that of PAI-1 possesses prognostic value in node-negative and node-positive breast cancer patients [26]. A model was then developed which still is of clinical relevance: Patients with high tumor tissue antigen content of uPA and/or PAI-1 have a worse probability of disease-free and overall survival than patients with low levels of both of the biomarkers [27–29]. Regarding risk-group assessment, the combination of uPA/PAI-1 (both low vs either/or both high) was found to be superior to either factor taken alone. Furthermore, based on multivariate analyses, uPA and PAI-1 are statistically independent of established prognostic factors such as tumor size, tumor grade, steroid hormone receptor status, or menopausal status [29]. As a prognostic factor, uPA/PAI-1 is superior to the oncoprotein HER2 and thus renders statistically independent, clinically important information [30, 31]. Other international research groups reported a similar prognostic impact of uPA and PAI-1 in breast cancer [31–34]. Moreover, the published interaction between PAI-1 and vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) warrants further investigation into the relationship between biomarkers of angiogenesis and those of the protease cascade [34, 35].

In order to achieve the highest level of evidence (LOE-I) for clinical utility of a cancer-associated biomarker, according to the ASCO tumor marker utility grading system (TMUGS) [36], clinical significance of a prognostic (or predictive) cancer biomarker must be evaluated either by a prospective randomized clinical trial or a large meta-analysis. Regarding this guideline, for uPA/PAI-1, both the criteria were fulfilled by: (1) a prospective randomized multicenter breast cancer therapy trial (Chemo N0) in which a total of 689 patients were enrolled in 14 study centers in Germany and Slovenia between 1993 and 1998 [37]; (2) a large meta-analysis conducted by the EORTC Receptor and Biomarker Group, comprising 8377 breast cancer patients from 18 independent datasets [38] (EORTC = European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer; a trans-European cancer foundation based in Brussels, Belgium).

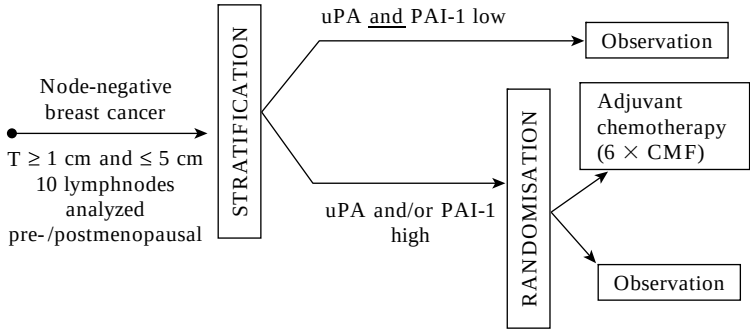


FIG. 2. Study design of the Chemo N0 trial [17].

In the Chemo N0 trial (Fig. 2), uPA and PAI-1 antigen content were determined in primary tumor tissue extracts by commercially available ELISA kits obtained from American Diagnostica Inc., Stamford, CT, USA. Patients with low uPA and PAI-1 content were allocated to the observation arm; patients with high uPA and/or PAI-1 content were randomized to either adjuvant chemotherapy with six cycles of CMF (cyclophosphamide/methotrexate/5-fluorouracil) or observation only. By comparing the two observation arms (low vs high uPA/PAI-1), the prognostic impact of uPA/PAI-1 could be evaluated in a prospective fashion. The first interim analysis of the Chemo N0 trial after a median follow-up time of 32 months demonstrated a statistically independent prognostic impact of uPA/PAI-1 with regard to disease-free survival. Also, previously optimized cut-off values for uPA and PAI-1 to discriminate between low and high uPA/PAI-1 were confirmed [37]. A second analysis after a median follow-up time of 50 months comprising 647 patients consolidated the prognostic impact of uPA/PAI-1 regarding disease-free and overall survival. This analysis revealed that node-negative breast cancer patients presenting with low uPA/PAI-1 in their primary tumor tissues have a low-risk profile with a 5-year overall survival rate of ~95% even in the absence of any adjuvant systemic therapy [39].

3.2. PREDICTIVE IMPACT OF uPA AND PAI-1

Next to being clinically useful prognostic factors allowing estimates of the course of disease in early breast cancer, uPA and PAI-1 may also serve as predictive factors predicting response to systemic therapy. As yet, only few studies have been published looking at the predictive impact of uPA and

PAI-1 regarding response or failure to chemotherapy or endocrine therapy in breast cancer. For instance, in the palliative setting, it was shown that metastasized breast cancer patients with high levels of uPA and PAI-1 in their primary tumor tissue responded poorly to palliative endocrine tamoxifen therapy, compared to patients with low levels of both factors [40, 41]. In the neoadjuvant setting, Pierga *et al.* looked at the correlation between PAI-1 levels determined in drill biopsy tumor tissue samples taken before anthracycline-containing neoadjuvant chemotherapy and in tumor biopsies taken after chemotherapy at the time of primary surgery in a small collective of 69 patients. No association was found between initial PAI-1 levels and clinical response to primary chemotherapy [42].

In early breast cancer, the improvement in clinical risk assessment and therapy benefit prediction gained by combining uPA and PAI-1 was evaluated by Harbeck *et al.* [29]. For this, uPA and PAI-1 levels were prospectively measured by ELISA in tumor tissue extracts of 761 patients with primary breast cancer. The criterion either alone or by both factors has identified with high sensitivity the patients at high risk for disease recurrence while keeping more than half of the patients in the low-risk group. More interestingly, a significant interaction between uPA/PAI-1 and adjuvant systemic therapy was demonstrated suggesting a benefit from adjuvant therapy in high-risk breast cancer patients as defined by uPA/PAI-1. Harbeck *et al.*, in a subsequent study of 3424 primary breast cancer patients from breast cancer centers in Munich, Germany, and Rotterdam, The Netherlands, evaluated the predictive impact of uPA/PAI-1 regarding response to adjuvant chemo- and endocrine therapy [43]. It was shown that patients with high uPA/PAI-1 levels had an enhanced benefit from adjuvant chemotherapy compared to those with low levels of the biomarkers. No corresponding interaction between endocrine therapy and low or high uPA/PAI-1 levels was observed. The uPA/PAI-1-dependent benefit from adjuvant chemotherapy was subsequently validated in the pooled analysis collective of the EORTC Receptor and Biomarker Group [44].

In the prospective multicenter Chemo N0 trial, node-negative primary breast cancer patients with high uPA/PAI-1 levels were either randomized to CMF-based chemotherapy or to observation only, thereby looking at the clinical value of a therapeutic intervention in high uPA/PAI-1 patients. Already after a short follow-up period of 32 months, a considerable and statistically significant benefit from adjuvant CMF chemotherapy was also observed in high uPA/PAI-1 node-negative breast cancer patients, which was still valid after a longer median follow-up time of 50 months [37, 39]. This prospective randomized multicenter clinical trial therefore not only validated the prognostic value of uPA/PAI-1 in node-negative breast cancer patients but also demonstrated their predictive impact at the highest level of evidence, LOE-1.

4. Methods for Determination of uPA and PAI-1

In the majority of published retrospective studies, quantification of uPA and PAI-1 antigen levels in tumor tissue extracts was performed using the commercially available ELISA kits [27]. These assays were also used for the prospective Chemo N0 clinical trial where routine tissue analysis for clinical decision making within the trial was conducted in six different laboratories [37]. Consequently, for routine use, quantitative determination of uPA and PAI-1 antigen content by ELISA using these assays is recommended, employing protein extracts from fresh-frozen primary breast cancer tissue samples. These assays can also be applied to assess protein extracts obtained from small breast cancer biopsies, such as core biopsy specimens or cryostat sections [45]. The uPA and PAI-1 ELISA tests have been standardized and quality assured by the Receptor and Biomarker Group and the PathoBiology Group of the EORTC [46–48].

At present, PCR-based mRNA analysis of uPA and/or PAI-1 messenger expression has not reached the level of clinical routine, mainly due to the lack of validated, multicenter clinical studies. Still, such studies should be encouraged as recent publications, although on a few patient collectives only, indicated feasibility of such a test system for breast cancer tissue uPA/PAI-1 analysis, which would be independent of protein expression or internalization of uPA/PAI-1 complexes by the cells [49–52].

Likewise, no validated multicenter clinically relevant breast cancer immunohistochemistry studies, using uPA and/or PAI-1 directed antibodies and routinely processed paraffin-embedded formalin-fixed breast cancer specimens, have been conducted so far.

Consequently, harmonization of various detection and quantification systems for uPA and PAI-1 at the gene and protein level is one of the current tasks of the EORTC PathoBiology Group. In this context, we would like to mention that in addition to mRNA and protein expression, epigenetic modification of CpG islands within the promoter region of the uPA gene is also an indicator of tumor aggressiveness; still, prospective breast cancer trials observing uPA DNA-methylation as a stratification factor have not yet been conducted [53, 54].

5. Clinical NNBC-3 Trial

As a consequence of the results of the Chemo N0 breast cancer trial, a number of clinical questions were answered but others still remain open regarding prognosis and therapy response prediction of breast cancer patients.

Breast cancer patients with low levels of uPA and PAI-1 comprising about half of the node-negative breast cancer patients have a rather low risk of disease recurrence (<10%) and therefore are not subjected to adjuvant systemic chemotherapy. In contrast, patients with high uPA and/or PAI-1 levels, who are at risk to develop metastasis do benefit from adjuvant systemic therapy.

A second prospective multicenter phase III therapy trial, the NNBC-3 trial (Node Negative Breast Cancer 3-trial) is now open for patient recruitment [Principal investigators: Prof. Dr. Christoph Thomssen ("Leiter der Klinischen Prüfung" according to German law), University of Halle; and Prof. Dr. Nadia Harbeck, Technical University of Munich, Germany]. The two main aims of this trial are: (1) to compare risk assessment and clinical outcome based on tumor biological factors uPA/PAI-1 to that based on established, clinical and histomorphological factors; and (2) to optimize the adjuvant chemotherapy regimen for high-risk node-negative breast cancer patients. The NNBC-3 trial is an intergroup trial conducted in cooperation with the AGO (German "Arbeitsgemeinschaft Gynäkologische Onkologie"), the EORTC PathoBiology Group, and the German Breast Group. By end of October 2007, recruitment was at 2022 patients who came from 97 clinical centers in Germany and France. Node-negative primary breast cancer patients aged 18–70 years with a tumor size between 0.5 and 5 cm are eligible for the trial. Recruitment centers are allowed to select risk assessment criteria either using established clinical and histomorphological criteria or using determination of uPA/PAI-1 in primary tumor tissue extracts. Risk assessment by established factors takes the recommendations of the St. Gallen 2005 consensus meeting into account (Fig. 3A) [55]: Using these criteria, a node-negative breast cancer patient fulfilling any of the following criteria is regarded as being at high risk for disease recurrence: (1) age <35 years, peritumoral vascular invasion, tumor grade 3, steroid hormone receptors PgR−/ER+ or PgR−/ER−, or HER2-positive, or (2) tumor grade G2 and tumor size >2 cm.

The second option for risk assessment is based on the presence of the tumor biological factors uPA and PAI-1 in the primary tumor tissue. However, for risk assessment, node-negative primary breast cancer patients are first classified according to tumor grade. Patients with G1 tumors are considered at low risk and allocated to the observation arm; all G3 tumor patients are considered at high risk and therefore are randomized in the chemotherapy arm. For patients with G2 tumors, further risk stratification according to uPA/PAI-1 is appropriate. Patients with 35 years of age or above and low uPA/PAI-1 are considered at low risk and thus allocated to the observation arm. Patients with 35 years of age or above and high uPA and/or PAI-1, or those younger than 35 years of age, are randomized to one of the two chemotherapy regimens.

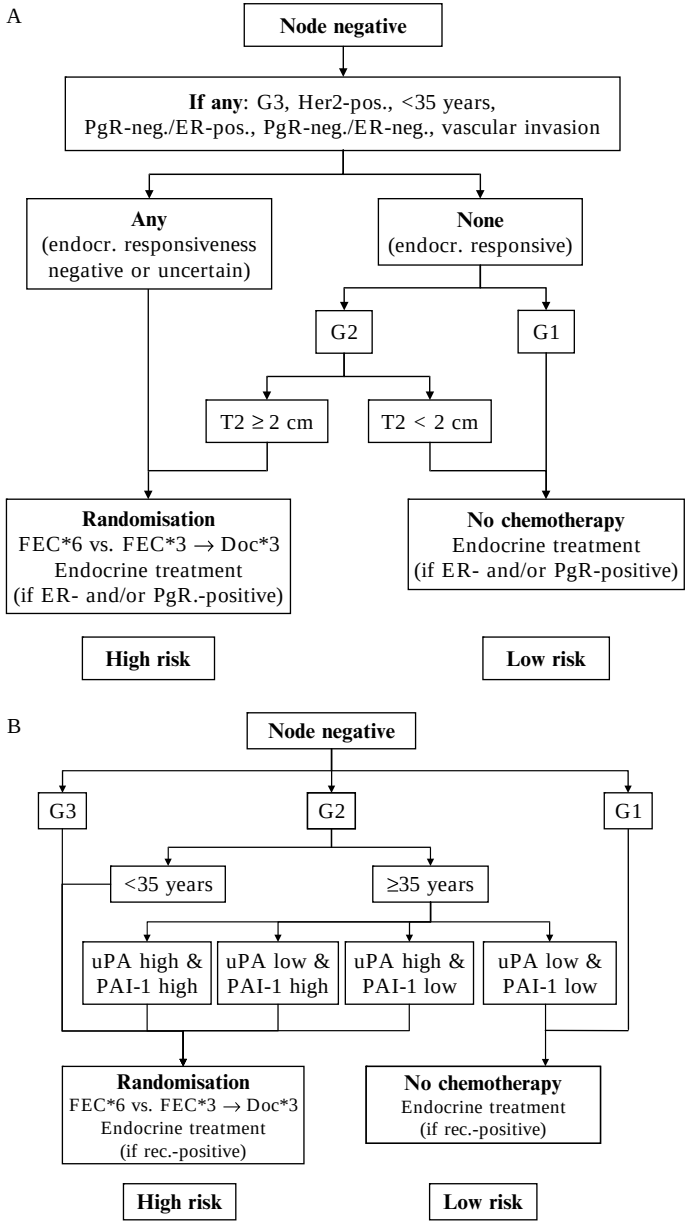


FIG. 3. (A) NNBC-3 trial: clinical and histomorphological risk assessment. (B) NNBC-3 trial: tumor biological risk assessment.

In the NNBC-3 trial, all patients defined as being at high risk for disease recurrence are randomized to either six cycles of $FE_{100}C$ (5-fluorouracil/epirubicin/cyclophosphamide) every three weeks or to three cycles of $FE_{100}C$ followed by three cycles of docetaxel every three weeks. Node-negative patients defined as being at low risk for disease recurrence are allocated to the observation arm and receive endocrine therapy according to the AGO guidelines if applicable [56].

The overall aim of the trial is to compare both risk stratification methods—the clinical and histomorphological and the tumor biological one—and to determine the benefit of a sequential anthracycline–docetaxel regimen in high-risk node-negative breast cancer patients.

We would like to mention that another clinical therapy trial, the ADEBAR trial (Adjuvant Docetaxel versus Epirubicin-Based Regimen Trial), has already been completed in which ~1500 high-risk node-positive breast cancer patients with more than three involved axillary lymph nodes were enrolled. Patients recruited in 198 centers were randomized to either six cycles of $FE_{120}C$ or to six cycles of a three-weekly sequential anthracycline–docetaxel regimen. Testing for uPA and PAI-1 was an optional translational research subprotocol intended to evaluate the benefit of adding taxane to anthracycline-based chemotherapy in the two risk groups according to the uPA/PAI-1 status. The ADEBAR trial was closed for patient recruitment in spring 2005; clinical results and thus also results of the uPA/PAI-1 subprotocol are still pending.

6. Current Use of uPA/PAI-1 in Clinical Decision Making

Tumor biological factors uPA and PAI-1 were validated at the highest level of evidence regarding their prognostic and predictive impact in primary breast cancer. Therefore, the German Working Group for Gynecological Oncology (AGO) recommends both biomarkers for risk-group-classification and routine clinical decision making in node-negative breast cancer next to the established clinical and histomorphological factors. These recommendations were first issued in 2002 in the annually updated evidence-based AGO guidelines (www.ago-online.org) (Fig. 4) [56].

Still, although substantial and consistent data have been published and prospective clinical therapy trial evidence validating these prognostic factors and demonstrating the benefit of adjuvant chemotherapy in high uPA and/or PAI-1 node-negative breast cancer patients is available, these tumor biological markers have until recently not been integrated in international guidelines, such as the St. Gallen conference consensus [55]. While the clinical validity is not being disputed, one reason for the limited worldwide

A

Prognostic factors
in node negative breast cancer

Factor	Oxford LOE/GR		AGO
Tumor grade	2b	B	++
Tumor size	2b	B	+
Age	2b	B	+
uPA/PAI-1	1a	A	+
Proliferation (SPF, TLI, Ki67/MiB1)	2b	B	+/–

AGO - Leitlinie 2006: www.ago-online.org

B

Predictive factors
adjuvant therapy

Treatment	Factor	Oxford LOE/GR		AGO
Endocrine therapy	ER/PR status	1a	A	++
	Her-2	2b	D	–
Ovarian ablation	Menopausal status	1c	A	++
Aromatase inhibitors	Menopausal status	1c	A	++
Chemotherapy	HER-2	2b	D	–
	uPA/PAI	2a	C	+/–
Trastuzumab	HER-2	2b	D	++

AGO - Leitlinie 2006: www.ago-online.org

FIG. 4. AGO 2006 Breast Cancer Treatment Guidelines: prognostic (A) and predictive (B) factors for clinical routine use.

acceptance is certainly the necessity of fresh-frozen tumor tissue for preparation of tumor tissue extracts and ELISA testing, which is not available as a standard of care in many countries of the world, including USA. This is rather surprising since for many years fresh-frozen breast cancer tissue was set aside for steroid hormone receptor testing by the DCC or EIA test. Moreover, mRNA testing employing cDNA-microarray technology also requires fresh breast cancer tissue for analysis [57, 58]. Based on the level I evidence, the most recent ASCO guidelines 2007 have included uPA and PAI-1 as markers which are recommended for use in practice.

We want to stress again, that to date uPA and PAI-1 are the only breast cancer-associated biomarkers whose clinical utility was demonstrated by a prospective clinical trial (Chemo N0) with a second confirmatory trial (NNBC-3) on its way.

Regarding prospective gene signature validation in breast cancer patients, the first clinical therapy trials have just been launched, such as TAILORx (Trial Assigning IndividuaLized Options for Treatment, Rx), using the 16-gene disease recurrence score [59], or MINDACT (Microarray In Node-negative Disease may Avoid Chemo Therapy) using a 70-gene signature for risk assessment [57]. Thus, at present, only uPA and PAI-1 provide the unique opportunity to allow validated and clinically relevant risk assessment in breast cancer patients, over and above that provided by the traditional and established risk factors.

References

[1] Myohanen H, Vaheri A. Regulation and interactions in the activation of cell-associated plasminogen. Cell Mol Life Sci 2004; 61:2840–2858.
[2] Ellis V. Plasminogen activation at the cell surface. Curr Top Dev Biol 2003; 54:263–312.
[3] Longstaff C, Thelwell C. Understanding the enzymology of fibrinolysis and improving thrombolytic therapy. FEBS Lett 2005; 579:3303–3309.
[4] Collen D, Lijnen HR. Thrombolytic agents. Thromb Haemost 2005; 93:627–630.
[5] Stassen JM, Arnout J, Deckmyn H. The hemostatic system. Curr Med Chem 2004; 11:2245–2260.
[6] Dano K, Behrendt N, Hoyer-Hansen G, Johnsen M, Lund LR, Ploug M, et al. Plasminogen activation and cancer. Thromb Haemost 2005; 93:676–681.
[7] Andreasen PA, Kjoller L, Christensen L, Duffy MJ. The urokinase-type plasminogen activator system in cancer metastasis: A review. Int J Cancer 1997; 72:1–22.
[8] Mazar AP, Henkin J, Goldfarb RH. The urokinase plasminogen activator system in cancer: Implications for tumor angiogenesis and metastasis. Angiogenesis 1999; 3:15–32.
[9] Schmitt M, Wilhelm OG, Reuning U, Krüger A, Harbeck N, Lengyel E, et al. The plasminogen activation system as a novel target for therapeutic strategies. Fibrinolysis 2000; 14:114–132.
[10] Laufs S, Schumacher J, Allgayer H. Urokinase-receptor (u-PAR): An essential player in multiple games of cancer: A review on its role in tumor progression, invasion, metastasis, proliferation/dormancy, clinical outcome and minimal residual disease. Cell Cycle 2006; 5:1760–1771.
[11] Stefansson S, Lawrence DA. Old dogs and new tricks: Proteases, inhibitors, and cell migration. Sci STKE 2003; 2003(189):pe24.
[12] Medcalf RL, Stasinopoulos SJ. The undecided serpin. The ins and outs of plasminogen activator inhibitor type-2. FEBS J 2005; 272:4858–4867.
[13] Gandolfo GM, Conti L, Vercillo M. Fibrinolysis components as prognostic markers in breast cancer and colorectal carcinoma. Anticancer Res 1996; 16:2155–2159.
[14] Leissner P, Verjat T, Bachelot T, Paye M, Krause A, Puisieux A, et al. Prognostic significance of urokinase plasminogen activator and plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 mRNA expression in lymph node- and hormone receptor-positive breast cancer. BMC Cancer 2006; 6:216.
[15] Ryan BM, Konecny GE, Kahlert S, Wang HJ, Untch M, Meng G, et al. Survivin expression in breast cancer predicts clinical outcome and is associated with HER2, VEGF, urokinase plasminogen activator and PAI-1. Ann Oncol 2006; 17:597–604.

[16] Meo S, Dittadi R, Peloso L, Gion M. The prognostic value of vascular endothelial growth factor, urokinase plasminogen activator, and plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 in node-negative breast cancer. Int J Biol Markers 2004; 19:282–288.
[17] Manders P, Tjan-Heijnen VC, Span PN, Grebenchtchikov N, Geurts-Moespot A, van Tienoven DTH, et al. Complex of urokinase-type plasminogen activator with its type 1 inhibitor predicts poor outcome in 576 patients with lymph node-negative breast carcinoma. Cancer 2004; 101:486–494.
[18] Duffy MJ, Duggan C. The urokinase plasminogen activator system: A rich source of tumour markers for the individualised management of patients with cancer. Clin Biochem 2004; 37:541–548.
[19] Bouchet C, Ferrero-Pous M, Hacene K, Becette V, Spyratos F. Limited prognostic value of c-erbB-2 compared to uPA and PAI-1 in primary breast carcinoma. Int J Biol Markers 2003; 18:207–217.
[20] Cufer T, Borstnar S, Vrhovec I. Prognostic and predictive value of the urokinase-type plasminogen activator (uPA) and its inhibitors PAI-1 and PAI-2 in operable breast cancer. Int J Biol Markers 2003; 18:106–115.
[21] Spyratos F, Bouchet C, Tozlu S, Labroquere M, Vignaud S, Becette V, et al. Prognostic value of uPA, PAI-1 and PAI-2 mRNA expression in primary breast cancer. Anticancer Res 2002; 22:2997–3003.
[22] Castello R, Estelles A, Vazquez C, Falco C, Espana F, Almenar SM, et al. Quantitative real-time reverse transcription-PCR assay for urokinase plasminogen activator, plasminogen activator inhibitor type 1, and tissue metalloproteinase inhibitor type 1 gene expressions in primary breast cancer. Clin Chem 2002; 48:1288–1295.
[23] Duffy MJ, O'Grady P, Devaney D, O'Siorain L, Fennelly JJ, Lijnen HJ. Urokinase-plasminogen activator, a marker for aggressive breast carcinomas. Preliminary report. Cancer 1988; 62:531–533.
[24] Jänicke F, Schmitt M, Ulm K, Gossner W, Graeff J. Urokinase-type plasminogen activator antigen and early relapse in breast cancer. Lancet 1989; 2:1049.
[25] Jänicke F, Schmitt M, Hafter R, Hollrieder A, Babic R, Ulm K, et al. Urokinase-type plasminogen activator (u-PA) antigen is a predictor of early relapse in breast cancer. Fibrinolysis 1990; 4:69–78.
[26] Jänicke F, Schmitt M, Graeff H. Clinical relevance of the urokinase-type and tissue-type plasminogen activators and of their type 1 inhibitor in breast cancer. Semin Thromb Hemost 1991; 17:303–312.
[27] Harbeck N, Kates RE, Schmitt M, Gauger K, Kiechle M, Janicke F, et al. Urokinase-type plasminogen activator and its inhibitor type 1 predict disease outcome and therapy response in primary breast cancer. Clin Breast Cancer 2004; 5:348–352.
[28] Harbeck N, Kates RE, Look MP, Meijer-van Gelder ME, Klijn JGM, Krüger A, et al. Enhanced benefit from adjuvant chemotherapy in breast cancer patients classified high-risk according to urokinase-type plasminogen activator (uPA) and plasminogen activator inhibitor type 1 (n = 3424). Cancer Res 2002; 62:4617–4622.
[29] Harbeck N, Kates RE, Schmitt M. Clinical relevance of invasion factors urokinase-type plasminogen activator and plasminogen activator inhibitor type 1 for individualized therapy decisions in primary breast cancer is greatest when used in combination. J Clin Oncol. 2002; 20:1000–1007.
[30] Zemzoum I, Kates RE, Ross JS, Dettmar P, Dutta M, Henrichs C, et al. Invasion factors uPA/PAI-1 and HER2 status provide independent and complementary information on patient outcome in node-negative breast cancer. J Clin Oncol 2003; 21:1022–1028.

[31] Konecny G, Untch M, Arboleda J, Wilson C, Kahlert S, Boettcher B, et al. Her2/neu and urokinase-type plasminogen activator and its inhibitor in breast cancer. Clin Cancer Res 2001; 7:2448–2457.

[32] Foekens JA, Peters JA, Look MP, Portengen H, Schmitt M, Kramer MD, et al. The urokinase system of plasminogen activation and prognosis in 2780 breast cancer patients. Cancer Res 2000; 60:636–643.

[33] Kim SJ, Shiba E, Kobayashi T, Yayoi E, Furukawa J, Takatsuka Y, et al. Prognostic impact of urokinase-type plasminogen activator (PA), PA inhibitor type-1 and tissue-type PA antigen levels in node-negative breast cancer: A prospective study on multicenter basis. Clin Cancer Res 1998; 4:177–182.

[34] Meo S, Dittadi R, Peloso L, Gion M. The prognostic value of vascular endothelial growth factor, urokinase plasminogen activator and plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 in node-negative breast cancer. Int J Biol Markers 2004; 19:282–288.

[35] Eppenberger U, Kueng W, Schlaeppi JM, Roesel JL, Benz C, Mueller H, et al. Markers of tumor angiogenesis and proteolysis independently define high- and low-risk subsets of node-negative breast cancer patients. J Clin Oncol 1998; 16:3129–3136.

[36] Hayes DF, Bast R, Desch CE, Fritsche H, Kemeny NE, Jessup J, et al. A tumor marker utility grading system (TMUGS): A framework to evaluate clinical utility of tumor markers. J Natl Cancer Inst 1996; 88:1456–1466.

[37] Jänicke F, Prechtl A, Thomssen C, Harbeck N, Meisner C, Untch M, et al. Randomized adjuvant chemotherapy trial in high-risk, lymph node-negative breast cancer patients identified by urokinase-type plasminogen activator and plasminogen activator inhibitor type 1. J Natl Cancer Inst 2001; 93:913–920.

[38] Look MP, van Putten WLK, Duffy MJ, Harbeck N, Christensen IJ, Thomssen C, et al. Pooled analysis of prognostic impact of urokinase-type plasminogen activator and its inhibitor PAI-1 in 8377 breast cancer patients. J Natl Cancer Inst 2002; 94:116–128.

[39] Harbeck N, Meisner C, Prechtl A, Untch M, Selbmann HK, Sweep CGJ, et al. Level-I evidence for prognostic and predictive impact of uPA and PAI-1 in node-negative breast cancer provided by second scheduled analysis of multicenter Chemo-N0 therapy trial. Breast Cancer Res Treat 2001; 69:213.

[40] Jänicke F, Thomssen C, Pache L, et al. Urokinase (uPA) and PAI-1 as selection criteria for adjuvant chemotherapy in axillary node-negative breast cancer patients. In: Schmitt M, Graeff H, Jänicke F, editors. Prospects in Diagnosis and Treatment of Cancer. Netherlands: Elsevier Science, 1994: 207–218.

[41] Foekens JA, Look MP, Peters HA, van Putten WL, Portengen H, Klijn JG. Urokinase-type plasminogen activator and its inhibitor PAI-1: Predictors of poor response to tamoxifen therapy in recurrent breast cancer. J Natl Cancer Inst 1995; 87:751–756.

[42] Pierga JY, Laine-Bidron C, Beuzeboc P, DeCremoux P, Pouillart P, Magdelenat H. Plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 (PAI-1) is not related to response to neoadjuvant chemotherapy in breast cancer. Br J Cancer 1997; 76:537–540.

[43] Harbeck N, Kates RE, Look MP, Meijer-van Gelder ME, Klijn JG, Kruger A, et al. Enhanced benefit from adjuvant systemic chemotherapy in breast cancer patients classified high-risk according to uPA and PAI-1. Cancer Res 2002; 62:4617–4622.

[44] Harbeck N, Kates RE, Look MP, Foekens JA, on behalf of pooled analysis study of the EORTC Receptor and Biomarker Group (RBG). Pooled analysis *(n = 8,377)* evaluates predictive impact of uPA and PAI-1 for response to adjuvant therapy in breast cancer. J Clin Oncol 2004; 23(8):523.

[45] Schmitt M, Lienert S, Prechtel D, Sedlaczek E, Welk A, Reuning U, et al. The urokinase protease system as a target for breast cancer prognosis and therapy: Technical considerations. J Clin Ligand Assay 2002; 25:43–52.

[46] Sweep CG, Geurts-Moespot J, Grebenschikov N, de Witte JH, Heuvel JJ, Schmitt M, et al. External quality assessment of trans-European multicentre antigen determination (Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay) of urokinase-type plasminogen activator (uPA) and its type 1 Inhibitor (PAI-1) in human breast cancer tissue extracts. Br J Cancer 1998; 78:1434–1441.

[47] Sweep FC, Fritsche HA, Gion M, Klee GG, Schmitt M, et al. Considerations on development, validation, application and quality control of immuno(metric) biomarker assays in clinical cancer research: An EORTC-NCI working group report. Int J Oncol 2003; 23:1715–1726.

[48] Schmitt M, Harbeck N, Daidone MG, Brynner N, Duffy MJ, Foekens JA, et al. Identification, validation, and clinical implementation of tumor-associated biomarkers to improve therapy concepts, survival, and quality of life of cancer patients: Tasks of the Receptor and Biomarker Group of the European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer. Int J Oncol 2004; 25:1397–1406.

[49] Urban P, Vuaroqueaux V, Labuhn M, Delorenzi M, Wirapati P, Wight E, et al. Increased expression of urokinase-type plasminogen activator mRNA determines adverse prognosis in ErbB2-positive primary breast cancer. J Clin Oncol 2006; 24:4245–4253.

[50] Leissner P, Verjat T, Bachelot T, Paye M, Krause A, Puisieux A, et al. Prognostic significance of urokinase plasminogen activator and plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 mRNA expression in lymph node- and hormone receptor-positive breast cancer. BMC Cancer 2006; 6:216.

[51] Spyratos F, Bouchet C, Tozlu S, Labroquere M, Vignaud S, Becette V, et al. Prognostic value of uPA, PAI-1 and PAI-2 mRNA expression in primary breast cancer. Anticancer Res 2002; 22:2997–3003.

[52] Castello R, Estelles A, Vazquez C, Falco C, Espana F, Almenar SM, et al. Quantitative real-time reverse transcription-PCR assay for urokinase plasminogen activator, plasminogen activator inhibitor type 1, and tissue metalloproteinase inhibitor type 1 gene expressions in primary breast cancer. Clin Chem 2002; 48:1288–1295.

[53] Pakneshan P, Szyf M, Rabbani SA. Hypomethylation of urokinase (uPA) promoter in breast and prostate cancer: Prognostic and therapeutic implications. Curr Cancer Drug Targets 2005; 5:471–488.

[54] Pakneshan P, Tetu B, Rabbani SA. Demethylation of urokinase promoter as a prognostic marker in patients with breast carcinoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2004; 10:3035–3041.

[55] Goldhirsch A, Glick JH, Gelber RD, Coates AS, Thürlimann B, Senn H-J, et al. Meeting highlights: International expert consensus on the primary therapy of early breast cancer 2005. Ann Oncol 2005; 16:1569–1583.

[56] AGO 2006 guidelines for treatment of early and advanced breast cancer: www.ago-online.org.

[57] van't Veer L, Dai H, van de Vijver MJ, He YD, Hart AA, Mao M, et al. Gene expression profiling predicts clinical outcome of breast cancer. Nature 2002; 415:530–536.

[58] Foekens JA, Atkins D, Zhang Y, Sweep FC, Harbeck N, Paradiso A, et al. Multicenter validation of a gene expression based prognostic signature in lymph node-negative primary breast cancer. J Clin Oncol 2006; 24(11):1665–1671.

[59] Paik S, Shak S, Tang G, Kim C, Baker J, Cronin M, et al. A multigene assay to predict recurrence of tamoxifen-treated, node-negative breast cancer. NEJM 2004; 351:2817–2826.

This page intentionally left blank

ADVANCES IN MULTIPLE ANALYTE PROFILING

Virginia M. Salas, Bruce S. Edwards, and Larry A. Sklar

New Mexico Molecular Libraries Screening Center, University of New Mexico, Cancer Research and Treatment Center, 2325 Camino de Salud, Albuquerque, 87131 New Mexico

1. Abstract 47
2. Introduction 48
3. Multiple Analyte Profiling Platforms 49
   3.1. Planar Arrays and Hybrid Bead-Based Systems 49
   3.2. High-Content Cellular Imaging 52
   3.3. Suspension Arrays/Flow Cytometry 53
4. Fluorescence Technology 56
   4.1. Fluorescence-Based Assays 56
   4.2. Fluorescent Labels 58
5. Flow-Cytometry High-Content Profiling Applications 59
   5.1. Principles of Multiplexing for Suspension Arrays 59
   5.2. Multiplexed Nucleic Acid Endpoint Assays 61
   5.3. Multiplexed Protein Endpoint Assays 62
   5.4. Multiplex Assays of Molecular Assemblies 64
   5.5. Throughput 66
6. Future Directions 67
   References 68

1. Abstract

The advent of multiparameter technology has been driven by the need to understand the complexity in biological systems. It has spawned two main branches, one in the arena of high-content measurements, primarily in microscopy and flow cytometry where it has become commonplace to analyze multiple fluorescence signatures arising from multiple excitation sources and multiple emission wavelengths. Microscopy is augmented by topographical content that identifies the source location of the signature.

0065-2423/08 $35.00
DOI: 10.1016/S0065-2423(07)00003-0

The other branch involves multiplex technology. Here, the intent is to measure multiple analytes simultaneously. A key feature of multiplexing is an address system for the individual analytes. In planar arrays the address system is spatial, in which affinity reactions occur at defined locations. In suspension arrays, the address is encoded as a fluorescent signature in the particle assigned to a specific reaction or analyte. Several hybrid systems have also been developed for multiplexing.

In the commercial regime, the most widespread applications of multiplexing are currently in the areas of genome and biomarker analysis. Planar chips with fixed arrays are now available to probe the entire genome at the level of message expression and large segments of the genome at the level of single nucleotide polymorphism (SNP). In contrast, suspension arrays provide the potential for probing segments of the genome in a customized way, using capture tags that locate specific oligonucleotide sequences to specific array elements.

2. Introduction

High-content analytical techniques are rapidly being introduced into both research and clinical laboratories in response to a shift in perspective from the analysis of individual molecules to the analysis of complex biological systems. The task of undertaking large-scale analysis of biological interactions has been driven in part by recent advances in combinatorial chemistry, genomics, and proteomics. The proliferation of these approaches has been made possible by the expanding availability of tools that include reagent collections, shared databases, and analytical algorithms as well as miniaturization, automation, and cost-effective strategies that together are producing platforms for genome-scale analysis.

The power of multiple analyte profiling is in the utilization of technical and informational synergies in parallel systems, often in real time, revealing information among related analytes that may not be fully appreciated in conventional iterative assays. Simultaneous measurement of a number of different characteristics, a process that is referred to as multiparametric analysis, is beginning to be exploited in a number of applications. In multiplexing approaches, multiple sets of data are collected in a single reaction volume where each data set reports a unique analyte. For example, dozens and potentially hundreds of analytes can be measured simultaneously in microsphere-based systems [1]. Multiple bead sets are uniquely color coded with spectrally distinct fluorophores or with multiple levels of a single fluorophore, each engineered to monitor a reaction with a unique analyte. Beyond the rapid accumulation of data, these systems offer the ability to integrate

qualitative findings with robust analytical techniques for quantifying complex interactions among molecules.

This chapter reviews several platforms and applications of multiple analyte profiling which have matured substantially over the past decade, largely due to the impact that high-content platforms have had in genomics research. The utility of flow cytometry has been appreciated in nearly every area of experimental biology for over 30 years. A newly emerging class of flow cytometry-based applications is proving to be a highly effective tool set for the biophysical research laboratory. The breadth of performance, particularly in the area of multiprotein assembly, and the amenability of flow cytometry to multiplexing strategies is a focus of this chapter.

3. Multiple Analyte Profiling Platforms

Fluorescence-based cell, particle, and planar array assays are now routine practice in a variety of diagnostic screening applications including biomarker assays, genotyping, and immunologic profiling. In the context of bioanalytical platforms, information content refers to data capture capacity. It is driven by throughput (the analytical rate) and the biological complexity of the data (the diversity of the reagents and targets). High content specifically refers to making multiple measurements on, for example, a single cell population, whereas multiplexing would allow simultaneous measurements on multiple cell populations. The analysis of surface markers on blood leukocytes for vaccine development is an example of a high-content, multiplexed measurement [2]. Increasingly, multiplex formats are being advanced to increase information content for existing applications and for developing new approaches for conducting mechanistic studies of complex physiological processes.

3.1. Planar Arrays and Hybrid Bead-Based Systems

Spatially addressable fluorescence-based planar arrays for high-content assays revolutionized the field of genomics research. Within a decade of implementation, nucleic acid microarrays became the technological cornerstone for large-scale surveys of genes, transcripts, expression libraries, and SNPs. DNA microarrays are now providing excellent tools for exploring the gene expression patterns of tens of thousands of genes simultaneously.

The use of planar DNA microarrays represents a hallmark technology of multiplex analysis that has matured by building on the fundamental concept of simultaneous detection of multiple analytes to reduce time, labor, and cost as compared with single reaction-based methods. Implementation of early

DNA biochip array technologies soon became restricted by a rigid fabrication protocol, large feature sizes, and high-detection limits requiring large amounts of sample [3]. The introduction of techniques for *in situ* transcriptome amplification [4, 5] and cell-free *in situ* expression from PCR products [6], and the development of microfluidics handling and droplet microspotting [7, 8] have expanded the applications in systems with limited abundance of analyte. Further, advances in on-chip micromachining, and the availability of a growing variety of substrate chemistries have increased the flexibility of planar array constructions and their integration with other analytical systems.

Protein arrays for immunoassay applications soon became to the field of proteomics what DNA microarrays were to genomics. Clinical applications using planar arrays for human and veterinary disease surveillance, diagnostics, prognostics, and therapeutics management are now commonplace. Immunoassay techniques exploit the wide diversity and biological specificity of antigen binding by immunoglobulins, and affinity ligands include monoclonal antibodies or their ligand-specific domains. Microarray immunoassays using spotting techniques require picoliter amounts of analyte, and reaction volumes in the microliter range typically confer good signal-to-noise ratios and short diffusion distances that result in reduced reaction times [9].

The immunoassay is the conventional "gold standard" for protein measurement, with the enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) format reliably demonstrating detection limits of proteins in solution in the picogram per milliliter range over a dynamic range of 3 logs of concentration. There are many options for labeling and signal enhancement that are founded on the detection of ligand binding through the association of the ligand with a fluorescent, colorimetric, histochemical, or radioactive readout. Other formats that are based on immunoassay principles include flow cytometry and immunohistochemical and fluorescence microscopy.

Multiplex cytokine analysis provides a prime example of how multianalyte profiling confers context to the analysis of proteins beyond the measurement of abundance to include interaction, and modification by other antagonistic and synergistic proteins that is not achievable by single protein measurements. Protein planar microarrays are a validated platform for profiling analysis on a scale that far exceeds conventional ELISA methods [10–12].

The rapid adoption of flow cytometry-based assays for conducting multiplexed cytokine studies deserves some consideration. Current bead array technologies can easily accommodate 100 analytes simultaneously. A study comparing solid phase and bead-based cytokine assays using the same antibody pairs in each assay demonstrated improved detection limits using a bead-based multiplexed assay compared with ELISA analysis. The dynamic range of the bead-based assay in this comparative study also improved by 1 log [13].

Some recent examples of multiplexing strategies that have gone beyond descriptive science and into functional strategies for clinical disease management include vaccine development [14], isolation, and characterization of nucleic acid aptamers for research tools and therapeutics [15], the identification of tumor autoantigens and the advent of immunotheranostics [16], pharmacogenetic profiling for point-of-care diagnostics [17], and new parallel systems approaches for investigating, monitoring, and treating multifactorial polygenic diseases such as rheumatoid arthritis [18]. The introduction of cell-based microarrays has transformed cytogenetics from an *in vitro*-based platform for descriptive assays into an avenue for the development of *in vivo*-based analytical tools for mechanistic molecular biology [19].

Planar protein arrays have been used in high-throughput mechanistic studies of kinome profiling [20–22], systematic searches for antibody specificities [23], comprehensive studies of protein phosphorylation [24], carbohydrate recognition studies (functional glycomics) [25], DNA–protein binding interactions [26], RNA interference assays [27, 28], and ligand binding assays for G-protein–coupled receptors [29]. Microarrays using mixed protein suspensions or whole lysates from stimulated cells representing a full complement of intracellular proteins have recently been used to construct a comprehensive phosphorylation profile of CD3- and CD28-mediated signaling components [30].

A novel extension of the planar array concept for highly parallel genomic assays using fluorescence-based fiber-optic technology has been developed. Bundled, light-conducting fiber-optic strands (6000–50,000 per bundle), each chemically etched with a 3-μm well at the terminus, are configured into standard 96-, 384- or 1536-well spacing formats. The microwell array is capable of accommodating microspheres, each containing up to thousands of copies of a unique probe. The interrogation of extremely small sample volumes within the 3-μm wells has pushed the detection limit in this system into the zeptomolar range, or as few as 600 target DNA molecules [31]. The multiplexed assay detects up to 1536 SNPs from a single DNA sample. In genotyping assays, up to 300,000 data points can be generated per day and robotics platforms are capable of increasing throughput to over 1.5 million genotypes per day [32, 33].

The principles of microfluidics platforms for flow-through bead-based analytical systems have been reviewed by Buranda *et al.* [34] where multiplex analyses have been created in microcolumns with individual beads detecting individual analytes. Microchip-based immunoassay systems utilize porous microbead arrays positioned on silicon wafer platforms within microcavities, each serving as a miniaturized reaction vessel and analysis chamber. The utilization of porous beads allows for the application of a thick layer of capture reagents. A liquid chromatography system introduces solutions via

pressure-driven flow or capillary forces at a rate of 2 ml/min through a flow cell enclosing the silicon platforms. Colorimetric and fluorescent optical signals are acquired in near real-time digital analysis. A microchip-based system for point-of-care cardiac risk assessment has been described [35, 36] in which multianalyte analysis is conducted in 30 nl volumes with assay characteristics that are comparable and in some cases superior to macroscopic analytical platforms. In the cardiac risk assessment system, the detection limit for C-reactive protein, a major participant in the acute phase response, was 1 ng/ml compared with limits reported for other automated assay systems ranging from 5 to 80 ng/ml. The quantification and identification of electrolytes, sugars, proteins, antibodies, and toxins has also been demonstrated in this format.

High-throughput systems for label-free interrogation of microarrayed proteins by surface plasmon resonance imaging are capable of real-time biomolecular imaging of protein–DNA interactions on planar arrays with 1 s time resolution and subpicogram sensitivity [37, 38]. Aside from obviating the need for labeling, the advantages over competing techniques include low reagent requirements, minimal expense of mass-producing sensor chips compared with glass components of other systems, and simple requirements for grating-based sensing optics [39]. Arrays for real-time analysis of clinically relevant protein–protein (HPV E6, E6AP, and p53) and peptide–antibody interactions in complex biological fluids (anti-HCV antibodies in patient-derived sera) have recently been reported using surface plasmon resonance imaging [40, 41]. The technique has shown efficacy for detecting conformational properties of target proteins in a study using anti-Bax antibody chips to detect conformation-specific epitope alterations in cancer cells treated with an apoptosis-inducing ligand [42]. High-throughput screening applications of surface plasmon resonance have also been demonstrated in identifying small molecule inhibitors targeting protein–protein interactions [43], and in identifying new protein–protein interactions derived from a proteome-wide protein expression library [44].

3.2. High-Content Cellular Imaging

Imaging of complex physiological cellular processes has been adapted to high-content, high-throughput platforms. Detection systems include microscopy, fluorescence macroconfocal detectors, and fluorometric imaging plate readers. A recent review of automated cellular-imaging platforms [45] reveals that modern automated fluorescence and laser scanning platforms are capable of generating over 50,000 data points per day, and automated confocal systems >1 million data points per day. Throughput capacity combined with multiparametric biological measurements has expanded the use of

image-based platforms into functional analysis of biological systems. For example, high-content multiplex image analysis has been developed for simultaneous profiling of cell signaling pathways of up to 13 signaling molecules per CD33-positive myeloid cell isolated from cancer patient populations [46]. Phosphoprotein signaling profiles in the same study were used in both disease classification and target leads. In another multiplexed fluorescence microscopy application, detection and quantification of nuclear factor-κB (NF-κB), p38 and c-JUN translocation in response to inflammatory stimuli was used to distinguish compound selectivity among these pathways [47].

Resolution options allow for multicontent screens for imaging cell populations (e.g., phenotypic data) and subcellular events (e.g., protein translocations) in the same sample. In principle, sets of cell images obtained under a variety of optical environments (various fluorescence filter arrangements, brightfield/darkfield imaging) would provide comprehensive information about cell morphology and spatial distribution of any number of optical signals that is unachievable with any other single technology. Improvements in the spectral resolution of fluorochrome tags for simultaneous tracking of more events and better analytical algorithms for tracking events in multidimensional spaces will continue to move this technology to the forefront of high-content analytical methods.

3.3. Suspension Arrays/Flow Cytometry

A growing number of assays have been adapted to flow cytometry bead-based platforms with the capacity to function as multiplexed systems. In addition to the improved analytical performance for many assays, bead-based assays offer rapid analysis, high throughput, and robust quality control parameters [48]. Bead-based systems can accommodate a high diversity and a growing density of array features. For example, beads have been coated with authentic biological materials, such as lipid bilayers, to construct surface display libraries for the study of virus-specific antibodies [49], plasma proteins [50, 51], and interaction of cholera toxin with cell surface receptors [52]. A summary of the features of bead-based arrays and planar arrays is presented in Table 1.

As discussed previously, bead-based multiplexed platforms for serology profiling have the potential to replace many ELISA-based assays. A recent study of antibodies against recombinant HPV proteins reported highly reproducible ($R^2 = 0.97$) bead-based assay results with a dynamic range of 1.5 orders of magnitude and antibody detection at serum dilutions >1:1,000,000 and a CV of <5.4%. In this example and others, concordance with conventional ELISA approaches was high [59–61].

TABLE 1
COMPARISON OF PLANAR AND BEAD-BASED ARRAY FORMATS

	Planar	Bead-based
Probe density (no. of analytes)	Tens of thousands	Maximum of 100
Throughput (samples/day)	Hundreds [53]	Thousands [52]
Processing	Image processing	Standard flow cytometry
Automation	Under development [54]	Available [55]
Flexibility	Fixed array (new parameter requires new production)	Flexible (new parameter, add a new bead)
Quality control	Complex validation and analysis [56, 57]	Statistically robust [58]
Sensitivity with impure or complex samples	Superior to ELISA [54]	Comparable to ELISA [54]
Production/Instrumentation	Specialized, single use facility	Standard, multiuse flow cytometry

Microspheres have been readily adapted to flow cytometry-based multiplexing platforms due to their inherent stability, uniformity, and capacity for fluorescent dye uptake and retention. Surface chemistries are available for covalent coupling (via carboxyl, amine/hydrazide, and maleimide groups), noncovalent linkages, species-specific anti-IgG, and high/low-density streptavidin-coated fluorophores for assay optimization. Other affinity tags (glutathione-GST, Ni^{2+}-6x-histidine, and protein A and G) are available for linking capture proteins to microspheres. The breadth of bead technology continues to expand as new optically addressable particle-encoding approaches are explored.

Bead sets are commercially available for the simultaneous interrogation of up to 100 unique analytes. Planar array formats provide higher probe density; however, the throughput potential of planar arrays may not yet be fully realized because of limitations in processing and automation (see Table 1). In principle, implementation of any highly multiplexed immunoassay is limited only by inherent characteristics of assay chemistries that result in loss of quantitative response. For example, bead-based multiplex platforms are likely to face the same challenges as solid phase arrays with regard to the use of multivalent and cross-reactive immunological reagents, optimization across multiple assay conditions, and technical aspects of detection parameters to preserve overall sensitivity and specificity. Perlee *et al.* and others [56, 23] have recently reviewed these challenges and proposed standard methods for the validation and integration of data from different measurement technologies, including those for planar multiplexed antibody

protein arrays. Among the issues they have identified are antibody cross-reactivity under highly multiplexed conditions, robust statistical approaches to data management, quality control testing of reagents, and real-time monitoring of assay quality indicators (sensitivity, dynamic range, and platform precision). Other specific technical considerations for building bead-based assays are discussed in Section 5.4.

Jacobson *et al.* [62] used an assay model of microspheres covalently coupled with biotinylated BSA bound with titrated amounts of streptavidin, R-phycoerythrin (PE-SA) to demonstrate how non-bead-associated fluorescence determinations and instrument properties significantly affect bead array statistical sensitivity analysis and detection limits of the assay. The report details the effective use of instrument settings and statistical methods by using population parameters from each bead set for optimizing the quantification of ligand in array systems.

Iannone *et al.* [63] explored the effects of bead substrate binding site density on the K_{app} for soluble binding ligands using a nuclear receptor binding domain (PPARγ LBD) with an interacting synthetic peptide (PGC-1α) coupled to microsphere populations, each with a unique density of bound peptide. The study demonstrated that low-density ($<$200,000 molecules per microsphere) affinity for receptor–peptide interaction decreased proportional to peptide density, while high-density ($>$200,000) affinity did not vary. The matrix effects of avidity arising from high-local concentrations of neighboring immobilized peptides in close proximity increased the probability that the receptor will rebind another peptide rather than becoming free in solution (by dissociation). These effects can significantly reduce the apparent off-rate, resulting in higher-apparent affinities. Avidity effects can be exploited by intentionally coupling to high density and increasing assay sensitivity, but the increased avidity effect could reduce potential selectivity of assay. The study findings have important practical implications for optimizing conditions for multiplexed analytes with differing affinity characteristics.

Flow cytometry enables the simultaneous quantitative analysis in individual cells or particles of multiple optical markers of biochemical expression or physiological response. Microsphere-based studies of complex molecular interactions have been appreciated for nearly a decade [64]. Even the most inexpensive modern instruments can measure five optical parameters at once (three fluorescence and two light scatter signals). Flow cytometry is thus an inherently high-content quantitative methodology. It is also a sensitive technology, capable of detecting fluorescent molecule concentrations as low as 10–100 pM, and as few as hundreds to thousands of molecules on a cell or bead. Moreover, due to the optical configuration, the laser in a flow cytometer excites only a very small volume of the sample fluid immediately

surrounding the cell or the bead [55]. This allows discrimination of free and particle-bound fluorescent probe over a large range of probe concentration up to at least several hundred nanomolar. Consequently, homogeneous (no wash) assays may be implemented to streamline sample processing.

In systems representing the current standard of high-throughput flow cytometry, accurate quantitative measurements have been demonstrated in endpoint microassays at rates of 20–40 samples/min over a 4-decade range of fluorescence intensity using input cell concentrations of 1–20 million/ml and source well volumes of 5–15 μl [55]. Typical sample volumes of 1–2 μl allow scarce quantities of test cells or reagents to go a long way. Novel developments in sample delivery, data collection, and advanced analysis packages for processing algorithms, graphics, and multiplatform capabilities continue to add value to the utility of flow cytometry. Specific applications using flow cytometry-based multiplexing techniques are presented in detail in Section 5.

4. Fluorescence Technology

Fluorescence-based assays for high-density and high-content screening provide multidimensional readouts including intensity, lifetime, anisotropy, and spectral characteristics, each of which has been exploited by various analytical approaches that monitor changes in at least one of the fluorescence parameters. The use of fluorescence readout has some inherent disadvantages, most notably, autofluorescence and quenching from nonbiological interactions with the target. Each of these scenarios can also result in deterioration of other parameters such as fluorescence polarization.

4.1. Fluorescence-Based Assays

Measurement of integrated fluorescence intensity within a sample well, such as in flow cytometry-based assays, scales linearly with fluorescence quantum yield, and the major advantage of this approach, is straightforward detection and analysis. Fluorescent probes allow for the measurement of a wide variety of extrinsic cellular characteristics, and an expanding number of fluorescent probes is increasing access to a diversified set of cell-associated structures and physiological processes. A comprehensive discussion of the use of fluorescent probes as tools for flow cytometry has recently been published [65].

Flow cytometry is unique among fluorescence-based bioanalytical platforms in its ability to make simultaneous correlated optical measurements on individual particles at high rates. Exposure of a cell or a bead to excitation light occurs during a brief (a few microseconds) passage through an

illumination source in a nearly constant velocity flow stream. Under these highly uniform detection conditions and due to the extremely transient nature of fluorescence from organic molecules, flow cytometry is highly suitable for applications requiring precise measurements, such as DNA content between cells that may vary by only a few percent.

Modern flow cytometry is presently amenable to assay miniaturization down to 8 μl with the introduction of platforms such as HyperCyt®. In recent studies from our laboratory, we routinely analyzed up to 3000 cells from each sample well with an average sampling time of $\sim$1.5 s. HyperCyt® has been successfully adapted to cell-based end point assays [66], and studies investigating cell–cell adhesion [48, 67], and fluorescent ligand binding to cellular receptors [68, 69].

Fluorescence polarization utilizes linearly polarized light for excitation, and the emission is detected to infer changes in molecular orientation and mobility. Biological phenomena such as binding or cleavage will produce a change in polarization or anisotropy due to changes in mass or lifetime of the labeled analyte. Polarization readouts are limited by fluorescence quenching and autofluorescence and the range of molecular mass is limited by the fluorophore lifetime [70]. For example, protein–protein interactions have an upper limit of 50 kDa using fluorescein or rhodamine labels (fluorescence lifetime = 4 ns). Multiplexed fluorescence polarization assays have been described for identifying selective steroid hormone receptor ligands [71, 72], and for screening inhibitors for ribonuclease H activity of HIV-1 reverse transcriptase [73].

It is worthwhile to explicitly compare flow cytometry and fluorescence polarization assays. While both flow cytometry and fluorescence polarization are homogeneous modes of detection, they are remarkably different with respect to their experimental implementation. Generally speaking, fluorescence polarization assays require that both binding components be at concentrations in the vicinity of the dissociation constant of the binding interaction [70]. Under these conditions, a significant fraction of the fluorescent component will be bound to the nonfluorescent component. The fluorescent component in polarization assays is usually a small molecule whose molecular rotation is slowed by the interaction with the larger molecule. The size limit depends on the fluorescence lifetime of the probe, usually a few nanoseconds, which for practical reasons limits the size of the small molecule to $<$10 kD.

For flow cytometry, neither the lifetime of the fluorescence probe nor the rotation of the probe contributes to the detection sensitivity. Rather, detection has to do with observing fluorescent signals associated with the particle. The flow cytometer detects a pulse of fluorescence associated with the particle when there is bound fluorophore as compared with the fluorescence

associated with the solution surrounding the particle [65]. In microplate assays with 10 μl volumes, flow cytometry typically requires 1 pmol or less of the particle-associated assay component. Our experience suggests that it is preferable to associate the most precious component with the particle and that the quantity of material required is dependent on the affinity of the association with the particle rather than the affinity between interaction of the assay components.

4.2. Fluorescent Labels

For multiplexing applications, the practical limitations of using multiple, distinguishable fluorophores are simultaneously defined by the extent of overlap in emission spectra, the diversity of available excitation sources, compatibility with common optical filter sets, and the chemical properties of the dyes. A number of comprehensive technical reports and handbooks for the use of fluorescent probes are available from commercial suppliers [74, 75].

Fluorescein, a commonly used fluorophore, has high absorbance and high fluorescence quantum yield characteristics and exhibits good water solubility. The excitation maximum for fluorescein is closely paired with the 488 nm spectral line of the argon-ion laser and is therefore well-suited for flow cytometry. Amine-reactive fluorescein conjugates are widely used for labeling proteins. Disadvantages include photobleaching and pH sensitivity ($pK_a \sim 6.4$), and a broad emission spectrum that limits utility of the fluoresceins in multicolor experiments.

The rhodamine dyes are less sensitive to pH; however, their planar conformation leads to low water solubility and a tendency to dimerize with other labeled species. Low-molecular-weight cyanins and rhodamine derivatives absorb and emit at longer wavelengths compared with fluorescein, and are useful in combination for applications requiring dual color analysis [75].

The newer series of Alexa and BODIPY dyes include derivatives that span the visible spectrum. The Alexa series of dyes were largely developed to address the limitations of organic fluorochromes with regard to photostability, pH sensitivity, and stability of emission characteristics upon conjugation [76]. Alexa dyes have relatively high quantum yields and excitation maxima that closely match the wavelengths of commonly used excitation sources.

Semiconductor nanocrystals referred to as quantum dots (QDs) are robust bright light emitters that offer some advantages over organic fluorochromes, particularly for multiplexing applications [77]. Quantum dots exhibit size-dependent emission wavelength characteristics. Because multiple QD series can be detected by a single laser, multiparameteric analysis can be performed with single laser systems thus expanding the multiplexing abilities of the most basic cytometry instrumentation. The full impact of QD technology for

multiplex applications, however, is in polychromatic flow cytometry systems. In principle, QD colors and intensity combinations can be maximized to encode millions of analytes simultaneously [78].

The characteristically narrow and symmetrical emission spectra of QDs are particularly suited for multiplex applications that must be optimized by compensation to reduce spectral overlap using conventional fluorophores. Quantum dots can simultaneously be used with the common organic fluorochromes with no emission overlap or sensitivity compromise into the QD channels. Technical considerations and detailed compensation requirements for using QD/organic fluorochrome combinations are summarized in a number of technical reports on QDs [78–80].

5. Flow-Cytometry High-Content Profiling Applications

Performing multiple optical measurements on discrete particles carried in a sample stream is a traditional element of cytometry-based analytical approaches performed in populations of cells. While the flow cytometry platform has always had the analytical power for high-content multiparametric measurements, a correspondingly large-capacity analytical substrate format for multiplex was not available. Fluorescence-encoded microsphere sets were largely pioneered through the efforts of the Luminex Corporation. The technology provided the substrate for extending traditional cellular analysis into particle analysis while bringing the multiplexing concept of the planar microarray into suspension assays.

Multiplexed particle-based assays are now common in clinical diagnostics applications and are becoming increasingly appreciated for their utility in discovery research. Table 2 is a summary of commercially available bead sets that have been fully optimized for multiplex clinical and research applications.

5.1. Principles of Multiplexing for Suspension Arrays

The new fluorescence and bead technologies discussed in Sections 3.3 and 4.2., when paired with the inherent multiparametric features of flow cytometry afforded by the use of multiple lasers and highly resolved signals to multiple detectors, make this technology uniquely suited to multiplexing. The components that determine content analysis in multiplexing applications include the analytes, the addressing strategy, and how the interrogation is applied to produce the assay readout.

In contrast to spatially addressed planar arrays, suspension arrays are monitored by interrogation at optical addresses, specific to each reagent or

TABLE 2
MULTIPLEX BEAD SETS AND COMMERCIAL SUPPLIERS

Application	Suppliers
Adhesion Molecule Panels	R&D Systems
Allergy testing	BD Biosciences, ImTech
Apoptosis	BD Biosciences
Autoimmune markers (human, mouse)	Rules Based Medicine, Inc., SmartBead Technologies (Pronostics)
Cancer Markers	Rules Based Medicine, Inc.
Cardiac markers	Rules Based Medicine, Inc., Beckman Coulter
Cytokine profiling	Qiagen, BD Biosciences, R&D Systems, Bio-Rad, BioSource, LINCO, Upstate, Rules Based Medicine, Inc., Bioergonomics
Endocrine markers	LINCO, Rules Based Medicine, Inc.
Gene expression	BioSource, Marligen Biosciences
Genotyping/Genetic disease screening	MiraiBio, Marligen Biosciences, TmBioscience, Ambion Diagnostics, Tepnel Lifecodes, Illumina
HLA DNA typing	Tepnel Lifecodes, One Lambda
Infectious disease	Rules Based Medicine, Inc., Proactive Medical Technologies
Isotyping	Upstate, Rules Based Medicine, BD Biosciences
Metabolic markers	Rules Based Medicine, Inc, LINCO, R&D Systems
Phosphoprotein quantification	BD Biosciences, Upstate, BioSource
Ser/Thr Kinase	Qiagen
Transcription factors/nuclear receptors	Bios, Marligen Biosciences
Tissue Typing	One Lambda
Th1/Th2	Beckman Coulter, BD Biosciences
Bead sets for custom conjugation	Qiagen, Spherotech, Pierce, Bang's Laboratories, Polysciences, Inc.

bead set and fluorophore combination. The interrogation process in a multiplexed assay can address the capture components or the detection reagents. In assays where multiple reagents are coupled to the same bead, the corresponding ligands are coupled to unique fluorochromes. For low complexity bead sets using bead populations identified by unique fluorescent labels, an analyte-dependent signal is generated by detection reagents carrying a second type of signal. Larger populations of bead sets can be constructed from ratiometric staining with a combination of dyes and a signal generated by detection reagents coupled to a third type of dye [52].

The diversity and flexibility of bead-based suspension array technology offers a platform for high-throughput analytical approaches for a variety of applications that are reviewed in Sections 5.2 , 5.3, and 5.4. Cell-based assays

are also amenable to simultaneous multiplexing of several cell populations and high-content analysis of several features of display or response in each cell population.

5.2. Multiplexed Nucleic Acid Endpoint Assays

In the most straightforward nucleic acid analysis, the assay chemistry is followed by the readout or detection step. *In situ* amplification strategies present an opportunity to incorporate a detectable label into the immobilized target, in addition to increasing the abundance of analyte. Other systems couple the signal detection to the hybridization event, using structural or enzymatic approaches, to activation of a quenched fluorophore [81–84].

Luminex xMAP® is an example of a commercially available bead array platform [85]. The technology is based on internally dyed microspheres using two fluorochromes with spectrally distinct properties. Reporter molecules coupled to a third fluorochrome provide the detection signal for the biomolecular interaction on the microsphere surface. Nucleic acid detection chemistries commonly include direct hybridization of a labeled PCR amplified target to capture probe-bearing microspheres for each sequence.

Solution-based chemistries involve the enzymatic incorporation of a capture sequence that allows annealing to a complementary sequence on the microsphere. Alternatively, sequence-based enzymatic methods include sequence-discriminating DNA polymerases and DNA ligases, and processes such as allele-specific primer extension (ASPE), oligonucleotide ligation assays (OLAs), and single base chain extensions (SBCE). Single nucleotide discrimination is a common application for direct hybridization techniques that has recently been validated using solution bead-based technology in genotyping assays for polymorphisms. In a study of 21-plex and 34-plex assays for SNPs located near the ApoE locus, a total of 181 genotypes were determined and confirmed by sequence analysis [86]. The SBCE approach was used to analyze 20 multiplexed SNPs in 633 patient samples with greater than 99% agreement in genotype assignments to gel-based OLA results [87]. In the same report, the assay was converted to an ASPE format to overcome some of the technical difficulties of SBCE. Fifteen SNPs were characterized from 96 samples, totaling 1440 genotypes. The ASPE assay was 98.7% concordant with the OLA findings.

Genetic disease screening using a bead-based platform and ASPE assays has identified five mutations in the cystic fibrosis transmembrane regulator (CFTR) gene [88]. In another prospective study in 400 newborns, the genotypes of 27 mutations in CFTR were reported [89]. A multiplexed bead-based hybridization assay has been described for identifying a total of six mutations related to clinical manifestations of hypercoagulable states or aberrant

platelet phenomena and bacterial colonization of indwelling catheters [90]. In a study of acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL), a technique was described for combining multiplex PCR with direct bead-based hybridization in a single multiplex reaction to report seven fusion transcripts of chromosomal translocations occurring in ALL [91].

Multiplexed bead-based flow cytometry has been broadly applied to the identification, detection, and discrimination of bacterial, viral, and fungal pathogens. In a recent review [85] of the agents that have been studied with the xMAP® technology alone, eight references of studies conducted between 1998 and 2004 described bead-based multiplex platforms in the analysis of over 27 microbial pathogens.

Multiplexed bead-based analysis for the detection of combined viral and bacterial agents has been reported in assay panels for differential diagnosis among groups of diseases, including commonly occurring pathogens in children, sexually transmitted infections, and for blood bank screening of infectious agents [92]. Typing of human papillomaviruses (HPV) to discriminate between high- and low-risk genotypes in a single reaction has recently been reported using bead-based multiplexed assays and type-specific oligonucleotide probes. Up to 100 HPV types were assayed simultaneously, and all were detected with high specificity and reproducibility. Detection limits ranged from 100 to 800 pg of PCR product, and the technique was validated with conventional methods [93]. These examples have important implications for the utility of multiplexing platforms in large-scale epidemiological studies, particularly considering the fact that cytometry instrumentation is becoming more accessible in resource poor settings.

5.3. Multiplexed Protein Endpoint Assays

The ELISA has been the conventional assay standard for quantitative analysis of protein, and several readout modes have been adapted to this platform (fluorescence, chemiluminescence, and absorbance). Immunoassay sensitivity can be in the picograms per milliliter range depending on the affinity and specificity of the reagents, and since ELISA assays perform serial measurements in individual wells, cross-reactivity between reagents is not an issue. Automation-compatible microwell formats for ELISA and the related ELISpot assays have improved the throughput of the assay. A number of reports have evaluated the use of bead arrays with regard to performance equivalency to ELISA in cytokine analysis [94–96]. In these studies, the correlation in findings between multiplex bead-based studies and ELISA varies widely, but the majority of studies compare the techniques favorably.

Perhaps the greatest influence of multiplexed bead array approaches has occurred in the area of cytokine assays. Because cytokine profiles have been

used as readout systems for disease and therapeutic monitoring, immunologic profiling has a number of important clinical applications. Table 3 presents a summary of these and other multiplexed bead-based applications.

Multiplexing provides comprehensive profiles within a timeframe not possible with iterative assays requiring large amounts of assay material. In a recent study of a large population living in an area endemic for an intracellular parasitic disease, a multiplexed microsphere-based assay was used to quantify nine cytokines simultaneously and to evaluate disease progression associated with a common Th1/Th2 response paradigm [108]. In this and other infectious disease applications, cytokine profiling by economically and technically feasible means has the potential to enable large population studies of disease mechanisms.

TABLE 3
Flow Cytometry Multiplex Bead-Based Application

Application	Sytems/processes	Selected references
Antibody profiling	Serotyping, seroconversion, chronic disease monitoring, anti-viral antibodies, therapeutic monitoring, seroconversion, vaccine development	[59–61, 97, 98]
Epitope profiling	Virus typing, T cell phenotyping, epidemiologic surveillance	[16, 92]
Cytokine profiling	Inflammatory cytokines, drug efficacy monitoring, anti-tumor immune responses, biothreat monitoring	[13, 94–96, 99–102]
Nucleic acid analysis	Sequence detection (gene expression, detection of PCR products), single nucleotide polymorphisms, microRNA analysis, RNA–protein interactions	[33, 81, 83, 85–88, 90, 91, 93, 103]
Cytogenetics	Quantification of genomic copy number, gene rearrangement, allelic determination of leukocyte antigens	[104, 105]
Mechanistic studies, pharmacodynamic profiling	Protease inhibitor screening, phosphorylation profiling, cell signaling, ligand binding	[64, 68, 69, 106, 107]

5.4. Multiplex Assays of Molecular Assemblies

The potential of flow cytometry in the arena of molecular interactions is just beginning to emerge [64]. Numerous studies have already described the interactions of many classes of molecules where binding affinity, kinetics, and even enzymatic activity have been reported [109]. These approaches are now being extended into the domain of multiplexing.

Recently a novel system has demonstrated the first multiplex flow cytometry-based protease assay with sufficient selectivity for measuring specific protease activity for two different classes of proteases [106]. Using a bead-based assay capable of interrogating 12 individual substrates simultaneously, the findings have applications for pharmaceutical screening of protease inhibitors and proteases involved in disease states. One disadvantage of this approach is that the use of microspheres limits the substrate concentration to the micromolar range, requiring either a high-affinity protease or high concentrations of a lower affinity protease. If high-affinity substrates are constructed, the cost and/or time associated with assay development may be considerable. The time resolution capabilities of this assay make it an attractive format for resolving the kinetic steps of binding, catalysis, and enzyme release and rebinding phenomena.

In our laboratory, we have developed a novel and generalized approach to investigate G-protein–coupled receptor molecular assemblies that have multiplex implications [107]. We solubilized a fusion protein consisting of the β2-adrenergic receptor and green fluorescent protein (GFP) for bead-based flow cytometric analysis in two different formats. In one case, the β2-adrenergic receptor GFP fusion protein was bound to beads displaying a conjugated ligand, dihydroalprenolol. This format permits analysis of the K_d (dissociation constant) for the fusion protein binding to the ligand and, in competition with other β2-adrenergic receptor ligands, provides K_d values for agonists and antagonists. The other format involved beads displaying chelated nickel that bound purified hexahistidine-tagged G-protein heterotrimers. These beads were able to bind the binary complex of agonists with β2-adrenergic receptor GFP fusion protein. The dose-response curves of ternary complex formation between ligand, receptor, and G protein revealed maximal assembly for ligands previously classified as full agonists and reduced assembly for ligands previously classified as partial agonists [110]. These beads could be used in a mechanistic mode to show that guanosine 5′-3-*O*-(thio)triphosphate-induced dissociation rates of the ternary complex were the same for full and partial agonists. Taken together, these results suggested that the association rather than the dissociation of the signaling complex was what differentiated partial agonists from full agonists.

When performed simultaneously with color-coded beads, the two assemblies discriminated between agonist, antagonist, or inactive molecule in a manner appropriate for high throughput, small volume drug discovery. This is because the ligand beads were sensitive to the presence of all ligands, while the G-protein beads were sensitive only to agonists, and discriminated full and partial agonists. From a quantitative perspective, these studies show applications of flow cytometry for measurements of numbers of binding interactions per particle, the binding constants, and the rate constants, all in a homogeneous format.

These types of assemblies can be further generalized, not only to other G-protein–coupled receptor protein–protein interactions but also to other types of assemblies and other signal transduction components. Thus, we have described an application for other elements of signal transduction cascades such as protein kinases. In our experiments, two hexahistidine-tagged activin receptor like kinases (ALKs) were expressed in *E. coli*, purified and bound to nickel beads. A fluorescent kinase ligand that binds to the ATP binding site of these kinases with nanomolar affinity was developed. Binding of the fluorescent kinase ligand with kinase on the bead made the beads bright, and inhibitors decreased the brightness. A test panel of 17 nonfluorescent kinase inhibitors, spanning two orders of magnitude affinity for the kinases, gave K_d values for the kinases that correlated well with a fluorescence polarization assay. Results were obtained for the kinases in duplex using colored beads and an autosampler to send beads from a 96-well plate to a flow cytometer in a format suitable for high-throughput screening.

Another multiplex application has been developed as a collaboration for the NIH Roadmap Molecular Libraries Initiative to study the Bcl-2 family of proteins, which in part governs apoptosis. The human genome contains six genes that encode anti-apoptotic Bcl-2 family members. Each of these proteins can be bound to endogenous proteins that contain a conserved peptidyl domain, the Bcl-2 homology region 3 (BH3). Pro-apoptotic family members include both multidomain proteins, including Bak, and "BH3-only" proteins, including Bim. These pro-apoptotic BH3 peptides that dock at this site in Bcl-2 and Bcl-XL also increased apoptosis of leukemia and lymphoma cells in culture and in Severe Combined Immunodeficiency (SCID) mice [111–113]. The binding of a fluorochrome-conjugated BH3 peptides to Bcl-2 family proteins thus provides the basis for the construction of fluorescence assays, suitable for high-throughput screening. Our collaborators have described two fluorescent peptides, F-Bim and F-Bak, that bind to six and four members of the Bcl-2 family, expressed as GST fusion proteins, respectively. The team has already devised procedures for producing multi-milligram quantities of purified recombinant proteins and devised a generic fluorescence polarization assay, using F-Bim [114]. They have performed a preliminary screen of

~10,000 compounds with Bfl-1 and F-Bim, demonstrating the suitability of this homogeneous assay for the high-throughput environment. Using these reagents and observations as a starting point, we have developed a multiplex analysis by HyperCyt® high-throughput flow cytometry where all six members of the family can be screened simultaneously, using color-coded beads displaying glutathione. These beads have been produced with high-surface density of glutathione that appears to stabilize the interaction of the proteins with the bead surface and allow the construction of the mixtures of the multiplexed assays [115]. We are currently working on suspension arrays for other families of proteins. For example, we have succeeded in displaying GST fusion proteins of low-molecular-weight G proteins that bind fluorescent derivatives of GTP.

The experimental conditions for flow cytometry require that one component be attached to a particle. As mentioned previously, it is advisable to build the assay so that the more precious component is associated with the particle. Typically, the association is through an epitope tagging scheme, likely to be the same one that was used in the purification of that assay component. The less expensive component is then provided at concentrations near the K_d of the binding interaction. Thus, one component is displayed at a concentration of tens of thousands of molecules per particle, on thousands of particles, in volumes of a few microliters. We typically use a picomole of protein or less per assay when the assays are performed in multiwell plates, in total quantities that can be hundreds of times lower than, for example, a fluorescence polarization assay. In addition, in some cases, we have been able to perform flow cytometric analyses without purification of the protein at all [116]. In this case, the protein of interest is captured on the flow cytometry bead by epitope recognition. Rather than removing the protein from the bead for further purification, it is sometimes possible to display it directly for subsequent interaction with the fluorescent component. Experience suggests that this may be more applicable when the fluorescent component is purified as would be the case for the binding of a fluorescent ligand to a protein displayed on a bead.

5.5. Throughput

The throughput of multiplex assays in flow cytometry is worth considering. Under optimal conditions, flow cytometers are capable of detecting tens of thousands of events per second. To a first approximation, the data acquisition capabilities are largely insensitive to the number of parameters that are detected. Thus, at one extreme, the flow cytometer could detect 10 or more parameters for each particle, functioning in a high-content mode. The prime example of this type of assay is to detect simultaneously many individual signals such as the levels of multiple phosphoproteins in cells [117].

Moreover, flow cytometry is equally adept at performing both high content and multiplex simultaneously. A well-known example of this type of application is where multiple antibodies are used to discriminate immunological diverse populations of white blood cells [2]. Here, the information content as well as the multiplex information is encoded by the antibodies. If there are additional colors that are available for detection, they may be used to measure the cell responses to a stimulus, for example the concentration of intracellular calcium, in individual cell populations.

In the high-throughput mode, multiplexing is subjected to different limitations. At one end of the spectrum, the limitation comes from the number of addresses in a suspension array that can be encoded. With four log decades of sensitivity in a typical flow cytometer, it has been practical to encode 10 color levels and 10 addresses. With two-color encoding, 100 addresses have been achieved. With a sampling rate of 10,000 events per second and 200–500 events per address for adequate sampling statistics, the sampling time for a 100-plex suspension array is theoretically only 2–5 s, with a flow rate of 1 μl/s and a particle density of 10,000 per μl. We have observed that it is entirely practical to sample 20-plex bead populations with a sampling time of $\sim$1 s on the HyperCyt® platform. The sampling time is expected to increase linearly with the multiplicity of the array. On the other hand, for complex molecular interactions, the biology of the assembly is more likely to limit the multiplicity of the array because of the limited specificity of the reagents rather than the technological aspects of sampling or detection.

6. Future Directions

The application of multiplexing to functional genomics or proteomics is now beginning to shift into high gear [118]. The potential will be recognized in the areas of protein–protein, protein–ligand or small molecule, and protein–RNA/DNA interactions. While there are perhaps 10 times as many proteins expressed as genes, when posttranslational modifications and splice variants are accounted for, it is likely in the foreseeable future that specific families of proteins, protein domains, or the protein-binding elements of RNA or DNA will be arrayed for multiplexing. These arrays are expected to probe family relationships involving specificity and affinity of the molecular interactions, rate constants for their assembly and disassembly, and discovery of small molecules. These small molecules will be used as probes for the molecular assemblies, as leads in drug discovery for therapeutics, and potentially as imaging agents for diagnostics.

Acknowledgments

This work was supported by NIH Grant U54MH074425 to LAS and BSE and NCI Grant 1P30CA118100–01.

References

[1] Chandler VS, Denton D, Pempsell P. Biomolecular multiplexing of up to 512 assays on a new solid-state 4 color flow analyzer. Cytometry 1998; 9:40.

[2] Roederer M, De Rosa SC. Multiparameter analysis: Application to vaccine analysis. In: Sklar LA. editor. Flow Cytometry for Biotechnology. New York: Oxford University Press, 2005: 181–192.

[3] Hacia JG, Collins FS. Mutational analysis using oligonucleotide microarrays. J Med Genet 1999; 36:730–736.

[4] Schlingemann J, Thuerigan O, Ittrich C, Toedt G, Kramer H, Hahn M, et al. Effective transcriptosome amplification for expression profiling on sense-oriented oligonucleotide microarrays. Nucleic Acids Res 2005; 33:e29.

[5] Patel OV, Suchyta SP, Sipkovsky SS, Yao J, Ireland JJ, Coussens PM, et al. Validation and application of a high fidelity mRNA linear amplification procedure for profiling gene expression. Vet Immunol Immunopathol 2005; 105:331–342.

[6] Angenendt P, Kreutzberger J, Glokler J, Hoheisel JD. Generation of high-density protein microarrays by cell free *in situ* expression of unpurified PCR products. Mol Cell Proteomics 2006; 5:1658–1666.

[7] Zhang C, Xu J, Ma W, Zheng W. PCR microfluidic devices for DNA amplification. Biotechnol Adv 2006; 24:243–284.

[8] Lee MR, Parks S, Shin I. Protein microarrays to study carbohydrate-recognition events. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 2006; 16:5132–5135.

[9] Lim CT, Zhang Y. Bead-based microfluidic immunoassay: The next generation. Biosens Bioelectron 2007; 22:1197–1204.

[10] Wingren C, Borrebaeck CA. High throughput proteomics using antibody microarrays. Expert Rev Proteomics 2004; 1:355–364.

[11] Becker KF, Metzger V, Hipp S, Hofler H. Clinical proteomics: New trends for microarrays. Curr Med Chem 2006; 13:1831–1837.

[12] Kozarova A, Petrinac S, Ali A, Hudson JW. Array of informatics: Applications in modern research. J Proteome Res 2006; 5:1051–1059.

[13] de Jager W, Rijkers GT. Solid phase and bead-based cytokine immunoassay: A comparison. Methods 2006; 38:294–303.

[14] Serruto D, Rappuoli R. Post-genomic vaccine development. FEBS Lett 2006; 580:2985–2992.

[15] Bunka DH, Stockley PG. Aptamers come of age-at last. Nat Rev Microbiol 2006; 4: 588–596.

[16] Chatterjee M, Draghici S, Tainsky MA. Immunotheranostics: Breaking tolerance in immunotherapy using tumor autoantigens identified on protein microarrays. Curr Opin Drug Discov 2006; 9:380–385.

[17] Bissonnette L, Bergeron MG. Next revolution in the molecular theranostics of infectious diseases: Microfabricated systems for personalized medicine. Expert Rev Mol Diagn 2006; 6:433–450.

[18] Glocker MO, Guthke R, Kekow J, Thiesen HJ. Rheumatoid arthritis, a complex multifactorial disease: On the way toward individualized medicine. Med Res Rev 2006; 26:63–87.

[19] Sobek J, Bartscherer K, Jacob A, Hoheisel JD, Angenendt P. Microarray technology as a universal tool for high-throughput analysis of biological systems. Comb Chem High Throughput Screen 2006; 5:365–380.
[20] Johnson SA, Hunter T. Kinomics: Methods for deciphering the kinome. Nat Methods 2005; 2:17–25.
[21] Diks SH, Kok K, O'Toole T, Hommes D, van Dijken P, Joore J, et al. Kinome profiling for studying lipoplysaccaride signal transduction in human peripheral blood mononuclear cells. J Biol Chem 2004; 279:49206–49213.
[22] Feilner T, Hultschig C, Lee J, Meyer S, Immink RGH, Koenig A, et al. High throughput identification of potential Arabidopsis mitogen-activated protein kinase substrates. Mol Cell Proteomics 2005; 4:1558–1568.
[23] Kingsmore SF. Multiplexed protein measurement: Technologies and applications of protein and antibody arrays. Nature Rev Drug Discov 2006; 5:310–320.
[24] Ptacek J, Snyder M. Charging it up: Global analysis of protein phosphorylation. Trends Genet 2006; 22:545–554.
[25] Stevens J, Blixt O, Paulson JC, Wilson IA. Glycan microarray technologies: Tools to survey host specificity to influenza viruses. Nat Rev Microbiol 2006; 4:857–864.
[26] Ho SW, Jona G, Chen CT, Johnston M, Snyder M. Linking DNA binding proteins to their recognition sequences by using protein microarrays. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2006; 103:9940–9945.
[27] Janitz M, Vanhecke D, Lehrach H. High-throughput RNA interference in functional genomics. Handb Exp Pharmacol 2006; 173:97–104.
[28] Moffat J, Grueneberg DA, Yang X, Kim SY, Kloepfer AM, Hinkle G, et al. A lentiviral RNAi library for human and mouse genes applied to an arrayed viral high content screen. Cell 2006; 124:1283–1298.
[29] Hong Y, Webb BL, Pai S, Ferrie A, Peng J, Lai F, et al. G protein-coupled receptors microarrays for multiplexed compound screening. J Biomol Screen 2006; 11:435–438.
[30] Chan SM, Ermann J, Su L, Fathman CG, Utz PJ. Protein microarrays for multiplex analysis of signal transduction pathways. Nat Med 2004; 10:1390–1396.
[31] Epstein JR, Lee M, Walt DR. High-density fiber-optic genosensor microsphere array capable of zeptomole detection limits. Anal Chem 2002; 74:1836–1840.
[32] Fan J, Chee MS, Gunderson KL. Highly parallel genomic assays. Nat Rev Gen 2006; 7:632–644.
[33] Shen R, Fan J, Campbell D, Chang W, Chen J, Doucet D, et al. High-throughput SNP genotyping on universal bead arrays. Mutat Res 2005; 573:70–82.
[34] Buranda T. Flow Cytometry, beads and microchannels. In: Sklar LA. editor. Flow Cytometry for Biotechnology. New York: Oxford University Press, 2005: 105–122.
[35] Christodoulides N, Tran M, Floriano PN, Rodriguez M, Goodey A, Ali M, et al. A microchip-based multianalyte assay system for the assessment of cardiac risk. Anal Chem 2002; 74:3030–3036.
[36] Christodoulides N, Floriano PN, Acosta SA, Ballard KL, Weigum SE, Mohanty S, et al. Toward the development of lab-on-a-chip dual function leukocyte and c-reactive protein analysis method for the assessment of inflammation and cardiac risk. Clin Chem 2005; 51:2391–2395.
[37] Shumaker-Parry JS, Zareie MH, Aebersold R, Campbell CT. Microspotting streptavidin and double-stranded DNA arrays on gold for high-throughput studies of protein-DNA interactions by surface plasmon resonance microscopy. Anal Chem 2004; 76:918–929.
[38] Singh BK, Hillier AC. Surface plasmon resonance imaging of biomolecular interactions on a grating-based sensor array. Anal Chem 2006; 78:2009–2018.

[39] Huang H, Chen Y. Label-free reading of microarray-based proteins with high throughput surface plasmon resonance imaging. Biosens Bioelectron 2006; 22:644–648.
[40] Ro HS, Koh BH, Jung SO, Park HK, Shin YB, Kim MG, et al. Surface plasmon resonance imaging protein arrays for analysis of triple protein interactions of HPV E6, E6AP, and p53. Proteomics 2006; 6:2108–2111.
[41] Cherif B, Roget A, Williers CL, Calemczuk R, Leroy V, Marche PN, et al. Clinically related protein-peptide interactions monitored in real time on novel peptide chips by surface plasmon resonance imaging. Clin Chem 2006; 52:255–262.
[42] Kim M, Jung SO, Park K, Jeong EJ, Joung HA, Kim TH, et al. Detection of Bax protein conformational change using a surface plasmon resonance imaging-based antibody chip. Biochem Biophys Res Comm 2005; 338:1834–1838.
[43] Jung SO, Ro HS, Kho BH, Shin YB, Kim MG, Chung BH. Surface plasmon resonance imaging-based protien arrays for high-throughput screening of protein–protein interaction inhibitors. Proteomics 2005; 5:4427–4431.
[44] Seitz H, Hutschenreiter S, Hultschig C, Zeilinger C, Zimmermann B, Kleinjung F, et al. Differential binding studies applying functional protein microarrays and surface plasmon resonance. Proteomics 2006; 6:5132–5139.
[45] Lang P, Yeow K, Nichols A, Scheer A. Cellular imaging in drug discovery. Nat Rev Drug Discov 2006; 5:343–356.
[46] Irish JM, Hovland R, Krutzik PO, Perez OD, Bruserud Ø, Gjertsen BT, et al. Single cell profiling of potentiated phosphoprotein networks in cancer cells. Cell 2004; 118:217–228.
[47] Bertelsen M, Sanfridson A. Inflammatory pathway analysis using a high content screening platform. Assay Drug Dev Technol 2005; 3:261–271.
[48] Nolan JP, Sklar LA. Suspension array technology: Evolution of the flat array paradigm. Trends Biotechnol 2002; 20:9–12.
[49] Fischlechner M, Toellner L, Messner P, Grabherr R, Donath E. Virus engineered colloidal particles: A surface display system. Agnew Chem Int Ed Engl 2006; 45:784–789.
[50] Shi J, Gilbert GE. Lactadhedrin inhibits enzyme complexes of blood coagulation by competing for phospholipid-binding sites. Blood 2003; 101:2628–2636.
[51] Shi J, Heegaard CW, Rasmussen JT, Gilbert GE. Lactahedrin binds selectively to membranes containing phophatidyl-L-serine and increased curvature. Biochim Biophys Acta 2004; 1667:82–90.
[52] Nolan JP, Mandy F. Multiplexed and microparticle-based analyses: Quantitative tools for the large-scale analysis of biological systems. Cytometry A 2006; 5:318–325.
[53] Wheelan SJ, Martinez-Murrillo F, Irizarry RA, Boeke JD. Stacking the deck: Double tiled DNA microarrays. Nat Methods 2006; 3:903–907.
[54] Wang L, Cole KD, Hua-Jun H, Hancock DK, Gaigalas AK, Zong Y. Comparison of ovalbumin quantification using forward-phase protein microarrays and suspension arrays. J Proteome Res 2006; 5:1770–1775.
[55] Edwards BS, Oprea T, Prossnitz ER, Sklar LA. Flow cytometry for high throughput high content screening. Curr Opin Chem Biol 2004; 8:392–398.
[56] Perlee L, Chrisiansen J, Dondero R, Grimwade B, Lejnine S, Mullenix M, et al. Development and standardization of multiplexed antibody microarrays for use in quantitative proteomics. Proteome Sci 2004; 2:9.
[57] Sanchez-Carbayo M. Antibody arrays: Technical considerations and clinical implications in cancer. Clin Chem 2006; 52:1651–1659.
[58] Malo N, Hanley JA, Cerquozzi S, Pelletier J, Nadon R. Statistical practice in high throughput screening data analysis. Nat Biotechnol 2006; 24:167–175.

[59] Waterboer T, Sehr P, Michael K, Franceschi S, Nieland JD, Joos TO, et al. Multiplex human papillomavirus serology based on in-situ-purified glutathione s-transferase fusion proteins. Clin Chem 2005; 51:1845–1853.
[60] Deregt D, Furukawa-Stoffer TL, Tokaryk KL, Pasick J, Hughes KM, Hooper-McGrevy-K, et al. A microsphere immunoassay for detection of antibodies to avian influenza virus. J Virol Methods 2006; 137:88–94.
[61] Nifli AP, Notas G, Mamoulaki M, Niniraki M, Ampartzaki V, Theodoropoulos PA, et al. Comparison of a multiplex, bead-based fluorescent assay and immunofluorescence methods for the detection of ANA and ANCA autoantibodies in human serum. J Immunol Methods 2006; 311:189–197.
[62] Jacobsen JW, Oliver KG, Weiss C, Kettman J. Analysis of individual data from bead-based assays (“bead arrays”). Cytometry A 2006; 69A:384–390.
[63] Iannone MA, Consler TG. Effect of microsphere binding site density on the apparent affinity of an interaction partner. Cytometry A 2006; 69A:374–383.
[64] Sklar LA, Edwards BE, Graves SW, Nolan JP. Flow cytometric analysis of ligand-receptor interactions and molecular assemblies. Annu Rev Biophys Biomol Struct 2002; 31:97–119.
[65] Shapiro HM. Fluorescent probes. In: Sklar LA. editor. Flow Cytometry for Biotechnology. New York: Oxford University Press, 2005: 15–39.
[66] Ramirez S, Aiken CT, Andrzejewski B, Sklar LA, Edwards BS. High throughput flow cytometry: Validation in microvolume bioassays. Cytometry 2003; 53A:55–65.
[67] Blenc AM, Chigaev A, Shuster JS, Sklar LA, Larson RS. VLA-4 affinity correlates with the peripheral white blood cell count and DNA content in patients with B-ALL. Leukemia 2003; 17:21–24.
[68] Waller A, Simons P, Prossnitz ER, Edwards BS, Sklar LA. High throughput screening of g-protein coupled receptors via flow cytometry. Comb Chem High Throughput Screen 2003; 6:389–397.
[69] Waller A, Simons PC, Biggs SM, Edwards BS, Prossnitz ER, Sklar LA. Techniques: GPCR assembly, pharmacology and screening by flow cytometry. Trends Pharmacol Sci 2004; 25:663–669.
[70] Jager S, Brand L, Eggeling C. New fluorescence techniques for high-throughput drug discovery. Curr Pharm Biotechnol 2003; 4:463–476.
[71] Blommel P, Hanson GT, Vogel KW. Multiplexing fluorescence polarization assays to increase information content per screen: Applications for screening steroid hormone receptors. J Biomol Screen 2004; 9:294–302.
[72] Marks BD, Qadir N, Eliason HC, Shekhani MS, Doering K, Vogel KW. Multiparameter analysis of a screen for progesterone receptor ligands: Comparing fluorescence lifetime and fluorescence polarization measurements. Assay Drug Dev Technol 2005; 3:613–622.
[73] Nakayama GR, Bingham P, Tan D, Maegley KA. A fluorescence polarization assay for screening inhibitors against the ribonuclease H activity of HIV-1 reverse transcriptase. Anal Biochem 2006; 351:260–265.
[74] Invitrogen. The Handbook. A Guide to Fluorescent Probes and Labeling Technologies. 10th ed.. http://probes.invitrogen.com/handbook/(Accessed October 2006).
[75] Waggoner A. Fluorescent labels for proteomics and genomics. Curr Opin Chem Biol 2006; 10:62–66.
[76] Panchuk-Voloshina N, Haugland RP, Bishop-Stewart J, Bhalgat MK, Millard PJ, Mao F, et al. Alexa Dyes, a series of new fluorescent dyes that yield exceptionally bright, photostable conjugates. J Histochem Cytochem 1999; 47:1179–1188.

[77] Xu H, Sha MY, Wong EY, Uphoff J, Xu Y, Treadway JA, et al. Multiplexed SNP genotyping using the Qbead system: A quantum dot-encoded microsphere-based assay. Nucleic Acids Res 2003; 31:e43.
[78] Han M, Gao X, Su JZ, Nie S. Quantum dot tagged microbeads for multiplexed optical coding of biomolecules. Nat Biotechnol 2001; 19:631–635.
[79] Alivisatos AP, Gu W, Larabell C. Quantum dots as cellular probes. Annu Rev Biomed Eng 2005; 7:55–76.
[80] Chattopadhyay PK, Price DA, Harper TF, Betts MR, Yu J, Gostick E, et al. Quantum dot semiconductor nanocrystals for immunophenotyping by polychromatic flow cytometry. Nat Med 2006; 12:972–977.
[81] Rao KV, Stevens PW, Hall JG, Lyamichev V, Neri BP, Kelso DM. Genotyping single nucleotide polymorphisms directly from genomic DNA by invasive cleavage reaction on microspheres. Nucleic Acids Res 2003; 31:e66.
[82] Stevens PW, Rao KV, Hall JG, Lyamichev V, Neri BP, Kelso DM. Improved sensitivity for solid-support invasive cleavage reactions with flow cytometry analysis. Biotechniques 2003; 34:198–203.
[83] Horejsh D, Martini F, Poccia F, Ippolit G, Di Caro A, Capiobianchi MR. A molecular beacon, bead-based assay for the detection of nucleic acids by flow cytometry. Nucleic Acids Res 2005; 33:e13.
[84] Vet JA, Marras SA. Design and optimization of molecular beacon real-time polymerase chain reaction assays. Methods Mol Biol 2005; 288:273–290.
[85] Dunbar SA. Applications of Luminex® xMAP™ technology for rapid, high-throughput multiplexed nucleic acid detection. Clin Chim Acta 2006; 363:71–82.
[86] Chen J, Iannone MA, Li MS, Taylor JD, Rivers P, Nelsen AJ, et al. A microsphere-based assay for multiplexed single nucleotide polymorphism analysis using single base chain extension. Genome Res 2000; 10:549–557.
[87] Taylor JD, Briley D, Nguyen Q, Long K, Iannone MA, Li MS, et al. Flow cytometric platform for high throughput single nucleotide polymorphism analysis. BioTechniques 2001; 30:661–669.
[88] Dunbar SA, Jacobson JW. Application of the Luminex labMAP in rapid screening for mutations in the cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator gene: A pilot study. Clin Chem 2000; 46:1498–1500.
[89] Johnson SC, Marshall DJ, Harms G, Miller CM, Sherrill CB, Beaty EL, et al. Multiplexed genetic analysis using an extended genetic alphabet. Clin Chem 2004; 50:2019–2027.
[90] Bortolin S, Black M, Modi H, Boszko I, Kobler D, Fieldhouse D, et al. Analytical validation of the TAG-It high throughput microsphere-based universal array genotyping platform: Application to the multiplex detection of thrombophilia-associated single-nucleotide polymorphisms. Clin Chem 2004; 50:2028–2036.
[91] Wallace J, Zhou Y, Usmani N, Reardon M, Newburger P, Woda B, et al. BARCODE-ALL: Accelerated and cost effective genetic risk-stratification in acute leukemia using spectrally addressable liquid bead microarrays. Leukemia 2003; 17:1404–1410.
[92] Jani IV, Janossy G, Brown DWG, Mandy F. Multiplexed immunoassays by flow cytometry for diagnosis and surveillance of infectious diseases in resource-poor settings. Lancet Infect Dis 2002; 2:243–250.
[93] Schmitt M, Bravo IG, Snijders PJ, Gissmann L, Pacolita M, Waterboer T. Bead-based multiplex genotyping of HPV. J Clin Microbiol 2006; 44:504–512.
[94] Elshal MF, McCoy JP. Multiplex bead array assays: Performance evaluation and comparison of sensitivity to ELISA. Methods 2006; 38:317–323.

[95] Pang S, Smith J, Onley D, Reeve J, Walker C, Foy J. A comparability study of the emerging protein array platforms with established ELISA procedures. J Immunol Methods 2005; 302:1–12.
[96] Ray CA, Bowsher RR, Smith WC, Devanarayan V, Willey MB, Brandt JT, et al. Development, validation and implementation of a multiplex immunoassay for the simultaneous determination of five cytokines in human serum. J Pharm Biomed Analysis 2005; 36:1037–1044.
[97] Khan IH, Mendoza S, Yee J, Deane M, Venkateswaran K, Zhou SS, et al. Simultaneous detection of antibodies to six non-human primate viruses by multiplex microbead immunoassay. Clin Vaccine Immunol 2006; 13:45–52.
[98] Gonzalez C, Garcia-Berrocal B, Talavan T, Casas ML, Navajo JA, Gonzalez-Buitrago JN. Clinical evaluation of a microsphere bead-based flor cytometry assay for the simultaneous determination of anti-thyroid peroxidase and anti-thyroglobulin antibodies. Clin Biocem 2005; 38:966–972.
[99] Johannisson A, Jonasson R, Dernfalk J, Jansen-Waern M. Simultaneous detection of porcine proinflammatory cytokines using multiplex flow cytometry by the XMap technology. Cytometry A 2006; 69:391–395.
[100] Sack U, Scheibe R, Wotzel M, Hammerschmidt S, Kuhn H, Emmrich F, et al. Multiplex analysis of cytokines in exhaled breath condensate. Cytometry A 2006; 69:169–172.
[101] Barten MJ, Rahmel A, Bocsi J, Boldt A, Garbade J, Dhein S, et al. Cytokine analysis to predict immunosuppression. Cytometry A 2006; 69:155–157.
[102] Gioia C, Horejsh D, Agrati C, Martini F, Capobianchi MR, Ippolito G, et al. T-cell response profiling to biological threat agents including SARS coronavirus. Int J Immunopathol Pharmacol 2005; 18:525–530.
[103] Cai H, White PS, Torney D, Deshpande A, Wang Z, Keller RA, et al. Flow cytometry-based minisequencing: A new platform for high throughput single-nucleotide polymorphism scoring. Genomics 2000; 66:135–143.
[104] Newkirk HL, Rogan PK, Miralles M, Knoll JH. Determination of genomic copy number with quantitative microsphere hybridization. Hum Mutat 2006; 27:376–386.
[105] Itoh Y, Mizuki N, Shimada T, Azuma F, Itakura M, Kashiwase K, et al. High-throughput DNA typing of HLA-A, -B, -C, and DRB1 loci by a PCR-SSOP-Luminex method in the Japanese population. Immunogenetics 2005; 57:717–729.
[106] Saunders MJ, Kim H, Woods TA, Nolan JP, Sklar LA, Edwards BS, et al. Microsphere-based protease assays and screening application for lethal factor and factor Xa. Cytometry A 2006; 69:342–352.
[107] Simons PC, Biggs SM, Waller A, Foutz T, Cimino DF, Guo Q, et al. Real-time analysis of ternary complex on particles: Direct evidence for partial agonism at the agonist-receptor-G protein complex assembly step of signal transduction. J Biol Chem 2004; 14:13514–13521.
[108] Kurkjian KM, Mahmutoric AJ, Keller KL, Haque R, Bern C, Secor WE. Multiplex analysis of circulating cytokines in sera of patients with different clinical forms of visceral leishmaniasis. Cytometry A 2006; 69:353–358.
[109] Simons P, Vines CM, Key TA, Potter RM, Shi M, Sklar LA, et al. Analysis of GTP-binding protein-coupled receptor assemblies by flow cytometry. In: Sklar LA. editor. Flow Cytometry for Biotechnology. New York: Oxford University Press, 2005: 323–346.
[110] Seifert R, Wenzel-Seifert K, Gether U, Kobilka BK. Functional differences between full and partial agonists: Evidence for ligand-specific receptor conformations. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 2001; 297:1218–1226.

[111] Holinger EP, Chittenden T, Lutz RJ. Bak BH3 peptides antagonize Bcl-xL function and induce apoptosis through cytochrome c-independent activation of caspases. J Biol Chem 1999; 274:13298–13304.
[112] Wang JL, Liu D, Zhang ZJ, Shan S, Han X, Srinivasula SM, et al. Structure-based discovery of an organic compound that binds Bcl-2 protein and induces apoptosis of tumor cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2000; 97:7124–7129.
[113] Walensky LD. BCL-2 in the crosshairs: Tipping the balance of life and death. Cell Death Differ 2006; 13:1339–1350.
[114] Luciano F, Zhai D, Zhu X, Bailly-Maitre B, Ricci JE, Satterthwait AC, et al. Cytoprotective peptide humanin binds and inhibits proapoptotic Bcl-2/Bax family protein BimEL. J Biol Chem 2005; 280:15825–15835.
[115] Tessema M, Simons PC, Cimino DF, Sanchez L, Waller A, Posner RG, et al. Glutathione-s-transferase-green fluorescent protein fusion protein reveals slow dissociation from high site density beads and measures free GSH. Cytometry A 2006; 69:326–334.
[116] Graves SW, Nolan JP, Sklar LA. Molecular assemblies, probes, and proteomics in flow cytometry. In: Sklar LA. editor. Flow Cytometry for Biotechnology. New York: Oxford University Press, 2005: 153–177.
[117] Krutzik PO, Nolan GP. Intracellular phosphor-protein staining techniques for flow cytometry: Monitoring single cell signaling events. Cytometry A 2003; 55:61–70.
[118] Becker KG, Hosack DA, Dennis G, Jr, Lempicki RA, Bright TJ, Cheadle C, et al. PubMatrix: A tool for multiplex literature mining. BMC Bioinformatics 2003; 4:61.

IMMUNE MONITORING OF CLINICAL TRIALS WITH BIOTHERAPIES

Theresa L. Whiteside

University of Pittsburgh Cancer Institute, Hillman Cancer Center, Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania 15213

1. Abstract 75
2. Introduction 76
3. Rationale for Immune Monitoring 78
   3.1. Requirements 79
   3.2. Significance 80
4. Selection of Assays for Immune Monitoring 80
   4.1. Use of Cryopreserved vs. Freshly Harvested Specimens 82
   4.2. Single-Cell Assays: Tetramers, CFC, ELISPOT 82
   4.3. ELISPOT As a Monitoring Assay 84
   4.4. Attributes of Selected Assays 84
5. Profiling of in Immune Biomarkers 85
   5.1. Multiplexing for Cytokines 85
   5.2. Genomics and Proteomics 86
   5.3. Polychromatic Flow Cytometry 88
6. The QA/QC Program and Assay Quality 89
   6.1. QA/QC in Practice 90
   6.2. Assay Standardization 90
   6.3. Assay Validation 91
7. Interpretation of Immune Monitoring Assays 91
   7.1. Statistical Analysis 92
   7.2. Interpretation Discrepancies 93
8. Conclusions 94
   References 96

1. Abstract

Immune monitoring of biotherapy clinical trials has undergone a considerable change in recent years. Technical advances together with new insights into molecular immunology have ushered a new genre of assays into immune

0065-2423/08 $35.00
DOI: 10.1016/S0065-2423(07)00004-2

monitoring. Single-cell assays, multiplex profiling, and signaling molecule detection have replaced formerly used bulk assays, such as proliferation or cytotoxicity. The emphasis on immune cell functions and quantitation of antigen-specific T cells has been playing a major role in attempts to establish correlations between therapy-induced alterations in immune responses and clinical endpoints. However, this has been an elusive goal to achieve, and there is a special need for improving the quality of serial monitoring to ensure that it adequately and reliably measures changes induced by administered biotherapy. In this respect, monitoring performed in specialized reference laboratories operating as good laboratory practice (GLP) facilities and strengthening of interactions between the clinical investigator, the clinical immunologist, and the biostatistician are crucial for successful use of immune monitoring in clinical studies.

2. Introduction

A wide variety of biologic agents from cytokines to dendritic cell (DC)-based vaccines have been used in clinical trials for patients with cancer, infectious diseases, or autoimmune syndromes. In general, the current interest in the clinical application of biologics to therapy of human diseases reflects the need for more effective, less toxic, and preferably natural ways of treatment, especially with conditions that are refractory to standard therapies. Biologic agents as therapeutics aim at a modification of biologic responses, often of the host immune system, to improve the host capability to recover and reacquire normal homeostasis. Because most biologics target molecular and cellular immunologic pathways, there is frequently a requirement for assessments of the direct or indirect effects they exert *in vivo*. Hence, immunologic monitoring has slowly emerged as an advisable adjunct to clinical trials with biologic agents. By and large, immunologic monitoring is not a protocol-mandated requirement but rather falls under the "correlative" studies category. This is because in phase I and phase II trials, safety/toxicity or clinical efficacy are the primary endpoints, respectively, and immunologic or biologic responses to therapy are considered as secondary endpoints. Nevertheless, immune monitoring is important for, ideally, it may be able to relate clinical responses to a specific immune mechanism, to predict subject responsiveness to therapy, or even to help estimate disease free or overall survival. The possibility that immune measures may serve as biomarkers or as surrogate endpoints of clinical responses has recently gained in popularity.

The immune system is exquisitely well prepared to handle insults by pathogens and to control autoimmunity [1, 2]. It is ready to respond to "danger" originating within or outside the body [3]. In pathologic conditions,

the immune system becomes compromised, even dysfunctional, and many biologic therapies attempt to restore its integrity and upregulate immune surveillance. Some biologic therapies target innate or natural immunity in hope of upregulating surveillance functions of the immune cells, such as monocytes, natural killer (NK) cells, or NKT cells [4]. Other biologic therapies preferentially aim at enhancing adaptive immune responses to selectively target those T or B lymphocytes that are responsible for protection against specific insults [5, 6]. Much has been learned about the immune system and its dysregulation in disease; however, the complexity of cellular and molecular interactions within the system, especially between innate and adaptive immunity, and the existing crosstalk with neural, endocrine, and hormonal networks complicate the interpretation of signals generated as a result of particular immune-based therapies. It is, therefore, a foregone conclusion that the interpretation of immune monitoring results will be difficult, often intuitive and not always informative.

In recent years, many sophisticated technologies have been introduced for measuring immune responses at the population as well as single-cell level. Older ''bulk'' assays have been largely replaced by single-cell assays, especially in measurements of antigen-specific T-cell responses. Capabilities exist for assessment of immune reactivity *in situ*, that is, at the tissue site of disease, as well as in the lymph nodes or peripheral circulation. Technologies currently available for measuring immune responses of patients enrolled in biotherapy trials are numerous and sophisticated. This includes high-throughput technologies such as arrays, multiplex formats, proteomics, genomics, high-content screening by flow cytometry, imaging, or tissue microarrays (see Table 1). Most of these technologies originated in research laboratories, and today most are not validated for use in monitoring. Immune monitoring of patients participating in clinical trials represents a drastic departure from the research

TABLE 1
TECHNOLOGIES AVAILABLE FOR ADAPTATION TO IMMUNE MONITORING OF PATIENTS TREATED WITH BIOTHERAPIES

1. Genomic analysis: DNA arrays
2. RT-PCR for molecular markers of disease
3. Serum/plasma and tissue proteomics, including antibody microarrays and multiplexing for cytokines and chemokines
4. Immune polymorphisms
5. High-content screening by flow and imaging cytometry
6. Tissue microarrays and immunocytochemistry
7. Assessment of immune infiltrates into tissues
8. Assessments of cell apoptosis vs. necrosis

environment. A technology or a method that works well in a research laboratory has to undergo a stringent scrutiny and considerable refinement in order to meet criteria for its use in monitoring. While the new "state-of-the-art" technologies offer possibilities for rapid screening of multiple samples and for profiling (i.e., simultaneous detection) of many immune biomarkers, none had been formally validated. This means that the application of these technologies to assessments of patient samples represents clinical research that has not yet achieved acceptance as monitoring. These technologies are mentioned but not discussed in detail here, and the reader is referred to the summary of a Workshop on Cancer Biometrics [7] for an excellent review for their use and potential.

The purpose of this chapter is to describe requirements for the process of immune monitoring, starting with selection of methods that are applicable to reliable serial assessments, continuing with their performance under defined quality assurance (QA) or quality control (QC) conditions, and ending with recommendations for results interpretation. The entire monitoring enterprise requires support that can only be provided in a specialized laboratory operated to handle and reliably test serial specimens and, preferably, functioning as a good laboratory practice (GLP) facility.

3. Rationale for Immune Monitoring

"Monitoring" refers to serial specimen acquisition and testing. The rationale for immune monitoring rests on the premise that therapeutic interventions achieve their effects as a result of modification(s) in one or more components of the patient's immune system. These therapy-induced modifications occur gradually, and the expectation is that by serially measuring immune biomarkers that undergo changes relative to the pretherapy baseline level, it might be possible to define immunologic mechanisms responsible for biologic and possibly also clinical activity of the therapeutic agent. As biologic agents have a bell-shaped activity curve that shifts depending on the dose and time of their delivery, serial monitoring is necessary to define the optimal biologic dose (OBD) of a therapeutic agent, which often is distinct from the maximal tolerated dose (MTD). The latter is utilized to define toxicity of drugs, but because most biologic agents have no or little toxicity, the OBD is the appropriate measure of their effects. Since, however, biologic agents are likely to have multiple biologic (and clinical) effects, the definition of OBD may not be straightforward, depending on more than one immunologic assay. The major objective of serial immune monitoring is to establish a correlation between phenotypic and/or functional changes in immune cells induced by therapy and clinical responses. The major unanswered question,

however, concerns the origin of immune cells to be tested. Peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC) representing less than 2% total body mononuclear cells are most commonly employed, although it appears that cells derived from the disease site (e.g., site of infection, tumor, tumor-draining lymph nodes, fluid from an inflamed joint, or interstitial fluid from injured sites) best reflect the extent of alterations induced by disease. Thus, whenever available, such specimens should be collected, banked, and evaluated in parallel with peripheral blood.

3.1. Requirements

A brief description of requirements that underlie the principles of immune monitoring is provided to orient the reader. Specimens collected from subjects prior to, at defined intervals during, and at the end of therapy are delivered to the laboratory. The specimens usually consist of peripheral blood collected into heparinized tubes, but may include tumor or other tissues, body fluids (e.g., pleural or peritoneal fluids, ascites), as well as especially collected interstitial fluids from sites of cannulation [8]. The specimens for immune monitoring are harvested at intervals specified in the clinical protocol and have to arrive at the laboratory no later than 24 hours after harvest. This requires an overnight delivery of specimens originating at a distant location. The specimens are bar-coded and processed immediately upon arrival. The separated cells are either cryopreserved at -80 °C in 2 ml cryovials and banked or are immediately tested in assays that cannot be performed with cryopreserved/thawed cells. The monitoring laboratory is cognizant of assays that have to be performed on fresh as opposed to cryopreserved/thawed cells and will be prepared to handle the specimens accordingly.

Changes occurring in the immune cell phenotype or function in response to therapy may be difficult to detect, unless sensitive and reliable monitoring assays are available. To decrease interassay variability of assays, immune monitoring is generally performed with "batched" specimens, representing the entire collection of samples obtained from one subject throughout therapy. This type of design mandates that all collected specimens be cryopreserved under controlled conditions, thawed with a minimal loss of viability, and tested in the same assay. It also requires that the monitoring laboratory has the capability to perform cryopreservation, bank, and maintain samples at a large scale for prolonged periods of time. An assay "reliability" in this context depends on the selection for monitoring of those immune markers/functions that are least affected by cryopreservation/thawing. This has to be a priori ascertained by the monitoring laboratory through comparisons of fresh and frozen specimens tested in the same assay. Experience

shows that the correctly performed process of freezing/thawing of immune or other cells is by far the most crucial determinant for preserving their true functional potential and, hence, for successful monitoring.

3.2. Significance

Immune monitoring of clinical trials is a complex and demanding enterprise requiring considerable resources. Its translational role in bridging basic immunologic insights with clinical endpoints, however, cannot be overemphasized. There is increasing awareness of the fact that biologic therapies occupy an important place among available clinical modalities for treatment of human disease. Their true impact on disease processes cannot be unraveled without a better understanding of immune mechanisms that these therapies target and possibly alter. Without reliable immune monitoring to help identify and define these mechanisms, biotherapy is unlikely to achieve a strong scientific foundation it deserves. Additionally, immune biomarkers identified by well-done monitoring might well prove to be significant surrogates of disease development, activity, or progression, and as such play a key role in clinical practice. Immune monitoring represents a valuable component of future research in translational science and clinical medicine.

4. Selection of Assays for Immune Monitoring

Technical advances and new insights into immunologic mechanisms have led to the recent development of many new types of immunoassays that lend themselves to use in monitoring (Table 2). Today, clinical investigators have a choice between phenotypic vs. functional, specific vs. nonspecific, and direct vs. indirect immune assays. The range and sophistication of currently available assays, which can potentially be used for monitoring, predicate that careful consideration is required for selection of the assay that best fits with the hypothesis being tested and with the laboratory expertise. It is essential to remember that immunologic monitoring of serially collected and batched samples is more demanding and rigorous than the performance of individual research assays. To monitor credibly, the laboratory has to have methodology in place that is selected for optimal performance and consistently provides reliable results. Thus, the selection involves a consideration of the assay attributes, including its throughput, required equipment, cost, and the expertise level necessary for its routine performance. Occasionally, a clinical investigator may request an assay that is especially applicable to a given clinical protocol or is newly available and thus interesting. In all instances, it is critical to select an assay that can accurately measure therapy-induced

TABLE 2
ASSAYS CURRENTLY AVAILABLE FOR IMMUNE MONITORING OF BIOTHERAPY TRIALS[a]

Assay type	Sample type
Phenotypic markers	
Cells: T, NKT, B, NK, M, DC, PMN, tissue cells	
Absolute cell numbers	Whole blood, body fluids, tissue biopsy
Cell proportions (percentages)	Whole blood, body fluids, tissue biopsy
Cellular subpopulations	Whole blood, body fluids, tissue biopsy
Single-cell quantification	Isolated cells
Morphology, cytology	Isolated cells
Functional assessments	
Delayed-type hypersensitivity (DTH)	Skin test read at 48 hours
Proliferation	MNC, tissue cells, isolated cell subsets
Cytotoxicity (CTL, ADCC, NK, LAK)	MNC or isolated cell subsets
Suppression (treg)	MNC or isolated cell subsets
Migration (chemotaxis)	Isolated cell subsets
Signaling, signal transduction	Tissue biopsy, isolated cells
Superoxide generation	MNC, tissue cells, tissue biopsy
Enzymatic activity	MNC, tissue cells, tissue biopsy
Apoptosis or necrosis	MNC, tissue cells, tissue biopsy
Cellular products	
Immunoglobulin levels	Serum, plasma, body fluids, supernatants
Cytokine/chemokine levels	Serum, plasma, body fluids, supernatants
Cytokine receptors (soluble)	Serum, plasma, body fluids, supernatants
Other soluble surface molecules (e.g., HLA, β_2m)	Serum, plasma, body fluids, supernatants
Ligands (e.g., FasL, TRAIL) and growth factors	Serum, plasma, body fluids, supernatants
Enzymes (e.g., metaloproteinases, arginase, IDO)	Serum, plasma, body fluids, supernatants
Neopterin	Serum, plasma, body fluids, supernatants

[a] The assays listed are available to be individually adapted to immune monitoring for phase I/II clinical trials. Many are not commercially available, and their use as an immunologic endpoint in phase III clinical trials would require formal validation.

changes in the frequency and/or function of immune cells. The selected assay should be easily adaptable to serial testing with a minimal loss of accuracy, have a high throughput to accommodate large-volume testing, and lend itself to automation. These requirements are imposed by the nature of monitoring which has to accommodate batched serial samples from many time points collected on protocols that enroll multiple subjects. The investigator and the laboratory personnel are generally required to devote considerable time and effort to assay selection, as the decision may determine not only scientific/correlative results of testing, but may also have significant financial impact. Therefore, selection of a monitoring assay is an important step with consequences that are likely to affect results emerging from a clinical trial and, ultimately, will have impact on the field of biotherapy as a whole.

4.1. Use of Cryopreserved vs. Freshly Harvested Specimens

The first decision facing a monitoring laboratory is the selection of assays that can be performed with cryopreserved cells or frozen samples of body fluids without compromising cellular functions or analyte integrity, respectively. In monitoring, serially collected specimens are processed, cryopreserved/frozen, and batched for testing upon thawing. This is by design because the only reliable way to determine differences between pretherapy and posttherapy results is to test these samples in the same assay. Consequently, the ability to reliably bank body fluids or cryopreserve immune cells for testing at the time therapy is already completed is the key to success. However, certain immunologic assays, notably those that measure cytotoxicity, cannot be reliably performed with cryopreserved cells [9]. It is necessary to compare fresh and cryopreserved/frozen specimens to ascertain that a test gives the same results when performed in parallel with either type of specimen. Assays accompanied by documentation showing they are reliable when performed with cryopreserved/thawed specimens are the best candidates for serial monitoring. Conversely, assays that must be performed on freshly harvested samples require documentation of interassay variability so that therapy-induced changes in immune parameters can be distinguished from assay-related spurious differences.

4.2. Single-Cell Assays: Tetramers, CFC, ELISPOT

In subjects with cancer treated with therapeutic antitumor vaccines, three single-cell assays for detection of antigen-specific effector T lymphocytes can be used for immune monitoring: enzyme-linked immunospot (ELISPOT) assay cytokine flow cytometry (CFC), and tetramer binding. Each assay is capable of measuring the frequency of vaccine-specific or tumor-specific T cells in a mononuclear cell specimen. All three have been rapidly replacing bulk-culture assays, such as cytotoxicity (i.e., ^{51}Cr-release assay), proliferation (i.e., ^{3}[H] thymidine incorporation), or cytokine production. All three are based on T-cell receptor (TCR) recognition of cognate peptides presented by MHC class I or class II molecules on the surface of antigen-presenting cells (APC) to the responder T cells. However, no consensus exists as to which of these three assays should be selected to best monitor vaccination results. The common perception that these assays are equivalent, that is, provide the same results, is not correct. Using all three assays, we measured the frequency of the melanoma peptide-specific CD8+ T cells in the peripheral circulation of subjects with metastatic melanoma who had received multiepitope DC-based vaccines [10]. A concordance between the three assays was determined using a 3×3 scatter plot matrix design constructed for each of the four peptides tested in all three assays before and after

vaccination therapy was completed. The three single-cell assays were not found to be concordant in measuring the frequency of immune effector cells in the peripheral blood of vaccinated subjects. The results for tetramer staining were consistently higher than those obtained with the ELISPOT or CFC assay [10].

Reflecting upon the observed data and the assay characteristics, it becomes clear that result concordance should not be expected. The ELISPOT assay measures production of cytokines (most commonly either IFN-γ or IL-5) by individual T cells in the plated population with a theoretical detection sensitivity of 1/100,000 cells. CFC identifies single responding T cells (1/50,000) with a cytokine expression in the Golgi zone. Tetramer binding detects peptide-specific T cells expressing the relevant TCR with a theoretical detection sensitivity of 1/10,000 cells. The assays not only have different sensitivities of detection, but also differ in specificity. ELISPOT and CFC are antibody-based and, by definition, are highly specific. In contrast, tetramers, which are complexes of peptides sitting in grooves of four MHC molecules held together by a streptavidin-biotin scaffold [11], bind to T lymphocytes expressing the relevant TCR with variable affinity. Tetramers might easily dissociate or nonspecifically bind to B cells, monocytes, or apoptotic cells [12, 13]. Thus, tetramer specificity needs to be carefully controlled. While separation of relevant (e.g., CD8+ or CD4+) T-cell subpopulations by antibody-charged columns or gate dumping of irrelevant cells in flow cytometry enhances tetramer-binding specificity, these procedures are costly, labor/time consuming, and thus not readily applicable to serial monitoring. Further, T cells that bind tetramers may not be functional, as TCR signaling could be compromised, as often happens in cancer or chronic infections, such as HIV-1 [14, 15]. This reduces the tetramer-binding assay to a phenotypic category because it detects T cells that bind tetramers but are not always functional [16]. CFC measures cytokine expression in a cell and not its secretion (although it is commonly assumed that the expressed cytokine would be secreted) and, strictly speaking, is also not a functional assay. Before flow cytometry, responder T cells are incubated for a few hours with a stimulant in the presence of Brefeldin or Monensin to block cytokine secretion [17]. While necessary, this step allows for undesirable amplification of response, as interactions in culture might increase the frequency of responding cells in the tested population. Cell permeabilization necessary for intercellular staining of a Golgi-based cytokine might introduce problems with immunodetection in CFC assays. ELISPOT is based on the similar principle as CFC, only it measures cytokine *secretion* from stimulated responder cells that are plated as a monolayer of individual cells on a nitrocellulose membrane to avoid cell-to-cell contact and allow for adequate spot display. Only ELISPOT measures function of individual responder cells by identifying those that produce and secrete the measured cytokine. ELISPOT also

does not require cell permeabilization or the use of a flow cytometer for cytokine detection.

4.3. ELISPOT As a Monitoring Assay

Which of these three assays is to be selected for immune monitoring of antigen-specific T-cell frequencies in a clinical trial? This frequently asked question can now be rationally answered as follows. Because it is always preferable to measure function rather than phenotype, ELISPOT would be an assay of choice. However, CFC and tetramer-binding assays are flow cytometry-based and thus allow for surface labeling of responder cells and their identification. It is possible to select CD8+ or CD4+ T-cell subsets on antibody-charged columns prior to ELISPOT [18], and two-color ELISPOT now available offers a possibility of identifying T cells simultaneously producing two cytokines [19]. In addition, supernatants from ELISPOT wells can be collected and tested for cytokine levels in multiplex assays. On the other hand, tetramer binding can be combined with both surface staining to determine cellular phenotype and intracytoplasmic staining for the detection of cytokine production [16]. While most informative, especially in situations when some of tetramer-binding cells do not express cytokines, this rare-event analysis is time-consuming, labor-intensive, and thus, not the best choice for serial monitoring. The recommended solution would be to monitor by ELISPOT or CFC (but not both), depending on considerations, such as sample numbers, time, labor, cost, and access to a flow cytometer. Tetramer binding could be used as a confirmatory assay in situations where it is important to demonstrate a functional deficiency of tetramer-binding T cells. The fact that tetramers have to be custom-made and pretitered for every peptide further limits their application to monitoring. In the author's experience, ELISPOT performed under strictly controlled, preferably GLP, conditions is most likely to provide accurate estimates of the frequency of functionally competent effector T cells in batched, serial samples obtained from subjects enrolled in clinical studies. Compared with CFC and tetramer binding, the cost of ELISPOT is reasonable enough to permit its use in a high-volume testing. However, the ELISPOT assay is not easy to standardize, and responder–stimulator interactions might result in unacceptably high background spot counts in which case the assay becomes uninterpretable.

4.4. Attributes of Selected Assays

Selection of a "right" assay for immune monitoring is a difficult process. An assay that accurately records therapy-induced changes in one or more immune parameters may not always be applicable to high-throughput serial

testing. The single-cell assays described above are complex in execution, difficult to analyze and interpret, and are relatively costly. It follows that their use should be judicious and carefully planned. Whatever assay is selected, it should have most, if not all, of the following attributes when performed under defined standard conditions: specificity, sensitivity precision, accuracy, and robustness. However, immunologic assays are often cell-based and thus especially troublesome to standardize, as discussed below, and may not be as precise or robust as chemical assays. For example, it is not unusual to see CVs greater than 20% in cellular assays. Functional assays are likely to be more difficult and expensive to perform than phenotypic assays. Cellular assays are always more complex to execute and interpret than titrating or measuring concentrations of soluble analytes in body fluids. Assay standardization, which is a requirement for serial immune monitoring, is expensive and requires special expertise. Ultimately, an investigator faced with a choice has to make an informed selection based on the hypothesis to be tested and monitoring tools that are most likely to accomplish the task.

5. Profiling of in Immune Biomarkers

Immune responses involve cascades of balanced interactions between antigens, immune cells, and their products. An imbalance or perturbation of the immune network may be more readily detectable if several rather than one functional or phenotypic markers are measured. Technologic advances now allow for a simultaneous assessment of multiple biomarkers, providing an investigator with a "profile," which may be more informative than a single assay. For example, cytokines and chemokines, soluble products of immune cells, are known to function as networks of several biologically related mediators, and measurements of a single cytokine in biologic fluid are seldom informative. The preference for simultaneous definition of several mediators contributing to an immune response has led to the development of microarrays and multiplex assays.

5.1. Multiplexing for Cytokines

Cytokine, gene, or protein profiling, whether by multiplex immunoassays, microarrays, or proteomics technologies, is especially well suited to evaluations of cytokine circuits. The potential for capturing polarization in the cytokine repertoire or differences in patterns of their production by immune or tissue cells and of relating them to a specific clinical situation has a tremendous appeal. Systemic and local therapies with cytokines are becoming increasingly common, and there is a need for monitoring cytokine levels in

relation to clinical endpoints. It is expected that such monitoring will expand our knowledge of the cytokine biology and rapidly provide a wealth of clinically useful information about cytokine involvement in human disease.

Today, multiplex assays have all but replaced traditional enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays (ELISA) for cytokines allowing us to simultaneously measure proinflammatory cytokines, Th1- vs. Th2-type cytokines, growth-promoting as opposed to suppressive cytokines, and so on, in a small (0.5 ml) sample of body fluid. Multiplex bead immunoassays designed to work in conjunction with a Luminex-type instrument utilize sets of distinct fluorescently labeled microspheres, each covalently linked to a cytokine-specific antibody [20, 21]. A combination of different color-coded beads (up to 100) in one tube allows for a simultaneous assessment of several cytokines. A flow-based instrument equipped with a reporter and classifying lasers and associated optics measures reactions that occur on the surface of colored microspheres. A high-speed digital signal processor efficiently manages the fluorescent output. The intensity of measured fluorescence is directly proportional to the concentration of the cytokine present in the specimen. The result is a quantitative profile of as many as 20–30 cytokines that might be especially useful for assessments of cytokine imbalance in disease. The therapeutic goal of shifting the balance from Th1 to Th2 cytokines can be more clearly defined using "cytokine profiling." Specifically, in the Th1-dominant diseases characterized by excess production of such Th1 cytokines as IL-2 or IFN-γ (i.e., autoimmunity, graft vs host disease), the desirable outcome would be a shift toward a Th2 cytokine profile. Conversely, in cancer, HIV or allergy considered to be Th2-dominant diseases, with excess of IL-4, IL-5, IL-10 production, a therapeutically driven shift toward the Th1 profile might correlate with immune and perhaps clinical recovery [22, 23]. It has been suggested that measuring cytokines and other growth factors in serum is not as useful as profiling them *in situ*, at the disease site. To this end, a technology exists collecting interstitial fluids via special catheters to be tested for multiple cytokines/chemokines by a microassay method, as recently described [8].

The multiplex antibody-coated bead assays for cytokines are referred to as "cytokine arrays." Several other assays utilizing a microarray format for rapid detection of cytokine profiles in biologic samples are available as recently reviewed [24, 25]. Their advantages are that numerous cytokines/chemokines can be simultaneously detected in a small sample volume with a high throughput.

5.2. Genomics and Proteomics

Microarray formats can of course be applied to measuring proteins other than cytokines including peptides, small molecules, or metabolic by-products present in body fluids. Under the heading of proteomics, these technologies

are currently used to define biomarkers that would qualify as "surrogate markers" of disease and provide a signature of disease state. It is expected that pathologic changes on the one hand and therapy-induced alterations on the other in cells or tissues will be reflected in distinct protein patterns detectable in cells or body fluids. Proteomic technologies that are able to discriminate between normal and pathologic protein patterns are likely to become very useful for mapping changes that accompany therapy or are associated with a disease progression. Proteomic methods involve protein quantification and their characterization, including posttranslational modifications or protein–protein interaction profiles [26, 27].

Although proteomics-based screening for biomarkers is commonly a component of clinical trials with biologic agents, its application to monitoring will depend on highly validated and characterized methods of sample analysis. Similarly, assessments of gene expression profiles using array-based technologies, referred to as genomics and widely used today in efforts to provide a genetic phenotype of a disease state, are not yet ready for use in monitoring. Nevertheless, both genomics- and proteomics-based technologies are gaining increasingly important place in screening for immune alterations and will likely become major components of monitoring in the future, provided current correlative studies validate their reliability and clinical utility [7, 28, 29].

Detection of differences in gene expression, using microarrays now widely available from commercial vendors, in immune cells prior to and after therapy is likely to help in identifying molecular targets responsible for a response. Similarly, a combination of two-dimensional PAGE with mass spectrometry allowing for simultaneous analysis of many hundreds of proteins in body fluids or tissues may enable us to discriminate disease-associated from therapy-induced effects. Rapid and cost-effective screening for the expression of multiple genes coding for cytokines, activation markers, components of major signaling pathways, or other cellular products offers a powerful new approach to obtaining an integrated view of disease mechanisms and cellular processes. Specifically, measuring T-cell activation, or identifying changes in T-cell differentiation, proliferation, and survival in response to biotherapy represents an important advance in understanding molecular mechanisms of immune response. In addition, examining up- or downregulation of gene expression as well as protein analysis capturing distinct protein patterns could identify biomarkers of prognosis or surrogate markers correlating with clinical responses. These potential applications of genomics and proteomics to monitoring of research clinical trials are being actively explored. But to the best of the author's knowledge, none of these "state-of-the-art" technologies have yet been qualified for monitoring of biotherapy trials based on the *feasibility*, *reproducibility*, and *standardization* criteria usually applied to assays selected for diagnosis, early detection, monitoring of therapy, or prevention and risk assessment.

5.3. Polychromatic Flow Cytometry

The availability of monoclonal antibodies labeled with various chromatophores with excitation wavelengths spanning the entire light spectrum has revolutionized flow cytometry. This technology is used for examining cells, including immunocytes, in body fluids or in culture. The presence and/or levels of expression of surface or intracytoplasmic markers in immune cells can be reliably assessed by flow cytometry. Newer applications of flow to measuring cellular functions such as proliferation, cytotoxicity, apoptosis, or cytokine expression are replacing more traditional culture-based methods [30–32]. Single-cell assays, such as tetramer binding or CFC, as discussed above, allow for examination of individual antigen-specific immune cells and their quantification. Further, this multiparameter technology facilitates simultaneous analysis of the phenotype and function and lends itself to high-content screening [33].

Flow cytometry-based assays are now widely accessible and are highly accurate. A large array of variously labeled monoclonal antibodies are commercially supplied, allowing for the assessment of the proportions of immune cells positive for up to 9–12 markers. A combination of activation markers, growth receptors, cytokine receptors, costimulatory molecules, and so forth, on distinct and identifiable subsets of PBMC provides a powerful tool for monitoring. However, from the practical viewpoint, monitoring for simultaneous expression of more than five markers is too labor-intensive, especially in its data analysis aspect, and in the author's monitoring laboratory four-color flow cytometry assays are routine, while flow with five or more colors is used for confirmatory/research purposes. Changes not only in proportions of cells expressing a given set of markers but also in levels of expression of individual molecules or even changes in their phosphorylation following exposure to an activating signal can be quantified by flow cytometry. This feature makes multiparameter flow cytometry a useful approach for testing the predicted mechanisms of action of a biologic agent. Quantitative flow analysis can be greatly enhanced by the use of molecular equivalents of soluble fluorochrome (MESF) units instead of mean fluorescence intensity (MFI) in every assay. By adding a mixture of four types of beads with known fluorescence intensities and unlabeled blank beads control, a standard calibration curve is generated each time the assay is performed. The curve transforms MFI values into MESF units and defines the interassay variability of the assay (e.g., $<2\%$ with $n = 30$). This method is particularly useful for assessments of individual cellular components such as activation markers or signaling molecules in lymphocytes. Phenotyping of cells by flow cytometry can be done on fresh or cryopreserved specimens, and it has been extensively used in monitoring of biotherapy trials. However, calibration of the instrument and

compensation for chromatic interference are the key to successful and reliable flow cytometry.

6. The QA/QC Program and Assay Quality

An assay selected for use in monitoring has to be executed under conditions that will consistently provide acceptable data. Immune monitoring of patients enrolled in biotherapy trials should only be performed in laboratories with established QA and QC programs that meet the GLP standards. QC of immunologic assays, especially cellular assays is difficult and that of serial immunologic measures represents a special challenge. Therefore, a rigorously operated QA/QC program is a requirement for a monitoring laboratory. Such a program generally consists of several components, including a manual of regularly updated standard operating procedures (SOP), policy manual, personnel training, instrument maintenance, reagent and temperature control, secure data base, adverse event review, quality review, and proficiency testing. Currently, no model QC program exists for immunologic monitoring, and the laboratories are encouraged to follow the GLP guidelines offered by professional groups, such as College of American Pathologists or the departments of health in some states. No proficiency testing programs are available for most immunologic assays, except those designed for flow cytometry or hematology (i.e., the leukocyte count and differential). Participation in these is highly recommended. Largely, however, the monitoring laboratories are required to establish their own QA/QC program to ensure that acceptable data are generated in compliance with the GLP standard. In cases where this is not possible, services of a reference immune monitoring laboratory can be sought. Advantages of a central laboratory operated as a GLP facility are listed in Table 3. Such facilities exist in large medical centers or may be associated with National Institutes of Health (NIH-) supported cooperative groups.

TABLE 3
ADVANTAGES OF A CENTRAL LABORATORY OPERATED AS A GLP FACILITY

- QA/QC program in place, assuring the quality and reliability of monitoring
- State-of-the-art technologies in use
- Scale-up and high-throughput assays available
- Assay development and standardization
- Decreased cost of monitoring due to the large assay volume
- Result interpretation by a clinical immunologist in conjunction with statisticians aware of immune-based analyses
- Banking of samples which are accompanied by clinical outcome data for future research

6.1. QA/QC in Practice

Sample arrival, log in, and processing performed according to an existing SOP have to be organized to meet the specimen collection schema(s) in a clinical protocol(s). Arrival of serial specimens is recorded manually and electronically. Blood samples for immunologic monitoring should be routinely collected in the morning to avoid diurnal variability. Tissue samples and body fluids are processed differently than blood, and the laboratory has to be prepared to handle these specimens as they arrive. Specimens must reach the laboratory within 24 hours of collection to be processed. A history of each sample is maintained, and problems are documented in writing and reviewed. Arriving specimens are directed to be tested fresh or cryopreserved. The decision to use fresh or cryopreserved cells in a given assay is made prior to a clinical protocol initiation and is based on results of preliminary comparative studies of the assay performance with fresh vs. cryopreserved cells. Cryopreservation, using a rate-control freezing device, is a routine but extremely important step in monitoring as is banking of cryopreserved specimens in liquid N_2 vapors. Both are performed under stringent controls because subsequent testing depends on the quality of cells that are stored frozen and thawed for testing. Similarly, aliquoted body fluids that are banked and batched for future testing must be protected from temperature fluctuations or inadvertent equipment failure. Hence, temperature-control program has to be in effect around the clock. An automated temperature-control system is advisable. The above-described activities are components of the QA/QC program that is necessary for reliable immune monitoring.

6.2. Assay Standardization

Standardization is performed prior to the introduction of an assay for monitoring. As the major function of serial monitoring is to document changes from baseline upon treatment, the importance of assay reproducibility cannot be overemphasized. The standardization data are obtained by repeatedly performing the assay with cells or body fluids obtained from healthy donors under previously established optimized invariant conditions to establish the mean, median, and 80% normal range and coefficient of variation. The intraassay variability is also determined, as batching of specimens in one assay is a usual operating procedure. A set of appropriate controls is selected, and these depend on the type of specimen. For example, in assays performed with fresh PBMC, which are collected at various time points, interassay variability is of concern. Therefore, a cryopreserved lot of vialed PBMC obtained from a normal donor can be prepared, its range

of reactivity determined, and thawed cells used in the assay to monitor day-to-day variability. With fresh cells, it is always advisable to include fresh control cells obtained from a healthy volunteer. In this respect, it is necessary to have in place an IRB approval for drawing blood from consented normal donors and to maintain a pool of such donors for QC purposes.

Batching of serial samples obtained from one patient in the same assay may dispense with concerns of interassay variability; however, even with this monitoring strategy in place, it is necessary to control for day-to-day differences to ensure the assay performs equally well for all patients on the protocol, whose batched specimens are likely to be tested on different days. The data obtained from control samples and evaluated in parallel with each patient sample can help to ensure the results validity. Whenever available, universal standards (such as e.g., cytokine standards available from NIH or WHO) should be regularly included in the monitoring assays.

6.3. Assay Validation

Assay "standardization" should not be confused with assay "validation." The former is a requisite part of the QC program, while the latter is a formal evaluation of an assay performed as defined in the Bioanalytical Method Validation issued by FDA in May 2001 (21CFR part 58) and qualifying it to be used in phase III clinical trials as an immunologic endpoint. Validation consists of a series of experiments designed to evaluate accuracy, precision, selectivity, sensitivity, reproducibility, and stability characteristics of the method. While validation criteria are well defined for chemical assays, immunologic assays do not always fit into these criteria. Nevertheless, because no separate guidelines exist for immunologic assays, those developed for chemical assays are generally followed. Validation of immunologic assays is expensive and faces a number of problems, especially with cell-based assays, which are typically lacking in precision. Further, no reference standards for cellular assays are currently available. In contrast, validation of immune assays measuring soluble products, such as immunoglobulins or cytokines, can follow recommendations for the development of chemical assays.

7. Interpretation of Immune Monitoring Assays

Serial immune monitoring is aimed at the accurate identification of changes in the immune profile established at baseline during the course of therapy. Not unexpectedly, there are many pitfalls. Even when the measurements of samples collected over time are made simultaneously and

accurately in one assay, it is possible to miss the change, especially when it peaks, simply because sampling intervals are not correct, so that the relevant samples are missing. A separate concern is that of biologic variability existing within and among individuals. Immune responses are subject to environmental, hormonal, and neurologic as well as pathologic changes [34, 35]. Therefore, the discrimination of therapy-related alterations from biologically mediated normal responses to infections, stress, or endocrine activity might be very difficult. Often, this might require a parallel assessments of nonimmunologic biomarkers.

7.1. Statistical Analysis

Results obtained from serial monitoring require statistical analysis. In preparation for such analysis, the data have to be purged of possible errors made during data entry. A monitor intimately familiar with the assays is assigned the task of screening for outliers. These are identified and checked against the laboratory records (worksheets). Next, the statistician responsible for the analysis should generate a summary data statement in which missing data points or variations from the protocol schema are flagged to be checked against the laboratory records. This is a very important component of the analysis because changes in the timing of samples relative to the treatment as well as departures from the sampling sequence specified in the protocol are likely to have profound effects on the final results. Once the statistician is satisfied with the completeness and accuracy of the data set, he initiates the analysis that he had selected together with the investigator responsible for the clinical trial. The selected analysis depends on the trial objectives, its design, and hypotheses tested, but since pre- and post-treatment changes are generally measured, the object of the analysis is to determine the significance of changes from pretherapy baseline. Several statistical methods are available for this type of analysis as previously described [36].

The statistician performing the analysis of immune monitoring results has to be intimately familiar with the assay(s) that had been used. This is often a problem, which can, however, be easily remedied by including the clinical immunologist in the design, execution, and analysis of biotherapy clinical trials which include immune monitoring. Interpretation of immunologic data is not straightforward: it requires knowledge of the assays performed as well as the biologic agent used for therapy and its mode of action. It is necessary to be cognizant of the hypothesis being tested in the trial and putative mechanisms that might mediate immunologic activity or its absence, as when, for example, suppressive mechanisms counterbalance stimulatory activity of a therapeutic agent. For this reason, immunologic results might

appear counterintuitive, and expertise is needed to provide a correct interpretation. Individuals who direct immunomonitoring laboratories are in a position to help with assays selection, their timely and accurate execution and, by being in touch with the statistician, also with the data analysis. Close interactions between the biostatisticians, clinical investigator, and the laboratory are hallmarks of successful monitoring.

7.2. Interpretation Discrepancies

Given the stringent requirements and demands good monitoring imposes, it is not surprising that to date few significant correlative studies have emerged from immune monitoring. Further, immunologic results obtained in various academic centers testing similar or the same immune therapies rarely agree. The data interpretation becomes challenging when two different assays give results that do not correlate. For example, delayed-type hypersensitivity (DTH) test, which is the only available *in vivo* correlate of cellular immunity in man often does not correlate with results of *ex vivo* T-cell assays. A positive DTH response read as induration (not erythema) at the test site 48 hours after intradermal application of an antigen signifies existing immunity [37]. A concomitant absence of proliferative *ex vivo* T-cell response might be due to the assay sensitivity and thus may not be biologically significant. Another test, for example, cytokine production, might be positive. On the other hand, a negative DTH test accompanied by a positive *ex vivo* response to the same antigen could indicate *in vivo* suppression that is not detected with isolated T cells in a test tube. When results of two *ex vivo* assays do not correlate, the tendency is to depend on one and neglect the other. However, the observed discrepancy could signify a loss/gain of a specific immune function in which case an important biologic event is missed. More relevant to monitoring is the situation when changes from the baseline only weakly correlate with a clinical endpoint or when large individual variability in the magnitude of immune response exists among subjects. The latter is a common finding, and the use of robust fitting statistics might correct for between-patient differences. In some individuals, immune response to treatment may be delayed relative to others, and here also statistical modeling might simplify interpretation. Overall, while discrepancies are expected between the DTH and *ex vivo* assays, those between two monitoring *ex vivo* assays are troublesome. It is, therefore, preferable to avoid monitoring of the same function, for example, cytotoxicity, using two different assays. Monitoring based on the hypothesis which targets a specific immune mechanism or activity should be restricted to one, at most two, carefully selected assays. Interpretation of results from such a hypothesis-driven study will be simpler, and results are more likely to correlate with clinical outcome. On the other

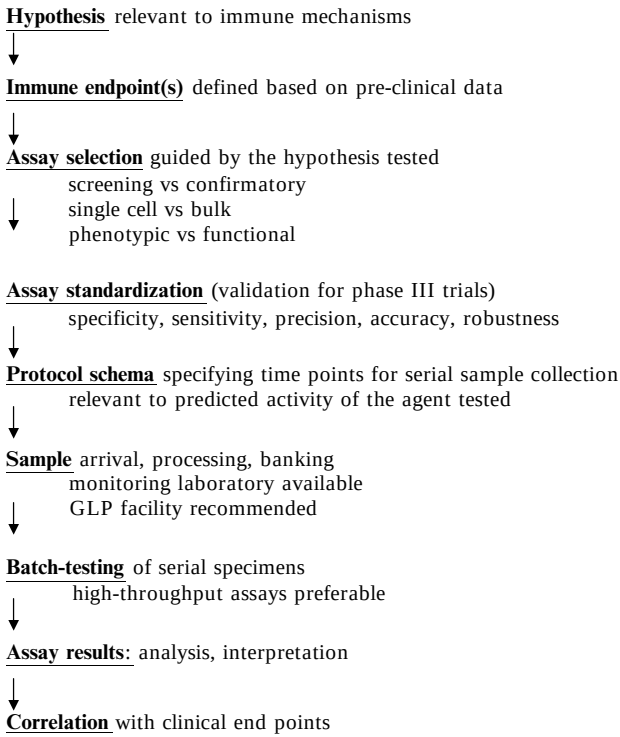
hand, currently popular microarrays, serving as screening tools, may identify biomarkers that correlate with clinical endpoints or can be used as surrogate markers. When achieved, this would represent a significant advance in monitoring. As always, the availability of data from adequate numbers of subjects together with the ability of a selected monitoring assay to discriminate responders from nonresponders will determine the level of significance. It should be remembered that both can be and should be determined prior to the clinical trial based on the available preliminary data.

8. Conclusions

Immune monitoring of serially collected samples from clinical protocols is demanding, resource consuming, and costly. It is, however, necessary for ensuring that clinical endpoints are correlated to the immunologic mechanisms potentially responsible for therapy-induced changes. Linking correlative immunologic studies with clinical endpoints, however, has been a major problem. One reason could be that requirements for extensive laboratory support in the context of existing QA/QC program have not been met. Serial studies are especially difficult to perform reliably, and a GLP facility specializing in immune monitoring is an appropriate venue for such studies. A schema for immune monitoring as it should be optimally performed in support of clinical trials is included below. While there are many steps, the selection of assays that are most likely to capture the underlying immune mechanisms is of critical importance. Yet, this is not a simple task because interactions between immune cells, cytokines, antibodies, and other biologically significant immune products and the host are not fully understood. Interpretations of monitoring results require statistical analysis capable of modeling therapy-induced changes in multiple cellular interactions over time. It is expected that when these requirements are adequately addressed and immune monitoring becomes an integral part of all biotherapy trials, the so far tenuous goal of establishing immune correlates of clinical responses will be fulfilled.

The future of immune monitoring includes introduction of new assays targeting signaling molecules, activation pathways, apoptosis antigen processing, and regulatory T lymphocytes (Treg). Also, antigen-specific responses will be playing an increasingly important role and will become validated to meet regulatory requirements. Immune measures are beginning to be looked upon as biomarkers of disease progression and outcome. This trend is likely to continue given the emerging evidence that phenotypic and functional attributes of immune cells as well as their products can serve as surrogate markers of disease progression or responses to therapy. Multiplex formats

A schema for immune monitoring of clinical trials



and microarrays are slowly replacing conventional immune assays and allow for the definition of immune profiles, which appear to be more informative and biologically relevant. With a better understanding of immune mechanisms and their involvement in human disease, it will be possible to eliminate the practice of using multiple assay panels and replace it with the hypothesis-driven monitoring dependent on one or a small number of selected assays. Most of these alterations in the practice of monitoring are already in progress, and in its new format, immune monitoring is well poised to continue serving the field of biotherapy.

Acknowledgment

This work was supported in part by the NIH grants PO1-DE12321 and RO1-DE13918 to T.L.W.

References

[1] Haque A, Blum JS. New insights in antigen processing and epitope selection: Development of novel immunotherapic strategies for cancer, autoimmunity and infectious diseases. J Biol Regul Homeost Agents 2005; 19(3–4):93–104.
[2] van Eden W. Immunoregulation of autoimmune disease. Hum Immunol 2006; 67 (6):446–453.
[3] Matzinger P. The danger model: A renewed sense of self. Science 2002; 296:301–305.
[4] Sentman CL, Barber MA, Barber A, Zhang T. NK cell receptors as tools in cancer immunotherapy. Adv Cancer Res 2006; 95:249–292.
[5] Waldmann TA. The biology of interleukin-2 and interleukin-15: Implications for cancer therapy and vaccine design. Nat Rev Immunol 2006; 6:595–601.
[6] Hinrichs CS, Gattinoni L, Restifo NP. Programming CD8+ T cells for effective immunotherapy. Curr Opin Immunol 2006; 18:363–370.
[7] Lotze MT, Wang E, Marincola FM, Hanna N, Bugelski PJ, Burns CA, et al. Workshop on cancer biometrics: Identifying biomarkers and surrogates of cancer in patients: A meeting held at the Masur Auditorium, National Institutes of Health. J Immunother 2005; 28:79–119.
[8] Rosenbloom AJ, Ferris RL, Sipe DM, Riddler SA, Connolly NC, Abe K, et al. *In vitro* and *in vivo* protein sampling by combined microdialysis and ultrafiltration. J Immunol Methods 2006; 309:55–68.
[9] Whiteside T. Anti-tumor vaccines in head and neck cancer. In: Shin D, editor. Current Cancer Drug Targets, Vol. 7, Betham Science Publishers, 2007.
[10] Whiteside TL, Zhao Y, Tsukishiro T, Elder EM, Gooding W, Baar J. Enzyme-linked immunospot, cytokine flow cytometry, and tetramers in the detection of T-cell responses to a dendritic cell-based multipeptide vaccine in patients with melanoma. Clin Cancer Res 2003; 9:641–649.
[11] Altman J. Flow cytometry application of MHC tetramers. Methods Cell Biol 2004; 75:433–452.
[12] Barnes E, Ward SM, Kasprowicz VO, Dusheiko G, Klenerman P, Lucas M. Ultra-sensitive class I tetramer analysis reveals previously undetectable populations of antiviral CD8+ T cells. Eur J Immunol 2004; 34:1570–1577.
[13] Hoffmann TK, Donnenberg VS, Friebe-Hoffmann U, Meyer EM, Rinaldo CR, DeLeo AB, et al. Competition of peptide-MHC class I tetrameric complexes with anti-CD3 provides evidence for specificity of peptide binding to the TCR complex. Cytometry 2000; 41:321–328.
[14] Schmielau J, Nalesnik MA, Finn OJ. Suppressed T-cell receptor zeta-chain expression and cytokine production in pancreatic cancer patients. Clin Cancer Res 2001; 7:933s–939s.
[15] Whiteside TL. Down-regulation of zeta-chain expression in T cells: A biomarker of prognosis in cancer? Cancer Immunol Immunother 2004; 53:865–878.
[16] Markovic SN, Nevala WK, Uhl CB, Celis E, McKean DJ. A reproducible method for the enumeration of functional (cytokine producing) versus non-functional peptide-specific cytotoxic T lymphocytes in human peripheral blood. Clin Exp Immunol 2006; 145:438–447.
[17] Maecker HT, Maino VC. Analyzing T-cell responses to cytomegalovirus by cytokine flow cytometry. Hum Immunol 2004; 65:493–499.
[18] Miltenyi S, Muller W, Weichel W, Radbruch A. High gradient magnetic cell separation with MACS. Cytometry 1990; 11:231–238.
[19] Okamoto Y, Nishida M. Dual-color ELISPOT assay for analyzing cytokine balance. Methods Mol Biol 2005; 302:263–272.

[20] Carson RT, Vignali DA. Simultaneous quantitation of 15 cytokines using a multiplexed flow cytometric assay. J Immunol Methods 1999; 227:41–52.
[21] Vignali DA. Multiplexed particle-based flow cytometric assays. J Immunol Methods 2000; 243:243–255.
[22] Elenkov IJ, Iezzoni DG, Daly A, Harris AG, Chrousos GP. Cytokine dysregulation, inflammation and well-being. Neuroimmunomodulation 2005; 12:255–269.
[23] Netea MG, van der Meer JW, Sutmuller RP, Adema GJ, Kullberg BJ. From the Th1/Th2 paradigm towards a Toll-like receptor/T-helper bias. Antimicrob Agents and Chemother 2005; 49:3991–3996.
[24] Whiteside T. Assays for cytokines. The Cytokine Handbook, 4th ed. New York, NY: Academic Press, 2003: 1375–1396.
[25] Whiteside TL. Cytokine assays. Biotechniques 2002; 10(Suppl 4–8):2–5.
[26] Mitchell P. A perspective on protein microarrays. Nat Biotechnol 2002; 20:225–229.
[27] Pavlickova P, Schneider EM, Hug H. Advances in recombinant antibody microarrays. Clin Chim Acta 2004; 343:17–35.
[28] Weingarten P, Lutter P, Wattenberg A, Blueggel M, Bailey S, Klose J, et al. Application of proteomics and protein analysis for biomarker and target finding for immunotherapy. Methods Mol Med 2005; 109:155–174.
[29] Tyers M, Mann M. From genomics to proteomics. Nature 2003; 422:193–197.
[30] Liu L, Chahroudi A, Silvestri G, Wernett ME, Kaiser WJ, Safrit JT, et al. Visualization and quantification of T cell-mediated cytotoxicity using cell-permeable fluorogenic caspase substrates. Nat Med 2002; 8:185–189.
[31] Burkett MW, Shafer-Weaver KA, Strobl S, Baseler M, Malyguine A. A novel flow cytometric assay for evaluating cell-mediated cytotoxicity. J Immunother 2005; 28:396–402.
[32] Kern F, LiPira G, Gratama JW, Manca F, Roederer M. Measuring Ag-specific immune responses: Understanding immunopathogenesis and improving diagnostics in infectious disease, autoimmunity and cancer. Trends Immunol 2005; 26:477–484.
[33] Taylor D. Past present and future of high content screening and the field of cellomics. Methods Mol Biol 2006; 356:3–18.
[34] Calcagni E, Elenkov I. Stress system activity, innate and T helper cytokines, and susceptibility to immune-related diseases. Ann NY Acad Sci 2006; 1069:62–76.
[35] Whiteside T, Boyiadzis M, Herberman RB. Natural killer cells. In: G. Fink, editor., Encyclopedia of Stress, 2nd ed. Elsevier, 2007 (in press).
[36] Whiteside T. Monitoring of immunologic therapies. In: Detrick B, Hamilton RG, Folds JD, editors. Manual of Molecular and Clinical Laboratory Immunology. 7th ed. ASM Press, 2006: 1171–1182.
[37] Ananworanich JS, Shearer WT. Delayed-type hypersensitivity skin testing. In: Rose NR, Hamilton RG, Detrick B, editors. Manual Clinical Laboratory Immunology. 6th ed. Washington, DC: ASM Press, 2002: 212–219.

This page intentionally left blank

DIETARY MODIFICATION OF BRAIN FUNCTION: EFFECTS ON NEUROENDOCRINE AND PSYCHOLOGICAL DETERMINANTS OF MENTAL HEALTH- AND STRESS-RELATED DISORDERS

A. R. Waladkhani and J. Hellhammer

Novalisstrasse 12a, D-54295 Trier, Germany

1. Abstract 99
2. Introduction 100
3. Meal Composition 101
   3.1. Carbohydrate 102
   3.2. Fat 103
   3.3. Protein 106
   3.4. Antioxidant 107
   3.5. Phytochemicals 108
   3.6. Vitamins 108
   3.7. Minerals and Trace Elements 111
4. Meal Frequency 113
5. Meal Size 113
6. Appetite 114
7. Emotion 114
8. Metabolic Acidosis 115
9. Glucocorticoids 116
10. Monoamine 118
11. Stress 119
12. Conclusion 121
    References 122

1. Abstract

Stress is associated with both psychological and biological adaptation. Chronic stress, however, impairs adaptation, and may finally lead to illness, in part through unhealthy changes in nutritional behavior. This chapter shows how physiological and psychological stress responses are affected by

0065-2423/08 $35.00
DOI: 10.1016/S0065-2423(07)00005-4

different food ingredients, and how stress affects health behavior, for example food choice. It becomes obvious that nutrition is closely linked to food choice and that food ingredients affect a broad range of neuroendocrine and related psychological processes, which regulate adaptation to chronic stress. Thus, dietary modification may become a valuable tool to modify the susceptibility to stress and stress-related disorders.

2. Introduction

Stress may affect health not only through its direct biological effects but also through changes in health behaviors [1, 2]. One such health behavior is food choice. Stress may lead to illness through unhealthy changes in nutritional behavior. In psychology literature, food choices have often been considered as one of the range of health-related behaviors that might be responsive to life stress or emotional well-being either inadvertently or as a deliberate strategy for coping with stress [3, 4].

Stress is associated with biological changes, such as adrenaline-induced glycogenolysis, slowed gastric emptying, autonomic shunting of blood from gut to musculature, and activation of the hypothalamic–pituitary–adrenal (HPA) axis [5, 6]. Increases of corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH), adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), and cortisol levels in anticipation of or during stressful stimulation are interpreted as allostatic [7]. The diversity of health implications now associated with control and consequences of the release of cortisol, together with its sensitivity to psychological stress, has given this major human adrenal glucocorticoid (GC) hormone much importance in behavioral medicine [8]. There is evidence that the HPA axis as well as peripheral cortisol metabolism may be differently regulated according to sex and age factors [9, 10].

The HPA axis is closely associated with systems responsible for caloric flow in the body [11–13]. Only recently animal studies have revealed evidence for fasting-induced attenuation of pituitary-adrenal responses to stress. A prolonged fasting of 4 days decreased cortisol responses to stress in sheep isolated from the flock compared with stressed sheep fed *ad libitum* [14]. Rats fasted for 14–24 hours showed a blunted corticosterone response to novelty [15] and reduced ACTH levels following restraint stress compared with controls [16, 17]. However, despite lower ACTH levels, restraint stress after fasting was associated with an increased corticosterone response in the latter experiments [17]. In humans, fasting induced changes in adrenocortical responsiveness [18]. Fasting for 3 days led to reduced cortisol increases following insulin-induced hypoglycemia. Fasting for 24 hours was without any effect (Fig. 1).

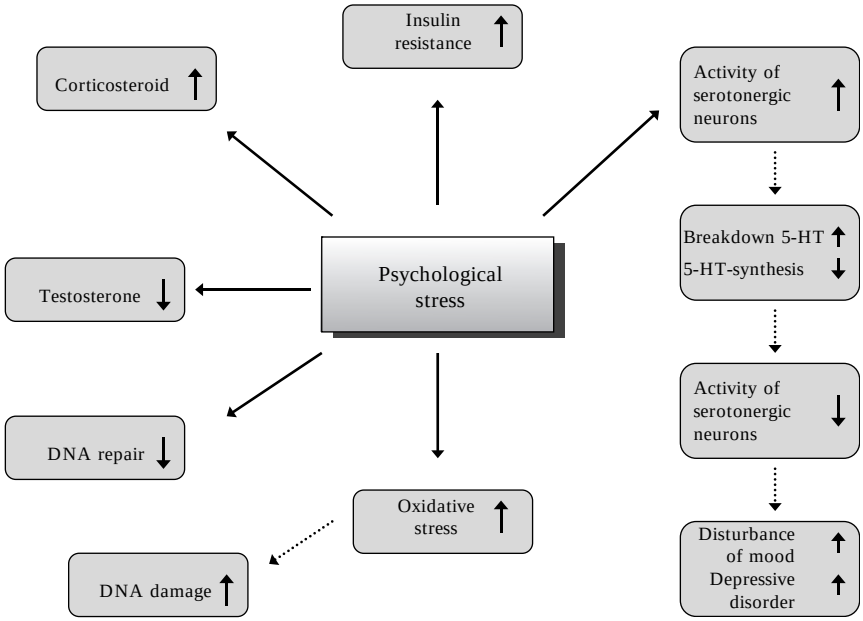


FIG. 1. Physiological effects of psychological stress.

HPA axis function can profoundly influence expression of appetite and regulation of body weight [6], whereas HPA axis activity can be modified by changes in feeding patterns [19]. Systematic studies demonstrated an association between meals and the midday increase in plasma cortisol [20]. Also, increases in plasma cortisol could occur in some subjects after breakfast, the midday meal, or an evening meal, the greatest effect occurred after the midday meal [21].

3. Meal Composition

Food ingestion is a well-known inducer of several peptides that may, in turn, directly influence the activity of the HPA axis [22]. Animal studies indicated that both the food intake and the light–dark cycle represent independent synchronizers for the circadian periodicity of cortisol secretion [23]. In addition, meal timing, food composition, and the duration of premeal fasting have been shown to exert an important effect on cortisol secretion [24, 21]. Cortisol secretion elicited by stress or smoking is abolished by mild food deprivation in men [12]. Normal physiological variations in cortisol in

humans have a significant direct influence on macronutrient metabolism [25, 26]. Cortisol seems to increase lipolysis and proteolysis, as well as increasing gluconeogenesis, thereby raising the contribution of protein and fat to energy substrate supply, while protecting glycogen stores. Further, the ability of cortisol to increase plasma free fatty acid (FFA) levels may underlie the emerging link between cortisol and abdominal obesity, together with its associated metabolic syndrome [27].

In humans, it has been found that food ingestion, particularly proteins, can stimulate α1-adrenoreceptors, possibly via the activation of neurotransmitter amines [28]. There is much evidence that adrenal steroids influence macronutrient selection by increasing appetite for carbohydrates (CHOs), primarily, and for fat, and regulating the timing of eating in rodents [29, 30]. Also, stress may alter macronutrient selection. Women tend to prefer high-fat or sweet foods when moderately stressed [31, 32]. Women who were high cortisol reactors to stress ate more food than low reactors during recovering from stress [33]. On the rest day, however, high reactors tended to eat less and low reactors tended to eat more, eliminating the difference between groups. The high cortisol reactors tended to consume more sweet foods than low reactors, across days [33]. Also cortisol reactivity may be a marker for vulnerability to stress-induced eating, and thus may help to explain who eats more vs who eats less after stress [33].

3.1. Carbohydrate

Diets with high CHO content may prevent deterioration of mood in stress-prone subjects when submitted to a stressful task [34]. Different studies indicated that CHO supplementation results in significantly lower plasma levels of tryptophan and the branched-chain amino acids (leucine, isoleucine, and valine) by 120 min of exercise [35, 36]. The rise in plasma tryptophan levels is believed to be the result of attenuation in FFA levels as a result of the CHO supplementation. Increasing levels of plasma FFA result in increased plasma levels of tryptophan by displacing tryptophan from albumin [36, 37]. In contrast, declines in plasma branched-chain amino acid levels during CHO supplementation and exercise are thought to be due to the maintenance of plasma insulin levels during exercise [37, 38].

Studies indicated that CHO supplementation results in lower plasma levels of both amino acids tyrosine and phenylalanine. Since movement of these amino acids into muscle and liver can also be enhanced by insulin [36, 39]. CHO supplementation also influences the hormonal responses to exercise. Also, CHO supplementation during prolonged exercise attenuated increases in plasma cortisol and decreases in plasma insulin [35, 40]. The magnitude of decline in plasma insulin levels during CHO supplementation appears to be

greater in women compared with the decline previously described in men [35]. Glucose load leads to a rapid rise in insulin levels in nondiabetics, and thereby to an increased transport of tryptophan into the central nervous system. This is followed by an increased synthesis of serotonin, which is known to have a stimulatory influence on the HPA axis at the hypothalamic level [41]. Following Trier Social Stress Test subjects with high blood glucose levels showed the well-established response pattern of a twofold increase in free cortisol levels [42, 43]. Human studies suggest that ready availability of energy is a prerequisite for significant acute stress responses of the HPA axis [12].

3.2. Fat

Feeding rats chronically a high-fat diet increased their basal and stress-induced HPA activity [44]. Continuous high-fat feeding may act as a chronic stressor, not only enhancing baseline adrenocortical activity but also increasing neuroendocrine stress responses. Feeding rats with high-fat diet resulted in a lower anxiety level in an elevated plusmaze paradigm compared with feeding with high-CHO diet [45]. Feeding rats a diet with a high fat content reduces some of the behavioral and physiological responses to psychosocial and physiological stressors such as social defeat and administration of the endotoxin lipopolysaccharides [46]. Furthermore, the defeat-induced desensitization of central nervous 5-hydroxytryptamine (5-HT)1A receptors, which normally occurs in animals on a diet with a high CHO content, is absent in animals on a high-fat diet [46]. Hypothalamic levels of 5-HT also decrease immediately after consumption of a fat meal [47]. A high-fat diet has suppressive effects on the thermoregulatory and behavioral responses to stress [46]. Serum brain-derived neurotrophic factor has been found to be negatively correlated with the severity of depressive symptoms [48]. Brain-derived neurotrophic factor expression can be inhibited by physical and psychological stress [49] and a diet high in saturated fat and sucrose [50, 51].

It has been suggested that dietary fat is a prime contributor to the development of obesity [46]. For any given body mass index, mortality is higher if fat is distributed centrally (visceral adiposity) compared with a more generalized pattern of distribution [52]. This has renewed interest in the factors that control adipose tissue distribution in addition to adipose tissue mass and function [53]. Although men tend to progressively increase abdominal fat deposits with increasing total adiposity at each age, a tendency to develop different obesity phenotypes throughout the lifespan occurs more clearly in women, particularly after the menopausal age [54]. The response of the HPA axis to a high-lipid/protein meal or high-CHO meal in obese women depends on their pattern of body fat distribution and that the activation of

the HPA following the ingestion of large amounts of complex CHO may have some pathophysiological relevance, specifically in women with the abdominal obesity phenotype [55]. In obese women, different mechanisms may be responsible for the regulation of the HPA axis following a high-lipid/protein meal or high-CHO meal, depending on their phenotype [55]. It is well known that catecholamines are involved in the regulation of the HPA axis [56]. Animal studies on norepinephrine turnover have shown that food intake stimulates sympathetic nervous system activity [57].

3.2.1. *Monounsaturated Fatty Acids*

In vitro addition of physiological concentrations of exogenous FFAs confirms that the stimulation of chromogranins B (CGB) binding properties is mainly due to monounsaturated fatty acid (MFA) classes. Oleic acid alone mimicked the *in vivo* situation by increasing the affinity constant of CGB for cortisol (threefold) and reducing the number of binding sites (twofold), whereas saturated fats did not enhance the binding [58]. Addition of monounsaturated FFAs to purified human CGB enhanced CGB binding activity in a concentration-dependent fashion [59].

3.2.2. *Polyunsaturated Fatty Acids*

Polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs) are long-chain *n*-3 and *n*-6 fatty acids (FAs) of plant and marine origin. These essential FAs cannot be synthesized in the human body. Due to their greater availability and low cost, there is excessive consumption of n-6 FA in developing countries. Junk food is also loaded with n-6 FAs and trans-FAs. The ideal ratio of n-3 to n-6 PUFA is $\sim$1:1, according to the conclusion of an international panel of lipid experts [60]. The biological importance of PUFAs derives in part from their role as precursors of important second messengers (prostaglandins, prostacyclins, and leukotrienes) [61, 62] and as constituents of structural lipids in cellular membranes, which influence the activities of membrane-linked functional molecules (receptors, enzymes, and transporters) [63, 64]. The presence of large amounts of n-3 PUFAs in the brain is indicative of the major role that these compounds play in the structure and function of this organ [65]. Fish provide varying amounts of n-3 PUFA in the form of docosahexaenoic acid (DHA) and eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA). There is a significant negative correlation between worldwide fish consumption and prevalence of depression [66]. Frequent fish consumption in the general population is associated with a decreased risk of depression and suicidal ideation [67]. Further, fish consumption is significantly associated with higher self-reported mental health status [68]. Also, higher concentrations of DHA in mother's milk and greater seafood consumption both predicted lower prevalence of postpartum depression [69]. A number of investigations have found a decreased

n-3 PUFA content in the blood of depressed patients [70–73]. In fact, EPA content in red blood cells phospholipids is negatively correlated with the severity of depression, while the ratio of n-6 PUFA arachidonic acid to EPA positively correlates with the clinical symptoms of depression [70]. In addition, a negative correlation between adipose tissue DHA and depression has been observed. Mildly depressed subjects had 34.6% less DHA in adipose tissue than nondepressed subjects [74].

n-3 PUFAs are an essential component of central nervous system membrane phospholipidacyl chains and as such they are critical to the dynamic structure of neuronal membranes [75]. DHA is continuously secreted by astrocytes, bathing the neuron in n-3 PUFA [76]. The binding of serotonin to the astroglial 5-HT2A receptor can mobilize DHA to supply the neuron [77]. Alterations in membrane lipids can alter function by changing fluidity. An optimal fluidity is required for neurotransmitter binding and the signaling within the cell [78]. n-3 PUFA can alter neuronal fluidity by displacing cholesterol from the membrane [79].

Chronic dietary deficiency in α-linolenic acid impairs performance in learning ability and motivational processes [80]. Also, reduction in n-3 PUFA intake results in a reduction of n-3 PUFA content throughout the brain cells and organelles along with a compensatory rise in n-6 PUFA acid content. This alteration is accompanied by a 40% reduction in the Na/K-ATPase of nerve terminals, an enzyme that controls ion transport produced by nerve transmission and that consumes half the energy used by the brain [65]. A 30% reduction in the average densities of synaptic vesicles in the terminals of the hippocampal CA1 region has also been observed as a result of an n-3 PUFA deficiency combined with a learning task [81]. Deficiency of n-3 PUFA also results in a 30–35% reduction in phosphatidylserine concentration in the rat brain cortex, brain mitochondria, and olfactory bulb [82].

n-3 PUFA deficiency induces changes at several levels of the dopaminergic mesocortico limbic pathway [83]. In animal studies, n-3 PUFA-deficient diet resulted in a reduction of the dopaminergic vesicle pool [84] along with a 40–60% decrease in the amount of dopamine in the frontal cortex and an increase in the nucleus accumbens [84, 85]. Further, n-3 PUFA deficiency in rats reduced the release of dopamine from the vesicular storage pool under tyramine stimulation by 90% than in receiving an adequate n-3 PUFA intake [84] (Table 1).

The amount of n-3 PUFAs in the diet might act on the regulation of cerebral gene expression [83, 87]. Addition of PUFA to purified human CGB enhanced CGB binding activity in a concentration-dependent fashion [59]. Garrel *et al.* [88] showed that CGB and cortisol levels did not indicate any changes by the consumption of n-3 and n-6 FAs.

TABLE 1
CONSEQUENCES OF OMEGA-3 DEFICIENCY IN THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM [86]

Parameters showing decrease	Parameters showing increase
1. Blood–brain barrier integrity	1. Dopamine content in nucleus accumbens
2. Dopamine content in frontal cortex	2. Pre/postsynaptic dopamine receptor DR2 in nucleus accumbens
3. Dopamine vesicle pool	3. Serotonin receptor (5-HT2) density in frontal cortex (compensatory response)
4. Fluidity at surface polar membrane	
5. Glucose uptake by neurons	
6. Hippocampal CA1 pyramidal neuron cell body size	
7. Neuronal cytochrome oxidase activity	
8. Normal cerebral microperfusion	
9. Normal inhibitory control over nucleus accumbens dopamine	
10. Phosphatidylserine in cortex, olfactory bulb, and mitochondria	
11. Pre/postsynaptic dopamine receptor DR2 in frontal cortex	
12. Na/K-ATPase at nerve terminal	
13. Vesicular monoamine transporter	
14. Dopamine release from vesicle storage	

Clinical trial demonstrated that 4 months of treatment with 9.6-g n-3 PUFA can be of benefit in the treatment of bipolar disorder. Also, n-3 PUFA had significant effect in lengthening remission and in treating depression [89]. A double-blind, placebo-controlled study ($n = 22$) showed that the addition of 2 g EPA to standard antidepressant medication enhances the effectiveness of that medication compared with the medication plus placebo after 3 weeks of treatment. EPA had an effect on insomnia, depressed mood, and feelings of guilt and worthlessness [90]. In a 12-week, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial, patients who experienced persistent depression, despite ongoing standard pharmacotherapy received 1 g EPA. The patients showed a 53% reduction on Hamilton depression scores. Intake of 1 g EPA dose led also to improvements in depression, anxiety, sleep, lassitude, libido, and suicidal ideation [91].

3.3. PROTEIN

There is some evidence that maintaining a very high-protein diet may chronically stimulate the HPA axis [92] and increase release of vasoactive hormones [93]. Increased HPA activity and cortisol release have been linked

to increased risk of insulin resistance, hypertriglyceridemia, and hypercholesterolemia [94, 95]. Hypercholesterolemia can be caused by high intake of animal protein [96]. Reducing the CHO:protein ratio of diets chronically has also been associated with deterioration in mood [97, 98]; this deterioration may be caused through poor acceptability of the foods by subjects [99].

After a protein-rich meal (30–40% energy as protein) salivary cortisol increases substantially (approximately one-and-a-half- to twofold on average). The increase begins toward the end of a 30-min meal period and peaks at ~1 hour after the start of the meal. After ~2 hours, salivary cortisol levels declined and were no longer significantly different from those seen either in the absence of a meal or after a low-protein meal [100]. Greater than 5% protein (as percentage total energy) is required to detect a reliable increase in salivary cortisol [100]. Results of studies measuring plasma cortisol suggest that at least 10% protein may be needed for reliable stimulation of cortisol [101]. A meal intake of at least 20 g of protein may be necessary; moreover, the higher the intake of protein, the greater the secretion of cortisol is likely to be [100, 101]. This acute stimulation of cortisol release may be part of a homeostatic mechanism in response to a high influx of amino acids [100].

Previous studies indicated that postmeal plasma cortisol levels could be affected by the proportions of macronutrients consumed. Meals containing 20–40% protein (as percentage total energy) produced a greater plasma cortisol response than meals with high CHO or fat levels [102]. By comparison, meals containing 10% protein resulted in weaker secretion of plasma cortisol [101], and protein-free glucose or fat loads did not stimulate cortisol release [23]. There is some evidence that maintaining a very high-protein diet may chronically stimulate the HPA axis [92] and increase release of vasoactive hormones [93].

3.4. Antioxidant

Oxidative stress is one of the most important factors mediating the deleterious effects of aging on behavior and neuronal function [103]. The central nervous system appears to be especially vulnerable to the effects of oxidative stress, partially as a result of additional factors such as increases in the ratio of oxidized glutathione to total glutathione [104], significant lipofuscin accumulation [105] with B-cell leukemia/lymphoma 2 increases [106], increases in membrane lipid peroxidation [107], reductions in glutamine synthetase [108], reductions in redox-active iron [105, 109], and alterations in membrane lipids [110].

Most dietary agents used to alter behavioral and neuronal effects with aging included nutritional supplements such as vitamins C and E, garlic [111], herbal supplements (e.g., ginseng, *Ginkgo biloba*, and ding lang) [112].

Long-term (from 6 to 15 months of age) feeding of F344 rats with an AIN-93 diet supplemented with strawberry or spinach extract (1–2% of the diet) or vitamin E (500 IU) retarded age-related decrements in cognitive and neuronal function compared with an AIN-93 diet alone. Results indicated that the supplemented diets could prevent the onset of age-related deficits in several indices (e.g., cognitive behavior and Morris water maze performance) [113].

3.5. Phytochemicals

Fruits, vegetables, and common beverages as well as herbs and plants have been shown to be rich sources of microchemicals with different healthy effects. They are most effective at ameliorating age-related deficits (e.g., signal transduction, motor performance, and cognitive behavior) [114]. Food chemists and natural product scientists have identified hundreds of phytochemicals, for example, carotenoids, chlorophyll, flavonoids, and sulfides. They have the potential, for example, to modulate stress. Persons who eat green or yellow vegetables everyday show a lower incidence of stress syndrome (irritation, sleeplessness) than those who do not eat them daily [115].

Human studies indicated that β-carotene suppresses the secretion of CRH dose dependently [116]. It is also suggested that the effective site of β-carotene is the hypothalamus, where β-carotene suppressed the secretion of CRH induced by exercise stress, and consequently the secretion of ACTH in the pituitary. As CRH stimulates the sympathetic neuron [117], β-carotene also inhibited the stimulation of noradrenaline and adrenaline secretion through the suppression of CRH secretion [116].

Rats that were fed diets containing extracts high in both falvanoid and total antioxidant activity for 6 weeks before being subjected to 48 hours of exposure to 100% normobaric O_2 showed no loss in striatal muscarinic or cerebellar GABAergic receptor sensitivity [118]. These oxygen-induced decreases in neuronal function have been shown to be sensitive to aging and have been associated with behavioral deficits [113].

Recent studies indicated preventive effects of garlic extracts for brain atrophy [119] as well as learning and memory impairments [120] in the senescence-accelerated mouse.

3.6. Vitamins

Chronically insufficient vitamin supply for vitamin C, thiamin, riboflavin, cobalamin, and folate causes many unfavorable psychometric changes [121]. Administration of folic acid, vitamin C, and to a lesser extent thiamin, as compared with placebo, in men with an initial suboptimal folate status, led to

a decreased emotional lability, increased activeness and concentration, higher extroversion and lower introversion, greater self-confidence, and a markedly improved mood [121]. In volunteers with an initial mild-to-moderate vitamin C deficiency, supplementation led to decreased nervousness, less depression, and increased emotional lability [121].

3.6.1. *Folic Acid*

Recent studies indicate the importance of folate in nervous system development. Folate is important in 1-carbon metabolism [122], contributing carbon atoms to purines, thymidine, and amino acids. In addition, methylation reactions involving folate may be important in the formation and maintenance of neuronal and glial membrane lipids [123]. Clinical trials indicate that folate supplementation (15 mg/day) for 6 months improve outcome in depressed and schizophrenic patients treated with standard pharmacotherapy [124]. Intake of folic acid has been linked to other psychiatric conditions as well as to deficits in learning and memory, particularly in the elderly [125]. The mechanism by which folate modifies mood is hypothesized to be related to its role in 1-carbon metabolism [122]. In the form of methylenetetrahydrofolate, the methyl donor in methionine synthesis from homocysteine, folate may help maintain adequate methionine pools for *S*-adenosylmethionine synthesis [126]. The link to mood involves the role of *S*-adenosylmethionine as a cofactor in methylation reactions in catecholamine synthesis and metabolism [127].

3.6.2. *Vitamin B_6*

The physiologically active forms of vitamin B_6 are enzymatic cofactors in many reactions of mammalian nitrogen metabolism, including the metabolism of most amino acids and neurotransmitters. Indeed, a dietary deficiency of vitamin B_6 affects tissue concentrations of amino acids and neurotransmitters in rats and humans [128, 129]. In general, vitamin B_6 deficiency leads to a decrease in the concentrations of most amino acids. Brain amino acids most commonly reported to be affected by deficiency are serotonin, dopamine, and γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA) [128, 129]. Studies indicated that excess dietary vitamin B_6 affects brain and serum concentrations of some amino acids and binding properties of cortical serotonin receptors in a biphasic pattern [130]. Also, large doses of vitamin B_6 can affect central nervous system function [130, 131] and neurotransmitter concentration [132]. Further, high concentrations of pyridoxal phosphate suppress activation of transcription, while vitamin deficiency enhances responsiveness to steroid hormone [133], decreased GABA, and increased central nervous system irritability [134]. Also, pyridoxine is essential in the conversion of

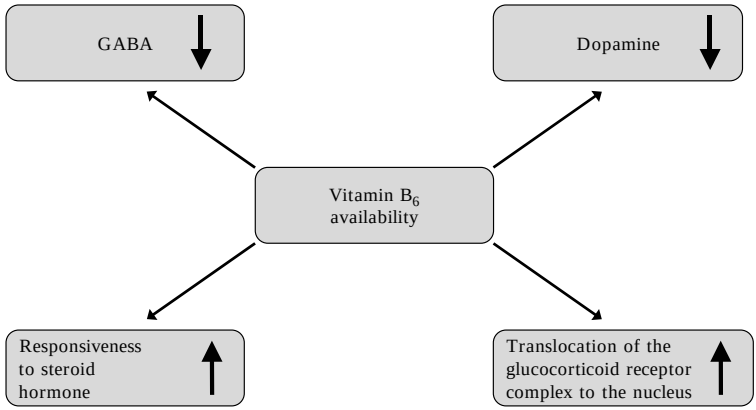


FIG. 2. Physiological effects of vitamin B_6 availability [135].

l-dihydroxyphenylalanine to dopamine. Side effects of excessive l-dihydroxyphenylalanine include dystonia and dyskinesia [134] (Fig. 2).

3.6.3. *Vitamin B_{12}*

Lack of cobalamin may lead to severe neurologic disorders, which have been described in strict vegetarians, especially in infants and toddlers [136, 137]. A wide variety of neurologic symptoms and signs have been described, such as ataxia, loss of cutaneous sensation, diminished or hyperactive reflexes, dementia, loss of memory, psychoses, and disturbances of mood [138, 139]. In contrast, complete or partial improvement, following vitamin B_{12} supplementation, has also been reported in memory loss [139], depression [140], and psychosis [141].

3.6.4. *Vitamin C*

Ascorbic acid affects the regulation of the levels of the circulating thyroid and adrenal cortical hormones [142]. Ascorbic acid is essential for optimal steroid hormone functions and this suggests an involvement of ascorbic acid in steroid synthesis mechanisms [143]. Vitamin C depletion led to a significant increase in plasma cortisol without an increase in ACTH [144]. In animal studies, ascorbic acid deficiency caused an increase in plasma cortisol concentration [145]. In rats, vitamin C pretreatment enhanced the release of endogenous GC such as to delay the turnover of the tracer cortisol in plasma [146]. In humans, there was a distinct increase of plasma cortisol about 2 hours after vitamin C application. This increase was concomitant with an increase in urinary 17-hydroxycorticosteroids [147].

3.6.5. *Vitamin E*

Vitamin E, as the major chain-breaking lipid-soluble antioxidant, would be expected to be important for functional integrity of all biological membranes. The neuropathological changes of vitamin E deficiency in humans are very similar to those in rats and rhesus monkey [148], and the resulting neurological syndrome is characterized by areflexia, peripheral neuropathy, cerebrallar involvement with gait and limbio ataxia, and decreased proprioception and vibration sense [149]. A defect in the fast anterograde and retrograde axonal transport has been reported in vitamin E-deficient rats [150]. Cerebellum seems to be active in the metabolic utilization of vitamin E. This could be the reason for cerebellar damage during experimental vitamin E deficiency and for the incidence of cerebellar symptoms in clinical vitamin E deficiency [151].

3.7. Minerals and Trace Elements

Certain minerals' balance is crucial for a healthy nervous system and neuronal susceptibility. Several reports suggested that the body electrolytes (sodium, potassium, calcium, and magnesium) and the level of some trace elements play an important role in stress susceptibility.

3.7.1. *Iodine*

Intrauterine iodine deficiency is well established as the cause of cretinism and lesser degrees of cognitive and motor disability [152]. There is a suggestion that low serum thyroxine (T_4), secondary to iodine deficiency, is linked to poor intellectual performance of the people residing in iodine-deficient areas [153]. Triiodothyronine seems to be the active hormone with respect to neurological development in the fetus and is synthesized in the brain from thyroxine transported from fetal plasma across the blood–brain barrier [154]. Despite good evidence that maternal thyroxine contributes substantially to fetal thyroxine in the later weeks of pregnancy [155], further maternal transfer is insufficient for fetal requirements if hypothyroidism is severe [156]. Hypothyroid patients show slowing of intellectual function and speech and have memory deficits [157]. Epidemiological studies indicate that school-aged children living in iodine-deficient villages were found to have poorer levels of IQ, cognitive, and motor function than school children in iodine-sufficient villages [158–163].

3.7.2. *Iron*

Iron is involved in numerous neurological functions. Iron deficiency is strongly related to the severity of anemia with a 50% decrease in muscle myoglobin content, cytochrome oxidase activity, and electron transport

capacity in skeletal muscle, concurrent with a 50% decreased oxygen transport capacity because of anemia [164]. The physiological manifestations of iron deficiency have also been noted in immune function, thermoregulatory performance, energy metabolism, and exercise or work performance [165, 166]. Restless legs syndrome has been described as being causally related to iron-deficiency anemia [167]. The brain obtains iron primarily via transferrin receptors expressed on endothelial cells on the brain microvasculature [168, 169]. The rate of iron uptake into the brain is increased when the iron status of the subject is low and is decreased when the iron status is higher [170]. Regions of the brain rich in iron, that is, the substantia nigra, globus pallidus, and nucleus accumbens, are far less affected by dietary iron deficiency than are other regions such as the cortex or the striatum that have less iron content [171]. Iron deficiency during lactation in the rat results in significant loss of regional brain iron that is distinct from those regions that lose iron with dietary restrictions later in life [172]. Restoration of brain iron with later aggressive dietary iron repletion also resulted in incomplete restoration of abnormalities in dopamine metabolism and in behaviors related to dopamine [172, 173].

3.7.3. *Magnesium*

Magnesium supplementation has been beneficial in a wide variety of conditions, such as neuropsychiatric disorders, ischemic heart disease and cardiac arrhythmias, asthma, diabetes, and chronic fatigue, in which magnesium deficiency has not always been substantiated [174, 175]. Extra- and intracellular magnesium levels have been shown to be genetically controlled in humans [176], and genetic differences in magnesium utilization may account for differences in vulnerability to magnesium deficiency and differences in body response to stress [177].

3.7.4. *Zinc*

Zinc is a trace mineral that is involved with RNA and DNA synthesis and is critical to cellular growth, differentiation, and metabolism [178, 179]. In the central nervous system, zinc is concentrated in the synaptic vesicles of specific glutaminergic neurons, which are found primarily in the forebrain and connect with other cerebral cortices and limbic structures. During synaptic events, zinc is released and passes into postsynaptic neurons, serving as a neurotransmitter [180]. Zinc deficiency may compromise behaviors necessary for cognitive functioning including activity and attention [178, 181]. In psychiatric patients, zinc deficiency may affect emotionality and response to stress [182, 183]. Studies of severe zinc deprivation in monkeys before weaning showed that zinc-deficient animals were emotionally less mature; this was demonstrated by their difficulty with separation and the increased

protective behavior by their mothers [184]. The association between zinc deficiency and an increased risk of anxiety and depression may be related to the stress reaction observed in zinc-deprived animals [185].

In the trials done on Chinese children and Mexican-American children from Texas, it was found that zinc-supplemented children demonstrated superior neuropsychological performance, particularly in reasoning, when compared with controls [186, 187]. In contrast, in a further study [188], Bangladeshi infants supplemented with zinc had slightly lower developmental scores, possibly because of micronutrient imbalance.

4. Meal Frequency

Timing of meal can influence the effects of meals on cognitive behavior. Early studies indicate that stunted and previously malnourished 9- and 10-year-old Jamaicans performed less well on tests of short-term memory and problem-solving ability when they had not eaten breakfast than when they had eaten a morning meal [189]. Undernourished children's performance on a test of verbal fluency was significantly better when they had consumed a school breakfast than when they had not [190]. Experimental evidence suggests that omitting breakfast negatively affects cognitive functioning [191].

5. Meal Size

The degree to which lunch moderates subsequent cognitive performance and mood may be mediated by meal size. In a study investigating the effects of meal size on attention and mood indicated that subjects who ate a larger than usual lunch made more errors on attention and search tasks than those who ate a normal-sized lunch, or one smaller than usual [192]. No differences in mood were noted as a function of meal size. Graig and Richardson [193] found that young men made significantly more errors on a letter-cancellation project after eating a large lunch but tended to make fewer errors after small lunch. Performance improved to a greater degree after the small lunch in subjects who typically ate a heavy lunch than in those who ate a light lunch. Afternoon snacks may also have positive effects on cognitive performance [194].

The effects of an evening meal on cognitive performance and mood indicated that subjects had stronger feeling and were more proficient and interested 1–3 hours after meal consumption than subjects who did not consume the meal [195]. Additionally, 90 min after the meal, the subjects who had eaten the meal completed more sentences on a logical-reasoning task than those who had not eaten.

6. Appetite

Appetitive behavior is complex and multifaceted. Stress reactivity, both physiological and psychological, may distinguish overeaters from undereaters [196]. There is much evidence from animal studies that HPA axis function can profoundly influence expression of appetite and regulation of body weight [6]. The recently discovered new gut peptide, ghrelin, an endogenous ligand for the growth hormone secretagogue receptor [197], seems to be involved in the control of food intake and energy balance. In fact, centrally injected ghrelin produces a sustained food intake in rodents, and ghrelin blood concentrations and mRNA expression in the stomach are increased by fasting and decreased by feeding [198]. Recent data have suggested a possible stimulatory effect of ghrelin on the HPA axis activity in experimental animals [199]. In humans, gherlin has a positive effect on glucose levels and negative effects on insulin concentrations [200]. Ghrelin concentrations are decreased in human obesity [201].

The stress-sensitive adrenal steroids modulate neurotransmitters which affect appetite, such as β-noradrenergic systems, neuropeptide Y (NPY), and galanin [29]. Exposure to stress increases NPY [202], which can increase appetite [203].

7. Emotion

Emotional arousal has been associated with both increased or decreased food intake and weight [204, 205]. Self-reported increases in negative mood (mood reactivity) during the stressor were also significantly positively related to caloric consumption, whereas mood reactivity on the control day was not related to consumption that day [33]. Cortisol reactivity and mood are two somewhat independent indices of stress reactivity and found that both were related to eating after stress, but not after rest [33]. Psychophysiological response to stress influences subsequent eating behavior [33]. It is possible that women more vulnerable to stress, in their mood responses and cortisol reactivity, may be at particular risk of stress-induced eating and weight gain [33].

In humans, McCann *et al.* [206] examined the effects of variation in workload on food intake and serum lipids with a small group of female office workers. The workers reported a higher energy intake and a higher percentage of energy as fat in two high-workload periods compared with the normal work period. Higher energy intake was reported from a study of dietary habits associated with exam time among university students [207]. The dietary data support modest increases in energy, fat, and sugar intake in

periods of high work stress compared with periods of low work stress [206, 208]. Either prolonged or frequent work stress could result in increasing the likelihood of weight gain and increased cardiovascular risk [208]. Also, behavioral factors as one of the psychobiological mechanisms can affect health [208]. Individual variability in dietary responses to stress in relation to levels of dietary restraint has been identified in a number of experimental studies [209–212]. Restrained eaters did not just eat more overall, they specifically ate more sweet and fatty foods in the high-work-stress session, and the hyperphagic response was greater among those who had a larger increase in perceived stress between the low- and high-workload sessions, implicating emotional reactions in the response [208].

8. Metabolic Acidosis

Chronic metabolic acidosis (CMA) is a frequent acid-base disturbance generated by extrarenal loss of base (e.g., diarrhea), increased acid production (e.g., organic acidosis such as ketoacidosis), or impaired renal acid excretion (i.e., renal failure and inherited or acquired forms of renal tubular acidosis). The modern Western-type diet in humans, which is rich in animal protein, has been implicated as a cause of lifelong mild CMA with secondary bone catabolism caused by the induction by this diet of an obligatory daily acid load (endogenous acid production) due largely to endogenous oxidation of cationic and sulfur-containing amino acids [9]. Plasma bicarbonate concentration decreases progressively when endogenous acid production is increased by menu changes among normal foodstuffs in normal subjects [213]. CMA has also been shown to cause a significant increase in corticosteroid excretion [214, 215]. In a small human study, experimental-induced acidosis was also associated with an increase in cortisol excretion [216] however, another similar study in humans did not show any increase in cortisol secretion, although plasma aldosterone levels significantly increased [217]. Also, hyper-GC response to CMA has been demonstrated in humans [214] and rats [216]. GCs lead to a dramatic decrease in bone mineral density, either when endogenously in excess or when administered exogenously [218]. The mechanism by which GCs decrease bone density is multifactorial. The osteopenia appears due to a complex combination of direct effects on bone formation [219–222] and resorption [219, 220, 223], and indirect effects on calcium homeostasis, including decreased intestinal calcium absorption [223].

Animal and human studies suggest that metabolic acidosis stimulates an increase in cortisol production [214–216]. CMA can increase cortisol production and both acidosis and cortisol induce osteopenia. In muscle, acidosis is

known to stimulate protein and essential amino acid breakdown through the ubiquitin–proteasome proteolytic pathway, a mechanism that requires GCs [214]. A very mild Western diet-induced CMA (a degree of acidosis that would not be recognized by applying diagnostic acid-base criteria found in textbooks) results in a state of increased cortisol secretion and plasma concentration and provides several novel findings in humans regarding the possible causality of the Western diet in the etiology of osteoporosis [224]. Ingestion of neutralizing alkali per se, as exchanged for chloride in the absence of other experimental maneuvers (e.g., concomitant potassium supplement), can result in urinary calcium retention and suppression of biochemical markers of bone resorption [224].

GCs decrease bone formation via suppression of osteoblast maturation and promotion of apoptosis [222]. They inhibit production of osteoprotegerin, a soluble neutralizing receptor produced by osteoblasts, which limits osteoclastogenesis [225]. GC-induced osteopenia *in vivo* has been well characterized [222, 226], although the exact mechanism of induction of the resultant loss of bone mineral is not entirely understood. In general, there appears to be an uncoupling of bone remodeling to favor bone resorption over bone formation [223]. The net osteopenia observed *in vivo* after GC treatment is probably due to a complex combination of direct effects on bone formation and resorption as well as indirect effects to inhibit intestinal calcium absorption and increase renal calcium excretion [220, 223, 227].

Ingestion of an ordinary acidogenic Western diet to normal young adult subjects results in a mild CMA in association with a state of increased cortisol secretion and plasma concentration, altered divalent ion metabolism, and increased bone-resorptive indices [224]. In humans, CMA results in hypersecretion of cortisol [216]. Previous studies reported a nonsignificant, 77% increase in urinary cortisol excretion in acid-fed compared with nonacid-fed human subjects [228].

9. Glucocorticoids

GCs are also known to affect development [229, 230], memory [231, 232], fear and anxiety [233], and the immune system [234–236]. For example, acute elevations of GCs enhance immune responses in rats to provide important immunoprotective effects [237]. Many studies find a positive correlation between plasma GCs and the expression of feeding behavior. Food intake is normally highest at the time of day when baseline GCs show a peak, and intensity of feeding can be shifted with GC treatment [11]. Food intake may be mediated through GC-induced stimulation of NPY [13, 238–240], and catecholamines [13], or through inhibition of the anorexigenic peptide CRF [241, 242].

GC levels above the seasonal baseline are generally correlated with protein utilization and muscle tissue breakdown [243, 244]. Experimental manipulations confirm the involvement of elevated GC levels in such metabolic changes: GC administration induces protein loss and muscle atrophy in a variety of species [245–248]. GCs may also promote gluconeogenesis through enhanced substrate delivery. Studies in dogs suggest that cortisol treatment enhances *de novo* glucose synthesis through increased amino acid uptake in the liver [249, 250]. Studies in a variety of vertebrate species verify the role of GCs in the acute provisioning of glucose. Treatment with GC equivalents increases plasma glucose in birds [251, 252] and can reverse hypoglycemic effects of insulin injections [253]. It is important to note that GC manipulations may not always affect plasma glucose levels [254, 255].

GCs support a heightened physiological state by promoting availability of lipid energy from adipose tissue stores [11, 234]. For example, cortisone administration significantly reduces the stored triglyceride fraction of adipose tissue in lizards [256]. Also, GCs increase lipogenesis and fat deposition in the liver [252, 256, 257]. GCs may contribute to this process of FA oxidation by making available amino acids for use as citric acid cycle intermediates [258]. Further, GCs may promote fat mobilization by inhibiting glucose uptake in adipose tissue [234].

In relation to health, dysfunction of the HPA axis has been implicated in particular in dysphoric disorders, such as major depression [259], whereas hypercortisolemia in Cushing's syndrome is accompanied by physical symptoms, such as accumulation of abdominal adipose tissue, together with muscular atrophy of the limbs, providing powerful evidence of the well-established metabolic and nutritional consequences of chronic hypercortisolemia [94]. Normal physiological variations in cortisol level in humans have a significant direct influence on macronutrient metabolism [25, 26]. Also, the ability of cortisol to increase plasma FFA levels may underlie the emerging link between cortisol and abdominal obesity, together with its associated metabolic syndrome [27].

In healthy males, exogenous GC administration increased daily food intake compared with placebo [260]. Cushing's patients, with elevated cortisol levels selected high-fat foods twice as often as normal weight subjects and three times as often as overweight controls [261]. Laboratory test indicated that among healthy women, high cortisol reactors ate significantly more food following a cognitive stress task compared with low cortisol reactors [33]. In an earlier study [262], subjects undergoing a stressful task before a meal showed increased plasma cortisol during the task, which was then followed by a suppressed cortisol response to the meal. Cortisol clearly plays an important role in energy regulation, increasing available energy through gluconeogenesis and lipolysis. Adrenalectomy and GC receptor

antagonists prevent or reverse obesity [263], whereas administering corticosterone leads to increased appetite for sucrose [264], hyperphagia, and weight gain [265]. In cancer patients, prednisolone significantly increased appetite, compared with a control group [266]. In healthy men, administering cortisol for 4 days led to slightly increased energy expenditure but dramatically increased food intake [260].

Approximately 90–95% of plasma cortisol is bound to CBG, albumin, and erythrocyte membranes [267], whereas only the free fraction is thought to be physiologically active. Cortisol in saliva is a valid measure of free cortisol levels and is easily sampled repeatedly without distress [8, 267].

10. Monoamine

Serotonin (5-HT) is involved in the regulation of the HPA axis in mammals [268, 269]. In several studies, the ratio of 5-hydroxyindoleacetic acid (the major 5-HT metabolite) to 5-HT brain concentrations has been found to correlate with plasma levels of cortisol, suggesting that the action of brain 5-HT on the HPA axis is stimulatory [270, 271]. An increased activity of serotonergic neurons in the brain is an established consequence of stress, and a decline activity of these serotonergic neurons has been demonstrated in disturbances of mood and depressive disorders [272]. Increased brain 5-HT activity appears to be a prerequisite for maintaining control over cognitive information processes [273] and is involved in learning and memory [274]. As brain 5-HT secretion increases under stress [275, 276], chronic stress may result in frequently elevated concentrations of cerebral 5-HT. As 5-HT function increases under acute stress, brain 5-HT concentrations may be exhausted under continuous stress exposure. As a consequence, the serotonergic system of subjects prone to stress (high-stress-vulnerable subjects) may become more sensitive to dietary-induced alterations in L-tryptophan availability because of compensatory receptor sensitization [277, 278]. Depletion of the precursor of 5-HT synthesis, tryptophan, has been found to increase depressive mood in healthy subjects and subjects with a prior history of depressions [279].

5-HT is synthesized from the essential amino acid L-tryptophan and the first and rate-limiting step in the biosynthesis of 5-HT is the hydroxylation of L-tryptophan to 5-hydroxytryptophan. Since the enzyme tryptophanhydroxylase, catalyzing the hydroxylation of L-tryptophan, does not seem to be saturated by L-tryptophan *in vivo*, the rate of this reaction appears to be restricted by L-tryptophan availability in mammals [280]. Elevated dietary intake of L-tryptophan has been reported to result in increased brain levels of L-tryptophan and elevated rates of 5-HT synthesis and metabolism [281, 282].

The carrier transporting L-tryptophan across the blood–brain barrier is nonspecific, also transporting other large neutral amino acids (LNAAs; i.e., tyrosine, phenylalanine, leucine, isoleucine, and valine). Brain levels of L-tryptophan will thus not only depend on plasma levels of L-tryptophan, but also on plasma levels of other LNAA competing for the same carrier [280, 281]. A CHO-rich, protein-poor diet increases the ratio of plasma tryptophan to the sum of the other LNAAs, giving tryptophan an advantage in the competition for access into the brain [34, 283–285]. Markus *et al.* [286] found that a CHO-rich, protein-poor food diminished the depressive mood and cortisol response to controllable as well as uncontrollable laboratory-induced stress in highly stress-prone human subjects. Acute stress elevates brain L-tryptophan concentrations [287], an effect that appears to be mediated by a stress-induced elevation of sympathetic activity and circulating plasma catecholamines [288]. An activation of the sympathetic system stimulates lipolysis, resulting in elevated plasma levels of nonesterified FAs, competing with L-tryptophan for binding to albumin and thus elevating the plasma pool of free L-tryptophan available for uptake into the brain [268]. Sympathetic activation may also increase brain L-tryptophan uptake by affecting the permeability of the blood–brain barrier [268].

Tyrosine is the precursor to the catecholamine neurotransmitters dopamine, norepinephrine, and epinephrine. Analogous to the ability of tryptophan to stimulate serotonin production, elevating tyrosine concentrations in brain catecholamine neurons (particularly dopamine and norepinephrine neurons) can stimulate transmitter production. This effect occurs in actively firing neurons but not in catecholamine neurons that are quiescent or firing slowly [289, 290]. Tyrosine administration to depressed patients improved their mood, but although catecholamine production was enhanced, the treatment did not elevate mood [291]. Growdon *et al.* [292] showed that tyrosine elevated dopamine production in the central nervous system of patients with Parkinson's disease, a serious, debilitating disorder, the cause of which is thought to involve a loss of dopamine neurons and which is typically treated by administering the immediate dopamine precursor, L-dopa. Further, tyrosine administration appears to improve cognition and performance in soldiers under stressful conditions [293, 294].

11. Stress

The key hormonal pathway that governs the endocrine response to stress is the HPA axis. Elevation of serum corticosterone, the endpoint of stress-induced activation of the HPA system, is frequently used as a stress indicator, and a convincing number of studies have found several measures indicative

of a hyperactive HPA axis in depressed patients [295]. Compared with controls, women with anorexia nervosa [296], bulimia nervosa [297], binge eating disorder [298], and the night eating syndrome [299] had higher basal cortisol. Exaggerated cortisol responses to stress have been observed in women with anorexia nervosa [300], bulimia nervosa [301], and obesity [302]. Eating is thought to be suppressed during stress because of anorectic effects of CRH, and increased during recovery from stress because of appetite-stimulating effects of residual cortisol [33, 303]. Cortisol secretion is a major component of the stress response [301], and it has been implicated as a potential mediator for increased energy intake in healthy males [260] and females [33].

Typically, responses to stress result in anorexia and, if the stress is sufficiently persistent, weight loss. The longstanding view is that stress produces sympathetic arousal that results in reductions rather than increases in eating. For example, in rats, both a single social defeat stressor [304] and a 2- hour immobilization stressor [305] resulted in a significant reduction of food intake and body weight. Overeating has been observed in rats following a stress, following a period of caloric restriction [306] only in those given highly palatable food [307]. In humans, dieters are more likely to report stress hyperphagia compared with nondieters who are more likely to report stress hypophagia [308].

The chronic mild stress procedure in rats decreased sucrose intake per unit body weight, while sucrose intake in a nonstressed control group did not change [309].There was not any correlation between body weight and sucrose intake. Sucrose intake was reduced while body weight remained unaffected [309]. The largest effect was obtained after 2 weeks of the stress protocol, this effect was attenuated afterward [309]. D'Aquila *et al.* [310] also observed a recovery of "reward behavior" in the chronic mild stress model. Overeating of "comfort foods" in humans may be stimulated by cortisol in response to stress, which can result in abdominal obesity [311].

Although acute elevation of cortisol plays a protective role during stress, persistently elevated levels promote insulin resistance and abdominal obesity [312, 313]. Insulin resistance might be followed by both dyslipidemia and elevated blood pressure [314]. Cortisol secretion as a response to perceived stress is a powerful factor regulating disease-generating events in the periphery. This seems to be particularly the case when the HPA axis functions with low reactivity and poor feedback control [315]. Most studies have observed that chronic stress overactivates the HPA axis and fuels insulin release, in turn activating abdominal fat storage [316].

Stress has been implicated as a primary trigger of overeating [317]. Delay in gastrointestinal transit time (an indirect measure of gastric emptying and intestinal motility) has been observed in lean participants, but not the obese, after exposure to both active and passive coping tasks [318].

Self-reported retrospective [319, 320] and prospective data [206, 208, 321] suggest that food choice does change under stress, with a tendency toward a relative increase in sugary, fatty (often snack-type) foods. Grunberg and Straub [32] extended the usual laboratory paradigm by providing participants with a range of foods differing in taste qualities (sweet, salty, and bland), although these were still snack foods presented incidentally to the main task of viewing a film (used for stress induction). In the stressed group men ate less than men in the control group. In women there were no significant differences, although stressed women did show a trend toward a modest increase in consumption of sweet and bland foods with no change in intake of salty foods. These gender differences may have reflected differences in dietary restraint, which is higher in women [322–324].

Women and restrained eaters consume more calories and fat under stress [206, 208] and shift their food choices away from meal-type foods, such as meat and vegetables, toward snack-type foods [308]. In contrast, men and unrestrained eaters show either little difference or a reduction in food intake under stress [32, 325]. Stress did increase intake of sweet fatty foods in emotional eaters. In addition, women scored more highly on emotional eating than men [320]. There is evidence that snack consumption may be more susceptible to stress than meals [308, 326]. An alternative neurohormonal mechanism for stress-induced preferential selection of sweet fatty foods is suggested by evidence that such highly palatable foods can themselves relieve stress through release of endogenous opioids [327, 328]. Stress changed people's perception of saccharin's bitterness and sweetness, as it does in rats [329], but the direction of change depended on aspects of temperament such as trait arousability, pleasure, and dominance.

Psychological stress seems to increase oxidative stress [330]. Early studies indicate that psychological stress decreases DNA repair [331] and inhibit radiation-induced apoptosis [333] in human blood cells. This may mean that oxidative damage may persist during psychological stress and may increase the likelihood of a pathological development [330]. In contrast to the tendency of chronic stress to elevate baseline cortisol, it appears to decrease testosterone, both in animals and in humans [334, 332].

12. Conclusion

Modification of the diet and changes in frequency cause changes in endocrine and monoamine synthesis. These changes may affect the susceptibility to stress. In general, foods of plant origin have to be preferred. Reduction and modification of dietary fat may be helpful. In particular, a diet rich in MFAs and n-3 FAs is advisable. Further, a large part of the diet has to be of

complex CHOs. These modifications can produce consistent changes in cortisol and its binding globulin. Cortisol reactivity and mood are two somewhat independent indices of stress reactivity, and it was found that both were related to eating after stress. Further dietary modification may affect the availability of L-tryptophan. L-tryptophan has been reported to result in increased brain levels of L-tryptophan and elevated rates of 5-HT synthesis and metabolism. Increased brain 5-HT activity appears to be a prerequisite for maintaining control over cognitive information processes and involvement in learning and memory. A decline activity of these serotonergic neurons has been demonstrated in disturbances of mood and depressive disorders. Not only modification of the diet but also timing of meal can influence the effects of meals on cognitive behavior. Also, omitting breakfast negatively affects cognitive functioning. Further, the effects of meal size on attention and mood indicated that subjects who ate a larger than usual lunch made more errors on attention and search tasks than those who ate a normal-sized lunch or one smaller than usual. Performance improved to a greater degree after the small lunch in subjects who typically ate a heavy lunch than in those who ate a light lunch. Further, afternoon snacks may also have positive effects on cognitive performance.

For positive influences of stress, mood, and cognitive function plant foods might be preferred. They are rich in phytochemicals and vitamins, which show a variety of positive effects on health. Also, consumption of green and yellow vegetables everyday may lower the incidence of some stress syndromes (e.g., irritation and sleeplessness).

References

[1] Adler N, Matthews K. Health psychology: Why do some people get sick and some stay well? Annu Rev Psychol 1991; 45:229–259.
[2] Steptoe A. The links between stress and illness. J Psychosom Res 1994; 35:633–644.
[3] Folkman S, Lazarus RS. An analysis of coping in a middle-aged community sample. J Health Soc Behav 1980; 21:219–239.
[4] Langlie JK. Social events, health beliefs, and preventive health behaviours. J Health Soc Behav 1977; 18:244–260.
[5] Johnson EO, Kamilaris TC, Chrousos GP, Gold PW. Mechanisms of stress: A dynamic overview of hormonal and behavioural homeostasis. Neurosci Biobehav Rev 1992; 16:115–130.
[6] York DA. Central regulation of appetite and autonomic activity by CRH, glucocorticoids and stress. Prog Neuroendocrinimmunol 1992; 5:153–165.
[7] Schulkin J, McEwen BS, Gold PW. Allostasis, amygdala, and anticipatory angst. Neurosci Biobehav Rev 1994; 18:385–396.
[8] Kirschbaum C, Hellhammer DH. Salivary cortisol in psychoneuroendocrine research: Recent developments and applications. Psychoneuroendocrinology 1994; 19:313–333.

[9] Sebastian A, Harris ST, Ottaway JH, Todd KM, Morris RC, Jr. Improved mineral balance and skeletal metabolism in postmenopausal women treated with potassium bicarbonate. N Engl J Med 1994; 330:1776–1781.
[10] Frassetto L, Morris RC, Jr., Sebastian A. Effect of age on blood acid-base composition in adult humans: Role of age-related renal functional decline. Am J Physiol 1996; 271:1114–1122.
[11] Dallman MF, Strack AM, Akana SF, Bradbury MJ, Hanson ES, Scribner KA, et al. Feast and famine: Critical role of glucocorticoids with insulin in daily energy flow. Front Neuroendocrinol 1993; 14:303–347.
[12] Kirschbaum C, Gonzalez Bono E, Rohleder N, Gessner C, Pirke KM, Salvador A, et al. Effects of fasting and glucose load on free cortisol responses to stress and nicotine. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1997; 82:1101–1105.
[13] Tempel DL, Leibowitz SF. Glucocorticoid receptors in PVN: Interactions with NE, NPY and Gal in relation to feeding. Am J Physiol 1993; 265:E794–E800.
[14] Wronska D, Niezgoda J, Sechman A, Bobek S. Food deprivation suppresses stress-induced rise in catabolic hormones with a concomitant tendency to potentiate the increment of blood glucose. Physiol Behav 1990; 48:531–537.
[15] De Boer SF, Koopmans SJ, Slangen JL, van der Gugten J. Effects of fasting on plasma catecholamine, corticosterone and glucose concentrations under basal and stress conditions in individual rats. Physiol Behav 1989; 45:989–994.
[16] Hanson ES, Bradbury MJ, Akana SF, Scribner KS, Strack AM, Dallman MF. The diurnal rhythm in adrenocorticotropin responses to restraint in adrenalectomized rats is determined by caloric intake. Endocrinology 1994; 134:2214–2220.
[17] Akana SF, Strack AM, Hanson ES, Dallman MF. Regulation of activity in the hypothalamus-pituitary-adrenal axis is integral to a larger hypothalamic system that determines caloric flow. Endocrinology 1994; 135:1125–1134.
[18] Adamson U, Lins P-E, Grill V. Fasting for 72 h decreases the response of counterregulatory hormones to insulin-induced hypoglycaemia in normal man. Scand J Clin Lab Invest 1989; 49:751–756.
[19] Honma K, Honma S, Hiroshige T. Feeding-associated corticosterone peak in rats under various feeding cycles. Am J Physiol 1984; 246:R721–R726.
[20] Quigley ME, Yen SSC. A mid-day surge in cortisol levels. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1979; 49:945–947.
[21] Follenius M, Brandenberger G, Hietter B, Simeoni M, Reinhardt B. Diurnal cortisol peaks and their relationships to meals. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1982; 55:757–761.
[22] Wingate DL. The brain-gut axis. Textbook of Gastroenterology vol 1, New York: JB Lippincott Co. 1991; vol 1: 50–60.
[23] Ishizuka B, Quigley ME, Yen SSC. Pituitary hormone release in response to food ingestion: Evidence for neuroendocrine signals from gut to brain. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1997; 57:1111–1115.
[24] Leal AM, Moreira AC. Food and the circadian activity of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis. Braz J Med Biol Res 1997; 30:1391–1405.
[25] Dinneen S, Alzaid A, Miles J, Rizza R. Effects of the normal nocturnal rise in cortisol on carbohydrate and fat metabolism in IDDM. Am J Physiol 1995; 31:E595–E603.
[26] Divertie GD, Jensen MD, Miles JM. Stimulation of lipolysis in humans by physiological hypercortisolemia. Diabetes 1991; 40:1228–1232.
[27] Bjorntorp P. Metabolic implications of body fat distribution. Diabetes Care 1991; 14:1132–1143.

[28] Al-Damluji S, Iveson T, Thomas JM, Pendlebury DJ, Rees LH, Besser GM. Food induced cortisol secretion is mediated by central adrenoreceptor modulation of pituitary ACTH secretion. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf) 1987; 26:629–636.
[29] McEwen BS, Stellar E. Stress and the individual. Mechanisms leading to disease [see comments]. Arch Intern Med 1993; 153:2093–2101.
[30] Tempel D, Leibowitz S. Adrenal steroid receptors: Interactions with brain neuropeptide systems in relation to nutrient intake and metabolism. J Neuroendocrinol 1994; 6:479–501.
[31] Klein L, Faraday M, Grunberg N. Gender differences in eating after exposure to a noise stressor. Ann Behav Med 1996; 18:S103.
[32] Grunberg NE, Straub RO. The role of gender and taste class in the effects of stress on eating. Health Psychol 1992; 11:97–100.
[33] Epel ES, Lapidus R, McEwen B, Brownell K. Stress may add bite to appetite in women: A laboratory study of stress-induced cortisol and eating behaviour. Psychoneuroendocrinology 2001; 26:34–49.
[34] Markus CR, Panhuysen G, Tuiten A, Koppeschaar H, Fekkes D, Peters ML. Does carbohydrate-rich, protein-poor food prevent a deterioration of mood and cognitive performance of stress-prone subjects when subjected to a stressful task? Appetite 1998; 31:49–65.
[35] Bailey SP, Zacher CM, Mittleman KD. Effect of menstrual cycle phase on carbohydrate supplementation during prolonged exercise to fatigue. J Appl Physiol 2000; 88:690–697.
[36] Davis JM, Bailey SP, Woods JA, Galiano FJ, Hamilton MT, Bartoli WP. Effects of carbohydrate feedings on plasma free tryptophan and branched-chain amino acids during prolonged cycling. Eur J Appl Physiol 1992; 65:513–519.
[37] Davis JM, Bailey SP. Possible mechanisms of central nervous system fatigue during exercise. Med Sci Sports Exerc 1997; 29:45–57.
[38] Mittleman KD, Ricci MR, Bailey SP. Branched-chain amino acids prolong exercise during heat stress in men and women. Med Sci Sports Exerc 1998; 30:83–91.
[39] Martin-Du-Pan R, Mauron C, Glaeser B, Wurtman RJ. Effect of increasing oral glucose doses on plasma neutral amino acid levels. Metabolism 1982; 31:937–943.
[40] MacLaren DP, Reilly T, Campbell IT, Frayn KN. Hormonal and metabolite responses to glucose and maltodextrin ingestion with or without the addition of guar gum. Int J Sports Med 1994; 15:466–471.
[41] Spinedi E, Gaillard RC. Stimulation of the hypothalamo-pituitary-adrenocortical axis by the central serotonergic pathway: Involvement of endogenous corticotropin-releasing hormone but not vasopressin. J Endocrinol Invest 1991; 14:551–557.
[42] Kirschbaum C, Wüst S, Faig HG, Hellhammer DH. Heritability of cortisol responses to h-CRH, ergometry, and psychological stress in humans. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1992; 75:1526–1530.
[43] Kirschbaum C, Pirke KM, Hellhammer DH. Preliminary evidence for reduced cortisol responsivity to psychological stress in women using oral contraceptive medication. Psychoneuroendocrinology 1995; 20:509–514.
[44] Tannenbaum BM, Brindley DN, Tannenbaum GS, Dallman MF, McArthur MD, Meaney MJ. High-fat feeding alters both basal and stress-induced hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal activity in the rat. Am J Physiol 1997; 273:E1168–E1177.
[45] Prasad A, Prasad C. Short-term consumption of a diet rich in fat decreases anxiety response in adult male rats. Physiol Behav 1996; 60:1039–1042.
[46] Buwalda B, Blom WAM, Koolhaas JM, van Dijk G. Behavioural and physiological responses to stress are affected by high-fat feeding in male rats. Physiol Behav 2001; 73:371–377.

[47] Rouch C, Nicolaidis S, Orosco M. Determination, using microdialysis, of hypothalamic serotonin variations in response to different macronutrients. Physiol Behav 1999; 65:653–657.
[48] Shimizu E, Hashimoto K, Okamura N, Koike K, Komatsu N, Kumakiri C, et al. Alterations of serum levels of brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF) in depressed patients with or without antidepressants. Biol Psychiatry 2003; 54:70–75.
[49] Russo-Neustadt A. Brain-derived neurotrophic factor, behavior, and new directions for the treatment of mental disorders. Semin Clin Neuropsychiatry 2003; 8:109–118.
[50] Molteni R, Barnard RJ, Ying Z, Roberts CK, Gomez-Pinilla F, et al. A high-fat, refined sugar diet reduces hippocampal brain-derived neurotrophic factor, neuronal plasticity, and learning. Neuroscience 2002; 112:803–814.
[51] Wu A, Molteni R, Ying Z, Gomez-Pinilla F. A saturated-fat diet aggravates the outcome of traumatic brain injury on hippocampal plasticity and cognitive function by reducing brain-derived neurotrophic factor. Neuroscience 2003; 119:365–375.
[52] Bjorntorp P. Obesity. Lancet 1997; 350:423–426.
[53] Bjorntorp P. The regulation of adipose tissue distribution in humans. Int J Obes 1996; 20:291–302.
[54] May RC, Masud T, Logue B, Bailey J, England B. Chronic metabolic acidosis accelerates whole body proteolysis and oxidation in awake rats. Kidney Int 1992; 41:1535–1542.
[55] Vicennati V, Ceroni L, Gagliardi L, Gambineri A, Pasquali R. Response of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenocortical axis to high-protein/fat and high-carbohydrate meals in women with different obesity phenotypes. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2002; 87 (8):3984–3988.
[56] Plotsky PM, Cunningham ET, Jr., Widmaier EP. Catecholaminergic modulation of corticotropin-releasing factor and adrenocorticotropin secretion. Endocr Rev 1989; 10:437–458.
[57] Young JB, Landsberg L. Stimulation of the sympathetic nervous system during sucrose feeding. Nature 1977; 269:615–617.
[58] Haourigui M, Sakr S, Martin ME, Thobie N, Girare-Globa A, Benassayag C, et al. Postprandial free fatty acids stimulate activity of human corticosteroid binding globulin. Am J Physiol 1995; 296(6, Pt. 1):E1067–E1075.
[59] Martin ME, Benassayag C, Nunez EA. Selective changes in binding and immunological properties of human corticosteroid binding globulin by free fatty acids. Endocrinology 1988; 123:1178–1186.
[60] Simopoulos AP, Leaf A, Salem N, Jr. Workshop on the essentiality of and recommended dietary intakes for omega-6 and omega-3 fatty acids. J Am Coll Nutr 1999; 18:487–489.
[61] Innis SM. Essential fatty acids in growth and development. Prog Lipid Res 1991; 30:39–103.
[62] Connor WE, Neuringer M, Reisbick S. Essential fatty acids: The importance of n-3 fatty acids in the retina and brain. Nutr Rev 1992; 50:21–29.
[63] Brenner RR. Effect of unsaturated acids on membrane structure and enzyme kinetics. Prog Lipid Res 1984; 23:69–96.
[64] Spector AA, Yorek MA. Membrane lipid composition and cellular function. J Lipid Res 1985; 26:1015–1035.
[65] Bourre JM, Dumont O, Durand G. Brain phospholipids as dietary source of (n-3) polyunsaturated fatty acids for nervous tissue in the rat. J Neurochem 1993; 60:2018–2028.
[66] Hibbeln JR. Fish consumption and major depression. Lancet 1998; 351:1213.
[67] Tanskanen A, Hibbeln JR, Hintikka J, Haatainen K, Honkalampi K, Viinamäki H, et al. Fish consumption, depression, and suicidality in a general population. Arch Gen Psychiatry 2001; 58:512–513.

[68] Silvers KM, Scott KM. Fish consumption and self-reported physical and mental health status. Public Health Nutr 2002; 5:427–431.
[69] Hibbeln JR. Seafood consumption, the DHA content of mothers' milk and prevalence rates of postpartum depression: A cross-national, ecological analysis. J Affect Disord 2002; 69:15–29.
[70] Adams PB, Lawson S, Sanigorski A, Sinclair AJ. Arachidonic acid to eicosapentaenoic acid ratio in blood correlates positively with clinical symptoms of depression. Lipids 1996; 31:S157–S161.
[71] Maes M, Christophe A, Delanghe J, Altamura C, Neels H, Meltzer HY, et al. Lowered omega3 polyunsaturated fatty acids in the serum phospholipids and cholesteryl esters of depressed patients. Psychiatry Res 1999; 85:275–291.
[72] Peet M, Murphy B, Shay J, Horrobin D. Depletion of omega-3 fatty acid levels in red blood cell membranes of depressive patients. Biol Psychiatry 1998; 43:315–319.
[73] Tiemeier H, van Tuijl HR, Hofman A, Kiliaan AJ, Breteler MM. Plasma fatty acid composition and depression are associated in the elderly: The Rotterdam Study. Am J Clin Nutr 2003; 78:40–46.
[74] Mamalakis G, Tornaritis M, Kafatos A. Depression and adipose essential polyunsaturated fatty acids. Prostaglandins Leukot Essent Fatty Acids 2002; 67:311–318.
[75] Bourre JM, Dumont O, Piciotti M, Clement M, Chaudiere J, Bonneil M, et al. Essentiality of omega 3 fatty acids for brain structure and function. World Rev Nutr Diet 1991; 66:103–117.
[76] Williard DE, Harmon SD, Kaduce TL, Preuss M, Moore SA, Robbins MEC, et al. Docosahexaenoic acid synthesis from n-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids in differentiated rat brain astrocytes. J Lipid Res 2001; 42:1368–1376.
[77] Garcia MC, Kim HY. Mobilization of arachidonate and decosahexaenoate by stimulation of the 5-HT2A receptor in rat C6 glioma cells. Brain Res 1997; 768:43–48.
[78] Heron DS, Shinitzky M, Hershkowitz M, Samuel D. Lipid fluidity markedly modulates the binding of serotonin to mouse brain membranes. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1980; 77:7463–7467.
[79] Yehuda S, Rabinovitz S, Mostofsky DI. Modulation of learning and neuronal membrane composition in the rat by essential fatty acid preparation: Time-course analysis. Neurochem Res 1998; 23:627–634.
[80] Wainwright PE. Essential fatty acids and behaviour. In: Yehuda S, Mostofsky DI, editors. Handbook of Essential Fatty Acid Biology: Biochemistry, Physiology, and Behavioural Neurobiology. Totowa, NJ: Humana Press, 1997: 299–341.
[81] Yoshida S, Yasuda A, Kawazato H, Sakai K, Shimada T, Takeshita M, et al. Synaptic vesicle ultrastructural changes in the rat hippocampus induced by a combination of alpha-linolenate deficiency and a learning task. J Neurochem 1997; 68:1261–1268.
[82] Hamilton L, Greiner R, Salem N, Jr, Kim HY. n-3 fatty acid deficiency decreases phosphatidylserine accumulation selectively in neuronal tissues. Lipids 2000; 35:863–869.
[83] Zimmer L, Vancassel S, Cantagrel S, Breton P, Delamanche S, Guilloteau D, et al. The dopamine mesocorticolimbic pathway is affected by deficiency in n-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids. Am J Clin Nutr 2002; 75(4):662–667.
[84] Zimmer L, Delpal S, Guilloteau D, Aoun J, Durand G, Chalon S, et al. Chronic n-3 polyunsaturated fatty acid deficiency alters dopamine vesicle density in the rat frontal cortex. Neurosci Lett 2000; 284:25–28.
[85] Delion S, Chalon S, Guilloteau D, Besnard JS, Durand G. alpha-Linolenic acid dietary deficiency alters age related changes of dopaminergic and serotonergic neurotransmission in the rat frontal cortex. J Neurochem 1996; 66:1582–1591.

[86] Logan AC. Neurobehavioral aspects of omega-3 fatty acids: Possible mechanisms and therapeutic value in major depression. Altern Med Rev 2003; 8(4):410–425.
[87] Sessler AA, Ntambi JM. Polyunsaturated fatty acid regulation of gene expression. J Nutr 1998; 128:923–926.
[88] Garrel D, Razi M, Larivire F, Jobin N, Bonneton A, Pugeat M. Improved clinical status and length of care with low fat nutritional support in burn patients. J Parenteral Enteral Nutr 1995; 19(6):482–491.
[89] Stoll AL, Severus WE, Freeman MP, Rueter S, Zboyan HA, Diamond E, et al. Omega 3 fatty acids in bipolar disorder: A preliminary double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Arch Gen Psychiatry 1999; 56:407–412.
[90] Nemets B, Stahl Z, Belmaker RH. Addition of omega-3 fatty acid to maintenance medication treatment for recurrent unipolar depressive disorder. Am J Psychiatry 2002; 159:477–479.
[91] Peet M, Horrobin DF. A dose-ranging study of the effects of ethyl-eicosapentaenoate in patients with ongoing depression despite apparently adequate treatment with standard drugs. Arch Gen Psychiatry 2002; 59:913–919.
[92] Anderson KE, Rosner W, Khan MS, New MI, Pang SY, Wissel PS, et al. Diet-hormone interactions: Protein-carbohydrate ratio alters reciprocally the plasma levels of testosterone and cortisol and their respective binding globulins in man. Life Sci 1987; 40:1761–1768.
[93] Daniels BS, Hostetter TH. Effects of dietary protein intake on vasoactive hormones. Am J Physiol 1990; 258:R1095–R1100.
[94] Peeke PM, Chrousos GP. Hypercortisolism and obesity. Ann NY Acad Sci 1995; 771:665–676.
[95] Kissebah AH, Krakower GR. Regional adiposity and morbidity. Physiol Rev 1994; 74:761–811.
[96] Sanchez A, Hubbard RW. Plasma amino acids and the insulin/glucagon ratio as an explanation for the dietary protein modulation of atherosclerosis. Med Hypotheses 1991; 35:324–329.
[97] Schweiger U, Laessle RG, Pirke KM. Macronutrient intake and mood during weight-reducing diets. Ann NY Acad Sci 1987; 499:335–337.
[98] Keith RE, O'Keeffe KA, Blessing DL, Wilson GD. Alterations in dietary carbohydrate, protein, and fat intake and mood state in trained female cyclists. Med Sci Sports Exerc 1991; 23:212–216.
[99] Lloyd HM, Green MW, Rogers PJ. Mood and cognitive performance effects of isocaloric lunches differing in fat and carbohydrate content. Physiol Behav 1994; 56:51–57.
[100] Gibson EL, Checkley S, Papadopoulos A, Poon L, Daley S, Wardle J. Increased salivary cortisol reliably induced by a protein-rich midday meal. Psychosom Med 1999; 61:214–224.
[101] Slag MF, Ahmed M, Gannon MC, Nuttall FQ. Meal stimulation of cortisol secretion: A protein-induced effect. Metabolism 1981; 30:1104–1108.
[102] Van Cauter E, Shapiro ET, Tillil H, Polonsky KS. Circadian modulation of glucose and insulin responses to meals: Relationship to cortisol rhythm. Am J Physiol 1992; 262: E467–E475.
[103] Floyd RA. Antioxidants, oxidative stress, and degenerative neurological disorders. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 1999; 222:236–245.
[104] Olanow CW. An introduction to the free radical hypothesis in Parkinson's disease. Ann Neurol 1992; 32:S2–S9.
[105] Gilissen EP, Jacobs RE, Allman JM. Magnetic resonance microscopy of iron in the basal forebrain cholinergic structures of the aged mouse lemur. J Neurol Sci 1999; 168:21–27.

[106] Sadoul R. Bcl-2 family members in the development and degenerative pathologies of the nervous system. Cell Death Differ 1998; 5:805–815.
[107] Yu BP. Cellular defenses against damage from reactive oxygen species. Physiol Rev 1994; 76:139–162.
[108] Carney JM, Smith CD, Carney AM, Butterfield DA. Aging- and oxygen-induced modifications in brain biochemistry and behaviour. Ann NY Acad Sci 1994; 738:44–53.
[109] Savory J, Rao JK, Huang Y, Letada PR, Herman MM. Age-related hippocampal changes in Bcl-2:Bax ratio, oxidative stress, redox-active iron and apoptosis associated with aluminum-induced neurodegeneration: Increased susceptibility with aging. Neurotoxicology 1999; 20:805–817.
[110] Denisova NA, Erat SA, Kelly JF, Roth GS. Differential effect of aging on cholesterol modulation of carbachol stimulated low-K_m GTPase in striatal synaptosomes. Exp Gerontol 1998; 33:249–265.
[111] Youdim KA, Joseph JA. A possible emerging role of phytochemicals in improving age-related neurological dysfunctions: A multiplicity of effects. Free Radic Biol Med 2001; 30:583–594.
[112] Cantuti-Castelvetri I, Shukitt-Hale B, Joseph JA. Neurobehavioural aspects of antioxidants in aging. Int J Dev Neurosci 2000; 18:367–381.
[113] Joseph JA, Shukitt-Hale B, Denisova NA, Prior RL, Cao G, Martin A. Long-term dietary strawberry, spinach or vitamin E supplementation retards the onset of age-related neuronalsignal-transduction and cognitive behavioural deficits. J Neurosci 1998; 18(19): 8047–8055.
[114] Youdim KA, Shukitt-Hale B, Martin A, et al. Short-term dietary supplementation of blueberry polyphenolics: Beneficial effects on aging brain performance and peripheral tissue function. Nutr Neurosci 2000; 3:383–397.
[115] Hirayama T. Personal communication. 1992.
[116] Hasegawa T. Anti-stress effect of β-carotene. In: Canfield LM, Krinsky NI, Olson JA, editors. Carotenoids in Human Health. New York: New York Academy of Sciences, 1993: 281.
[117] Kurosawa M, Sato A, Swenson RS, Takahashi Y. Sympatho-adrenal medullary functions in response to intracerebroventricularly injected corticotrophin-releasing factor in anesthetized rats. Brain Res 1986; 367(1–2):250–257.
[118] Chadman K, Joseph JA, Shukitt-Hale B, Prior R, Taglialatela G, Bickford PC. Diets high in antioxidant activity prevent deleterious effects of oxidative stress on signal transduction and nerve growth factor. Soc Neurosci Abstr 1997; 23:348.
[119] Moriguchi T, Saito H, Nishiyama N. Anti-aging effect of aged garlic extract in the inbred brain atrophy mouse model. Clin exp Pharmacol Physiol 1997; 24:235–242.
[120] Nishiyama N, Moriguchi T, Saito H. Beneficial effects of aged garlic extract on learning and memory impairment in the senescence-accelerated mouse. Exp Gerontol 1997; 32:149–160.
[121] Heseker H, Kübler W, Pudel V, Westenhöffer J. Psychological disorder as early symptoms of a mild-to-moderate vitamin deficiency. In: Sauberlich HE, Machlin LJ, editors. Beyond Deficiency. New Views on the Function and Health Effects of Vitamins. New York: New York Academy of Sciences, 19921992: 352–357.
[122] Alpert JE, Fava M. Nutrition and depression: The role of folate. Nutr Rev 1997; 55:145–149.
[123] Hirata F, Axelrod J. Phospholipid methylation and biological signal transmission. Science 1980; 209:1082–1090.
[124] Godfrey PS, Toone BK, Carney MW, Flynn TG, Bottiglieri T, Laundy M, et al. Enhancement of recovery from psychiatric illness by methylfolate. Lancet 1990; 336:392–395.

[125] Joyal CC, Lalonde R, Vikis-Freibergs V, Botez MI. Are age-related behavioural disorders improved by folate administration? Exp Aging Res 1993; 19:367–376.
[126] Bottiglieri T, Hyland K, Reynolds EH. The clinical potential of ademetionine (S-adenosylmethionine) in neurological disorders. Drugs 1994; 48:137–152.
[127] Turner AJ. Commentary: The roles of folate and pteridine derivatives in neurotransmitter metabolism. Biochem Pharmacol 1977; 26:1009–1014.
[128] Guilarte TR. Effect of vitamin B-6 nutrition on the levels of dopamine, dopamine metabolites, dopa decarboxylase activity, tyrosine, and GABA in the developing rat corpus striatum. Neurochem Res 1989; 14:571–578.
[129] Dakshinamurti K, Paulose CS, Viswanathan M, Siow YL. Neuroendocrinology of pyridoxine deficiency. Neurosci Biobehav Rev 1988; 12:189–193.
[130] Schaeffer MC. Excess dietary vitamin B-6 alters startle behaviour of rats. J Nutr 1993; 123:1444–1452.
[131] Lee NS, Muhs G, Wagner GC, Reynolds RD, Fisher H. Dietary pyridoxine interaction with tryptophan or histidine on brain serotonin and histamine metabolism. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 1988; 29:559–564.
[132] Dakshinamurti K, Sharma SK, Bonke D. Influence of B vitamins on binding properties of serotonin receptors in the CNS of rats. Klin Wochenschr 1990; 68:142–145.
[133] Allgood VE, Powell-Oliver FE, Cidlowski JA. The influence of vitamin B6 on the structure and function of the glucocorticoid receptor. In: Dakshinamurti K. editors. Vitamin B6. New York: New York Academy of Sciences, 1990: 452–465.
[134] Bernstein AL. Vitamin B6 in clinical neurology. In: Dakshinamurti K. editors. Vitamin B6. New York: New York Academy of Sciences, 1990: 250.
[135] Waladkhani AR, Clemens MR. Effect of nutrition on stress management. In: Watson RR. editors. Vegetables and Herbs in Health Promotion. Boca Raton FL: CRC Press LLC, 2001: 309–324.
[136] Bar-Sella P, Rakover Y, Ratner D. Vitamin B12 and folate levels in long-term vegans. Isr J Med Sci 1990; 26:309–312.
[137] Graham SM, Arvela OM, Wise GA. Long-term neurologic consequences of nutritional vitamin B12 deficiency in infants. J Pediatr 1992; 121:710–714.
[138] Healton EB, Savage DG, Brust JC, Garrett TJ, Lindenbaum J. Neurologic aspects of cobalamin deficiency. Medicine (Baltimore) 1991; 70:229–245.
[139] Meadows ME, Kaplan RF, Bromfield EB. Cognitive recovery with vitamin B12 therapy: A longitudinal neuropsychological assessment. Neurology 1994; 44:1764–1765.
[140] Wolters M, Strohle A, Hahn A. Cobalamin: A critical vitamin in the elderly. Prev Med 2004; 39:1256–1266.
[141] Masalha R, Chudakov B, Muhamad M, Rudoy I, Volkov I, Wirguin I. Cobalamin-responsive psychosis as the sole manifestation of vitamin B12 deficiency. Isr Med Assoc J 2001; 3:701–703.
[142] Degkwitz E. Neue Aspekte der Biochemie des Vitamins C. Z Ernahrungswiss 1985; 24 (4):219.
[143] Goralczyk R, Moser UK, Matter U, Weiser H. Regulation of steroid hormone metabolism requires L-ascorbic acid. In: Sauberlich HE, Machlin LJ, editors. Beyond Deficiency. New Views on the Function and Health Effects of Vitamins. New York: New York Academy of Sciences, 1992: 349–351.
[144] Redmann A, Mobius K, Hiller HH, Oelkers W, Bahr V. Ascorbate depletion prevents aldosterone stimulation by sodium deficiency in the guinea pig. Eur J Endocrinol 1995; 133 (4):499–506.
[145] Enwonwu CO, Sawiris P, Chanaud N. Effect of marginal ascorbic acid deficiency on saliva level of cortisol in the guinea pig. Arch Oral Biol 1995; 40(8):737–742.

[146] Kodama M, Inoue F, Kodama T, Kodama M. Interperitoneal administration of ascorbic acid delays the turnover of 3H-labelled cortisol in plasma of an ODS rat, but not in the Wistar rat. Evidence in support of the cardinal role of vitamin C in the progression of glucocorticoid synthesis. *In Vivo* 1996; 10(1):97–102.
[147] Kodama M, Kodama T, Murakami M, Kodama M. Autoimmune disease and allergy are controlled by vitamin C treatment. *In Vivo* 1994; 8:251–257.
[148] Sokol RJ. Vitamin E and neurologic function in men. Free Radic Biol Med 1989; 6:189.
[149] Muller DPR, Lloyd JK, Wolff OH. Vitamin E and neurological function. Lancet 1983; 1(8318):225–228.
[150] Southam E, Thomas PK, King RHM, Gross-Sampson MA, Muller DPR. Experimental vitamin E deficiency in rats. Brain 1991; 114:915–936.
[151] Vatassery GT, Vitamin E. Neurochemistry and implications for neurodegeneration in Parkinson's disease. In: Sauberlich HE, Machlin L, editors. Beyond deficiency. New Views on the Function and Health Effects of Vitamins. New York: New York Academy of Sciences, 1992: 97.
[152] Pharoah POD, Connolly KJ. Iodine deficiency in Papua New Guinea. In: Stanbury JB. editors. The Damaged Brain of Iodine Deficiency. New York, NY: Cognizant Communication Corporation, 1994: 299–305.
[153] Hetzel BS. Historical development of the concepts of the brain-thyroid relationships. In: Stanbury JB. editors. The Damaged Brain of Iodine Deficiency. New York, NY: Cognizant Communication Corporation, 1994: 1–7.
[154] Ruiz de Ona C, Obregon MJ, Escobar del Rey F, Morreale de Escobar G. Developmental changes in rat brain 5-deiodinase and thyroid hormones during the fetal period: The effects of fetal hypothyroidism and maternal thyroid hormones. Pediatr Res 1988; 24:588–594.
[155] Vulsma T, Gons MH, de Vijlder JJM. Maternal-fetal transfer of thyroxine in congenital hypothyroidism due to a total organification defect or thyroid agenesis. N Engl J Med 1989; 321:13–16.
[156] Reed Larson P. Maternal thyroxine and congenital hypothyroidism. N Engl J Med 1989; 321:44–46.
[157] Larson PR, Ingbar SH. The thyroid gland. In: Wilson JD, Foster DW, editors. Williams Textbook of Endocrinology. Philadelphia PA: Saunders Publ, 1992: 357–487.
[158] Azizi F, Sarshar A, Nafarabadi M, Ghazi A, Kimiagar M, Noohi S, et al. Impairment of neuromotor and cognitive development in iodine-deficient schoolchildren with normal physical growth. Acta Endocrinol Copenh 1993; 129:501–504.
[159] Azizi F, Kalani H, Kimiagar M, Ghazi A, Sarshar A, Nafarabadi M, et al. Physical, neuromotor and intellectual impairment in non-cretinous schoolchildren with iodine deficiency. Int J Vitam Nutr Res 1995; 65:199–205.
[160] Fenzi GF, Giusti LF, Aghini Lombardi F, Bartalena L, Marcocci C, Santini F, et al. Neuropsychological assessment in schoolchildren from an area of moderate iodine deficiency. J Endocrinol Investig 1990; 13:427–431.
[161] Huda SN, Grantham-McGregor SM, Rahman KM, Tomkins A. Biochemical hypothyroidism secondary to iodine deficiency is associated with poor school achievement and cognition in Bangladeshi children. J Nutr 1999; 129:980–987.
[162] Tiwari BD, Godbole MM, Chattopadhyay N, Mandal A, Mithal A. Learning disabilities and poor motivation to achieve due to prolonged iodine deficiency. Am J Clin Nutr 1996; 63:782–786.
[163] Vermiglio F, Sidoti M, Finocchiaro MD, Battiato S, Lo Presti VP, Benvenga S, et al. Defective neuromotor and cognitive ability in iodine-deficient schoolchildren of an endemic goiter region in Sicily. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1990; 70:379–384.

[164] Davies KJ, Maguire JJ, Brooks GA, Dallman PR, Packer L. Muscle mitochondrial bioenergetics, oxygen supply, and work capacity during dietary iron deficiency and repletion. Am J Physiol 1982; 242:E418–E427.
[165] Beard JL, Connor JR, Jones BC. Iron on the brain. Nutr Rev 1993; 51:157–170.
[166] Pollitt E. Iron deficiency and educational deficiency. Nutr Rev 1997; 55:133–140.
[167] Earley CJ, Connor JR, Beard JL, Malecki W, Epstein D, Allen RP. Abnormalities in CSF concentrations of ferritin and transferrin in restless legs syndrome. Neurology 2000; 54:1698–1700.
[168] Connor JR, Benkovic SA. Iron regulation in the brain: Histochemical, biochemical, and molecular considerations. Ann Neurol 1992; 32:S51–S61.
[169] Fishman JB, Rubin JB, Handrahan JV, Connor JR, Fine RE. Receptor mediated uptake of transferrin across the blood brain barrier. J Neurosci Res 1987; 18:299–304.
[170] Taylor EM, Crowe A, Morgan EH. Transferrin and iron uptake by the brain: Effects of altered iron status. J Neurochem 1991; 57:1584–1592.
[171] Erikson K, Pinero D, Connor J, Beard JL. Iron status and distribution of iron in the brain of developing rats. J Nutr 1997; 127:2030–2038.
[172] Pinero DJ, Nan-Qi L, Connor JR, Beard JL. Alterations in brain iron metabolism in response to dietary iron changes. J Nutr 2000; 130:254–263.
[173] Nelson C, Erikson K, Pinero DJ, Beard JL. *In Vivo* DA metabolism is altered in ID anemic rats. J Nutr 1997; 127:2282–2288.
[174] Cox IM, Campbell MJ, Dowson D. Red blood cell magnesium and chronic fatigue syndrome. Lancet 1991; 337:757–760.
[175] McLean RM. Magnesium and its therapeutic uses: A review. Am J Med 1994; 96:63–76.
[176] Henrotte JG, Frank G, Santarromana M, Frances H, Mount D, Motta R. Mice selected for low and high blood magnesium levels: A new model for stress studies. Physiol Behav 1997; 61:653–658.
[177] Seelig MS. Consequences of magnesium deficiency on the enhancement of stress reactions: Preventive and therapeutic implications. J Am Coll Nutr 1994; 13:429–446.
[178] Sanstead HH, Frederickson CJ, Penland JG. Zinc nutriture as related to brain. J Nutr 2000; 130:140S–146S.
[179] Pfeiffer CC, Braverman ER. Zinc, the brain, and behavior. Biol Psychol 1997; 17:513–530.
[180] Frederickson CJ, Suh SW, Silva D, Frederickson CJ, Thompson RB. Importance of zinc in the central nervous system: The zinc-containing neuron. J Nutr 2000; 130:147S–153S.
[181] Bhatnagar S, Taneja S. Zinc and cognitive development. Br J Nutr 2001; 85:S139–S145.
[182] McLoughlin IJ, Hodge JS. Zinc in depressive disorder. Acta Psychiatr Scand 1990; 82:451–453.
[183] Katz RL, Keen CL, Litt IF, Hurley LS, Kellams-Harrison KM, Glader LJ. Zinc deficiency in anorexia nervosa. J Adolesc Health Care 1987; 8:400–406.
[184] Sanstead HH, Strobel DA, Logan GM, Marks EO, Jacob RA. Zinc deficiency in pregnant rhesus monkeys: Effects on behavior of infants. Am J Clin Nutr 1996; 31:844–849.
[185] Halas ES, Reynolds GM, Sandstead HH. Intra-uterine nutrition and its effects on aggression. Physiol Behav 1977; 19:653–661.
[186] Penland J, Sanstead H, Egger N, Dayal H, Alcock N, Plotkin R, et al. Zinc, iron and micronutrient supplementation effects on cognitive and psychomotor function of Mexican-American school children. FASEB J 1999; 13:A921(abs.).
[187] Sanstead HH, Penland JG, Alcock NW, Dayal HH, Chen XC, Li JS, et al. Effects of repletion with zinc and other micronutrients on neuropsychologic performance and growth of Chinese children. Am J Clin Nutr 1998; 68:470S–475S.
[188] Hamadani J, Fuchs GJ, Osendarp SJM, Khatun F, Huda SN, Grantham-McGregor SM. Randomized controlled trial of the effect of zinc supplementation on the mental development of Bangladeshi infants. Am J Clin Nutr 2001; 74:381–386.

[189] Simeon DT, Grantham-McGregor S. Effects of missing breakfast on the cognitive functions of school children of differing nutritional status. Am J Clin Nutr 1989; 49:646–653.
[190] Chandler AM, Wlker SP, Connolly K, Grantham-McGregor SM. School breakfast improves verbal fluency in undernourished Jamaican children. J Nutr 1995; 125:894–900.
[191] Kanarek R. Psychological effects of snacks and altered meal frequency. Br J Nutr 1997; 77 (1):s105–s120.
[192] Smith A, Ralph A, McNeill G. Influences of meal size on post-lunch changes in performance efficiency, mood and cardiovascular function. Appetite 1991; 16:85–91.
[193] Graig A, Richardson E. Effects of experimental and habitual lunch-size on performance, arousal, hunger and mood. Int Arch Occup Environ Health 1989; 61:313–319.
[194] Kanarek RB, Swinney D. Effects of food snacks on cognitive performance in male college students. Appetite 1990; 14:15–27.
[195] Smith A, Kendrick A, Maben A, Salmon J. Effects of breakfast and caffeine on cognitive performance, mood and cardiovascular functioning. Appetite 1994; 22:39–55.
[196] Cattanach L, Malley R, Rodin J. Psychologic and physiologic reactivity to stressors in eating disordered individuals. Psychosom Med 1988; 50:591–599.
[197] Kojima M, Hosoda H, Date Y, Nakazato M, Matsuo H, Kangawa K. Ghrelin is a growth-hormone-releasing acylated peptide from stomach. Nature 1999; 402:656–660.
[198] Tschop M, Smiley DL, Heiman ML. Ghrelin induces adiposity in rodents. Nature 2000; 407:908–913.
[199] Asakawa A, Inui A, Kaga T, Yuzuriha H, Nagata T, Fujimiya M, et al. A role of ghrelin in neuroendocrine and behavioural responses to stress in mice. Neuroendocrinology 2001; 74:143–147.
[200] Broglio F, Arvat E, Benso A, Gottero C, Muccioli G, Papotti M, et al. Ghrelin, a natural GH secretagogue produced by the stomach, induces hyperglycemia and reduces insulin secretion in humans. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2001; 86:5083–5086.
[201] Tschop M, Weyer C, Tataranni PA, Devanarayan V, Ravussin E, Heiman LE. Circulating ghrelin levels are decreased in human obesity. Diabetes 2001; 50:707–709.
[202] Zukowska-Grojec Z, Neuropeptide Y. A novel sympathetic stress hormone and more. Ann NY Acad Sci 1995; 771:219–233.
[203] Morley J. Neuropeptide regulation of appetite and weight. Endocr Rev 1987; 8:256–287.
[204] Stone A, Brownell K. The stress-eating paradox: Multiple daily measurements in adult males and females. Psychol Health 1994; 9:425–436.
[205] Willenbring M, Levine A, Morley J. Stress induced eating and food preference in humans: A pilot study. Int J Eat Disord 1986; 5:855–864.
[206] McCann BS, Warnick GR, Knopp RH. Changes in plasma lipids and dietary intake accompanying shifts in perceived workload and stress. Psychosom Med 1990; 52:97–108.
[207] Weidner G, Kohlmann CW, Dotzauer E, Burns LR. The effects of academic stress on health behaviors in young adults. Anxiety, Stress Coping 1996; 9:123–133.
[208] Wardle J, Steptoe A, Oliver G, Lipsey Z. Stress, dietary restraint and food intake. J Psychosom Res 2000; 48:195–202.
[209] Schotte DA, Cools J, McNally RJ. Film-induced negative affect triggers overeating in restrained eaters. J Abnorm Psychol 1990; 99:317–320.
[210] Cools J, Schotte DE, McNally RJ. Emotional arousal and overeating in restrained eaters. J Abnorm Psychol 1992; 101:348–351.
[211] Heatherton TF, Herman CP, Polivy J. Effects of physical threat and ego threat on eating behaviour. J Pers Soc Psychol 1991; 60:138–143.
[212] Levine MD, Marcus MD. Eating behaviour following stress in women with and without bulimic symptoms. Annals Behav Med 1997; 19:132–138.

[213] Kurtz I, Maher T, Hulter HN, Schambelan M, Sebastian A. Effect of diet on plasma acid base composition in normal humans. Kidney Int 1983; 24:670–680.
[214] May R, Kelly R, Mitch WE. Metabolic acidosis stimulates protein degradation in rat muscle by a glucocorticoid-dependent mechanism. J Clin Invest 1986; 77:614–621.
[215] Perez GO, Oster JR, Katz FH, Vaamonde CA. The effect of acute metabolic acidosis on plasma cortisol, renin activity and aldosterone. Horm Res 1979; 11:12–21.
[216] Sicuro A, Mahlbacher K, Hulter HN, Krapf R. Effect of growth hormone on renal and systemic acid-base homeostasis in humans. Am J Physiol Renal Physiol 1998; 274: F650–F657.
[217] Schambelan M, Sebastian A, Katuna BA, Arteaga E. Adrenocortical hormone secretory response to chronic NH_4CI-induced metabolic acidosis. Am J Physiol 1987; 252: E454–E460.
[218] Kumar R. Glucocorticoid-induced osteoporosis. Curr Opin Nephrol Hypertens 2001; 10:589–595.
[219] Delany AM, Dong Y, Canalis E. Mechanisms of glucocorticoid action in bone cells. J Cell Biochem 1994; 56:295–302.
[220] Canalis E. Mechanisms of glucocorticoid action in bone: Implications to glucocorticoid-induced osteoporosis. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1996; 81:3441–3447.
[221] Cooper MS, Hewiston M, Stewart PM. Glucocorticoid activity, inactivity and the osteoblast. J Endocrinol 1999; 163:159–164.
[222] Manolagas SC, Weinstein RS. New developments in the pathogenesis and treatment of steroid-induced osteoporosis. J Bone Miner Res 1999; 14:1061–1066.
[223] Lane NE. An update on glucocorticoid-induced osteoporosis. Rheum Dis Clin North Am 2001; 27:235–253.
[224] Maurer M, Riesen W, Muser J, Hulter HN, Krapf R. Neutralization of Western diet inhibits bone resorption independently of K intake and reduces cortisol secretion in humans. Am J Physiol Renal Physiol 2003; 284:F32–F40.
[225] Hofbauer LC, Gori F, Riggs BL, Lacey DL, Dunstan CR, Spelsberg TC, et al. Stimulation of osteoprotegerin ligand and inhibition of osteoprotegerin production by glucocorticoids in human osteoblastic lineage cells: Potential paracrine mechanisms of glucocorticoid-induced osteoporosis. Endocrinol 1999; 140:4382–4389.
[226] Lukert BP, Raisz LG. Glucocorticoid-induced osteoporosis: Pathogenesis and management. Ann Intern Med 1990; 112:352–364.
[227] Hahn TJ. Steroid hormones and the skeleton. In: Tam CS, Heersche JNM, Murray TM, editors. Metabolic Bone Disease: Cellular and Tissue Mechanisms. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, Inc., 1989: 223–237.
[228] Krapf R, Beeler I, Hertner D, Hulter HN. Chronic respiratory alkalosis: The effect of sustained hyperventilation on renal regulation of acid-base equilibrium. N Engl J Med 1989; 324:1394–1401.
[229] Hayes TB. Interdependence of corticosterone and thyroid hormones in larval toads (Bufo boreas). I. Thyroid hormone-dependent and independent effects of corticosterone on growth and development. J Exp Zool 1995; 271:95–102.
[230] Kitaysky AS, Kitaiskaia EV, Piatt JF, WingWeld JC. Benefits and costs of increased levels of corticosterone in seabird chicks. Horm Behav 2003; 43:140–149.
[231] Pravosudov VV. Long-term moderate elevation of corticosterone facilitates avian food-caching behaviour and enhances spatial memory. Proc R Soc Lond B 2003; 270:2599–2604.
[232] Sandi C, Rose SPR. Training-dependent biphasic effects of corticosterone in memory formation for a passive avoidance task in chicks. Psychopharmacology 1997; 133:152–160.

[233] Korte SM. Corticosteroids in relation to fear, anxiety and psychopathology. Neurosci Biobehav Rev 2001; 25:117–142.
[234] Hadley ME. Endocrinology, 5th ed., Prentice Hall, Inc: Upper Saddle River. Hamada, 1999.
[235] Highet AB, Ruben LN. Corticosteroid regulation of IL-1 production may be responsible for deficient immune suppressor function during the metamorphosis of Xenopus laevis, the South African clawed toad. Immunopharmacology 1987; 13:149–156.
[236] Saad AH, El Ridi R. Endogenous corticosteroids mediate seasonal cyclic changes in immunity of lizards. Immunobiology 1988; 177:390–403.
[237] Dhabhar FS. Stress-induced augmentation of immune function. The role of stress hormones, leukocyte trafficking, and cytokines. Brain Behav Immun 2002; 16:785–798.
[238] Richardson RD, Boswell T, Raffety BD, Seeley RJ, WingWeld JC, Woods SC. NPY increases food intake in white-crowned sparrows: Effect in short and long photoperiods. Am J Physiol 1995; 268:R1418–R1422.
[239] Strack AM, Sebastian RJ, Schwartz MW, Dallman MF. Glucocorticoids and insulin: Reciprocal signals for energy balance. Am J Physiol 1995; 268:R142–R149.
[240] Zakrzewska KE, Sainsbury A, Cusin J, Rouru J, Jeanrenaud B, Rohner-Jeanrenaud F. Selective dependence of intracerebroventricular neuropeptide Y-elicited effects on central glucocorticoids. Endocrinology 1999; 140:3183–3187.
[241] Rothwell NJ. Central effects of CRF on metabolism and energy balance. Neurosci Biobehav Res 1990; 14:263–271.
[242] Richardson R. Regulation of food intake and body weight in the white-crowned sparrow (Zonotrichia leucophrys gambelii). Ph.D. thesis, University of Washington, 1997.
[243] Cherel Y, Robin JP, Walch O, Karmann H, Netchtailo P, Le Maho Y. Fasting in king penguin. I. Hormonal and metabolic changes during breeding. Am J Physiol 1988; 254: R170–R177.
[244] Le Ninan F, Cherel Y, Sardet C, Le Maho Y. Plasma hormone levels in relation to lipid and protein metabolism during prolonged fasting in king penguin chicks. Gen Comp Endocrinol 1988; 71:331–337.
[245] Astheimer LB, Buttemer WA, WingWeld JC. Corticosterone treatment has no effect on reproductive hormones or aggressive behaviour in free-living male tree sparrows, Spizella arborea. Horm Behav 2000; 37:31–39.
[246] Brown J, Clasper C, Smith T, Lomax MA. Effects of a beta-2-adrenergic agonist cimaterol and corticosterone on growth and carcass composition of male rats. Comp Biochem Physiol 1992; 102A:217–220.
[247] Gray JM, Yarian D, Ramenofsky M. Corticosterone, foraging behaviour, and metabolism in dark-eyed juncos, Junco hyemalis. Gen Comp Endocrinol 1990; 79:375–384.
[248] Hickson RC, Czerwinski SM, Wegrzyn LE. Glutamine prevents downregulation of myosin heavy chain synthesis and muscle atrophy from glucocorticoids. Am J Physiol 1995; 268:E730–E734.
[249] Goldstein RE, Reed GW, Wasserman DH, Williams PE, Lacy DB, Buckspan R, et al. Effects of acute elevations in plasma cortisol levels on alanine metabolism in the conscious dog. Metab Clin Exp 1992; 41:1295–1303.
[250] Goldstein RE, Wasserman DH, McGuinness OP, Lacy DB, Cherrington AD, Abumbad NN. Effects of chronic elevation in plasma cortisol on hepatic carbohydrate metabolism. Am J Physiol 1993; 264:E119–E127.
[251] Simon J. Effects of daily corticosterone injections upon plasma glucose, insulin, uric acid and electrolytes and food intake pattern in the chicken. Diabete Metab 1984; 10:211–217.
[252] Davison TF, Rea J, Rowell JG. Effects of dietary corticosterone on the growth and metabolism of immature Gallus domesticus. Gen Comp Endocrinol 1983; 50:463–468.

[253] Remage-Healey L, Romero LM. Corticosterone and insulin interact to regulate glucose and triglyceride levels during stress in a bird. Am J Physiol 2001; 281:R994–R1003.
[254] Sellers TL, Jaussi AW, Yang HT, Heninger RW, Winder WW. Effects of exercise-induced increase in glucocorticoids on endurance in the rat. J Appl Physiol 1988; 65:173–178.
[255] Yamada F, Inoue S, Saitoh T, Tanaka K, Satoh S, Takamura Y. Glucoregulatory hormones in the immobilization stress-induced increase of plasma glucose in fasted and fed rats. Endocrinology 1993; 132:2199–2205.
[256] Nazir MI, Rizvi HA, Ali SS. Effect of corticosterone on the lipid composition of adipose tissue, plasma and liver in a lizard. Pak J Sci Ind Res 1988; 31:706–710.
[257] McIntosh M, Bao H, Lee C. Opposing actions of dehydroepiand-rosterone and corticosterone in rats. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 1999; 221:198–206.
[258] Dohm GL. Protein as a fuel for endurance exercise. Exerc Sport Sci Rev 1986; 14:143–173.
[259] Checkley S. The neuroendocrinology of depression and chronic stress. Br Med Bull 1996; 52:597–617.
[260] Tataranni PA, Larson DE, Snitker S, Young JB, Flatt JP, Ravussin E. Effects of glucocorticoids on energy metabolism and food intake in humans. Am J Physiol 1996; 271: E317–E325.
[261] Castonguay TW. Glucocorticoids as modulators in the control of feeding. Brain Res Bull 1991; 27:423–428.
[262] Brandenberger G, Follenius M, Wittersheim G, Salame P, Simeoni M, Reinhardt B. Plasma catecholamines and pituitary adrenal hormones related to mental task demand under quiet and noise conditions. Biol Psychol 1980; 10:239–252.
[263] Okada S, York D, Bray G. Mifepristone (RU 486) a blocker of type II glucocorticoid and progestin receptors, reverses a dietary form of obesity. Am J Physiol 1992; 262: R1106–R1110.
[264] Bell M, Bhatnagar S, Liang J, Soriano L, Nagy T, Dallman M. Voluntary sucrose ingestion, like corticosterone replacement, prevents the metabolic deficits of adrenalectomy. J Neuroendocrinol 2000; 12(5):461–470.
[265] Flatt JP. Effects of corticosterone on RG, food intake, and energy balance. Int J Obes 1989; 13:552.
[266] Willox J, Corr J, Shaw J, Richardson M, Calman K. Prednisolone as an appetite stimulant in patients with cancer. Br Med J 1984; 288:27.
[267] Kirschbaum C, Hellhammer DH. Salivary cortisol in psychobiological research: An overview. Neuropsychobiology 1989; 22:150–169.
[268] Chaouloff F. Physiopharmacological interactions between stress hormones and central serotonergic systems. Brain Res Rev 1993; 18:1–32.
[269] Dinan TG. Serotonin: Current understanding and the way forward. Int Clin Psychopharmacol 1996; 11:19–21.
[270] Höglund E, Balm PHM, Winberg S. Skin darkening, a potential signal in subordinate artic charr (Salvenius alpinus): The regulation role of brain monoamines and pro-opiomelanocortin-derived peptides. J Exp Biol 2000; 203:1711–1721.
[271] Winberg S, Lepage O. Elevation of brain 5-HT activity, POMC expression and plasma cortisol in socially subordinate rainbow trout. Am J Physiol 1998; 43:R645–R654.
[272] Delbeinde C, Delarue C, Lefebvre H, Tranchand-Bunel D, Szafarczyk A, Mocaer E, et al. Glucocorticoids, transminers and stress. Br J Psychiatry 1992; 160(Suppl. 15):24–34.
[273] Spoont MR. Modulatory role of serotonin in neural information processing: Implications for human psychopathology. Psychol Bull 1992; 112:330–350.
[274] Altman HJ, Normile HJ. What is the nature of the role of the serotonergic nervous system in learning and memory: Prospects for development of an effective treatment strategy for senile dementia. Neurobiol Aging 1988; 9:627–638.

[275] Joseph MH, Kennett GA. Stress-induced release of 5-HT in the hippocampus and its dependence on increased tryptophan availability: An *in vivo* electrochemical study. Brain Res 1983; 270:251–257.
[276] Stanford SC. Monoamines in response and adaptation to stress. In: Stanford SC, Salmon P, editors. Stress, from Synapse to Syndrome. London: Academic Press, 1993: 24–30.
[277] Adell A, Garcia-Marquez C, Armario A, Gelpi E. Chronic stress increases serotonin and noradrenaline in rat brain and sensitizes their responses to a further acute stress. J Neurochem 1988; 50:1678–1681.
[278] Kennett GA, Dickinson SL, Curzon G. Enhancement of some 5-HT-dependent behavioural responses following repeated immobilisation in rats. Brain Res 1985; 330:253–263.
[279] Heninger GR, Delgado PL, Charney DS. The revised monoamine theory of depression: A modulatory role for monoamines, based on new findings from monoamine depletion experiments in humans. Pharmacopsychiatry 1996; 29(1):2–11.
[280] Boadle-Biber MC, Singh VB, Corley KC, Phan TH, Dilts RP. Evidence that corticotropin-releasing factor within the extended amygdala mediates the activation of tryptophan hydroxylase produced by sound stress in the rat. Brain Res 1993; 628(1–2):105–114.
[281] Aldegunde M, Soengas JL, Rozas G. Acute effects of L-tryptophan on tryptophan hydroxylation rate in brain regions (hypothalamus and medulla) of rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss). J Exp Zool 2000; 286:131–135.
[282] Winberg S, Øverli Ø, Lepage O. Suppression of aggression in rainbow trout (Onchorhynchus mykiss) by dietary L-tryptophan. J Exp Biol 2001; 204:3867–3886.
[283] Curzon G. Effects of food intake on brain transmitter amine precursors and amine synthesis. In: Sandler M, Silverstone T, editors. Psychopharmacology and Food. Oxford, United Kingdom: Oxford University Press, 1985: 59–70.
[284] Lieberman HR, Spring B, Garfield GS. The behavioural effects of food constituents: Strategies used in studies of amino acids, protein, carbohydrates and caffeine. Nutr Rev 1986; 44:61–69.
[285] Rosenthal NE, Genhart MJ, Caballero B, Jacobsen FM, Skwerer RG, Coursey RD, et al. Psychobiological effects of carbohydrate- and protein-rich meals in patients with seasonal affective disorder and normal controls. Biol Psychol 1989; 25:1029–1040.
[286] Markus CR, Pannhuysen G, Tuiten A, Koppeschaar H. Effects of food on cortisol and mood in vulnerable subjects under controllable and uncontrollable stress. Physiol Behav 2000; 70:333–342.
[287] Dunn AJ. Stress-related changes in cerebral catecholamine and indoleamine metabolism: Lack of effect of adrenalectomy and corticosterone. J Neurochem 1988; 51(2):406–412.
[288] Dunn AJ, Welch J. Stress- and endotoxin-induced increases in brain tryptophan and serotonin metabolism depend on sympathetic nervous system activity. J Neurochem 1991; 57(5):1615–1622.
[289] Fernstrom MH, Volk EA, Fernstrom JD, Iuvone PM. Effect of tyrosine administration on dopa accumulation in light- and dark-adapted retinas from normal and diabetic rats. Life Sci 1986; 39:2049–2057.
[290] Wurtman RJ, Hefti F, Melamed E. Precursor control of neurotransmitter synthesis. Pharmacol Rev 1980; 32:315–335.
[291] Gelenberg AJ, Wojcik JD, Falk WE, Baldessarini RJ, Zeisel SH, Schoenfeld D, et al. Tyrosine for depression: A double-blind trial. J Affect Disord 1990; 19:125–132.
[292] Growdon JH, Melamed E, Logue M, Hefti F, Wurtman RJ. Effects of oral L-tyrosine administration on CSF tyrosine and homovanillic acid levels in patients with Parkinson's disease. Life Sci 1982; 30:827–832.

[293] Ahlers ST, Thomas JR, Schrot J, Shurtleff D. Tyrosine and glucose modulation of cognitive deficits resulting from cold stress. In: Marriott BM. editors. Food Components to Enhance Performance. Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1994: 301–320.
[294] Banderet LE, Lieberman HR. Treatment with tyrosine, a neurotransmitter precursor, reduces environmental stress in humans. Brain Res Bull 1989; 22:759–762.
[295] Plotsky PM, Owens MJ, Nemeroff CB. Psychoneuroendocrinology of depression. Hypothalamic–pituitary–adrenal axis. Psychiatr Clin North Am 1998; 21(2):293–307.
[296] Putignano P, Dubini A, Toja P, Invitti C, Bonfanti S, Redaelli G, et al. Salivary cortisol measurement in normal-weight, obese and anorexic women: Comparison with plasma cortisol. Eur J Endocrinol 2001; 145:165–171.
[297] Pirke KM, Platte P, Laessle R, Seidl M, Fichter MM. The effect of a mental challenge test of plasma norepinephrine and cortisol in bulimia nervosa and in controls. Biol Psychiatry 1992; 32:202–206.
[298] Gluck ME, Geliebter A, Hung J, Yahav E. Cortisol, hunger, and desire to binge eat following a cold stress test in obese women with binge eating disorder (BED). Psychosom Med 2004; 66:876–881.
[299] Birketvedt GS, Florholmen J, Sundsfjord J, Osterud B, Dinges D, Bilker W, et al. Behavioural and neuroendocrine characteristics of the night-eating syndrome. JAMA 1999; 282:657–663.
[300] Abell TL, Malagelada JR, Lucas AR, Brown ML, Camilleri M, Go VL, et al. Gastric electromechanical and neurohormonal function in anorexia nervosa. Gastroenterology 1987; 93:958–965.
[301] Koo-Loeb JH, Costello N, Light KC, Girdler SS. Women with eating disorder tendencies display altered cardiovascular, neuroendocrine, and psychosocial profiles. Psychosom Med 2000; 62(4):539–548.
[302] Marin P, Darin N, Amemiya T, Andersson B, Jern S, Bjorntorp P. Cortisol secretion in relation to body fat distribution in obese premenopausal women. Metabolism 1992; 41:882–886.
[303] Sapolsky R. In: Why Zebras Don't Get Ulcers: An Updated Guide to Stress, Stress-Related Diseases, and Coping. New York: Freeman and Co, 1998: 76–79.
[304] Berton O, Durand M, Aguerre S, Mormede P, Chaouloff F. Behavioural, neuroendocrine and serotonergic consequences of single social defeat and repeated fluoxetine pretreatment in the Lewis rat strain. Neuroscience 1999; 92:327–341.
[305] Shimizu N, Oomura Y, Kai Y. Stress-induced anorexia in rats mediated by serotonergic mechanisms in the hypothalamus. Physiol Behav 1989; 46(5):835–841.
[306] Hagan M, Wauford P, Chandler P, Jarrett L, Rybak R, Blackburn K. A new animal model of binge eating. Key synergistic role of past caloric restriction and stress. Physiol Behav 2002; 77:45–54.
[307] Hagan MM, Chandler PC, Wauford PK, Rybak RJ, Oswald KD. The role of palatable food and hunger as trigger factors in an animal model of stress induced binge eating. Int J Eat Disord 2003; 34:183–197.
[308] Oliver G, Wardle J. Perceived effects of stress on food choice. Physiol Behav 1999; 66:511–515.
[309] Grønli J, Murison R, Bjorvatn B, Sørensen E, Portas CM, Ursin R. Chronic mild stress affects sucrose intake and sleep in rats. Behav Brain Res 2004; 150:139–147.
[310] D'Aquila PS, Brain P, Willner P. Effects of chronic mild stress on performance in behavioural tests relevant to anxiety and depression. Physiol Behav 1994; 56(5):861–867.
[311] Dallman MF, Pecoraro N, Akana SF, La Fleur SE, Gomez F, Houshyar H, et al. Chronic stress and obesity: A new view of 'comfort food'. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2003; 100:11696–11701.

[312] Bjorntorp P, Rosmond R. Neuroendocrine abnormalities in visceral obesity. Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord 2000; 24(Suppl. 2):S80–S85.
[313] Jayo JM, Shively CA, Kaplan JR, Manuck SB. Effects of exercise and stress on body fat distribution in male cynomolgus monkeys. Int J ObesRelat Metab Disord 1993; 17:597–604.
[314] Reaven GM. Role of insulin resistance in human disease. Diabetes 1988; 37:1595–1607.
[315] Rosmond R, Dallman MF, Bjorntorp P. Stress-related cortisol secretion in men: Relationships with abdominal obesity and endocrine, metabolic and hemodynamic abnormalities. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1998; 83(6):1853–1859.
[316] Dallman MF, Akana SF, Strack AM, Hanson ES, Sebastian RJ. The neural network that regulates energy balance is responsive to glucocorticoids and insulin and also regulates HPA axis responsivity at a site proximal to CRF neurons. Ann NY Acad Sci 1995; 771:730–742.
[317] Greeno CG, Wing RR. Stress-induced eating. Psychol Bull 1994; 115:444–464.
[318] Blair EH, Wing RR, Wald A. The effect of laboratory stressors on glycemic control and gastrointestinal transit time. Psychosom Med 1991; 53:133–143.
[319] Lyman B. The nutritional values and food group characteristics of foods preferred during various emotions. J Psychol 1982; 112:121–127.
[320] Oliver G, Wardle J, Gibson L. Stress and food choice: A laboratory study. Psychosom Med 2000; 62:853–865.
[321] Pollard TM, Steptoe A, Canaan L, Davies GJ, Wardle J. The effects of academic examination stress on eating behaviour and blood lipid levels. Int J Behav Med 1995; 2:299–320.
[322] Johnson WG, Corrigan SA, Schlundt DG, Dubbert PM. Dietary restraint and eating behaviour in the natural environment. Addict Behav 1990; 15:285–290.
[323] Wardle J, Marsland L, Sheikh Y, Quinn M, Fedoroff I, Ogden J. Eating style and eating behaviour in adolescents. Appetite 1992; 18:167–183.
[324] Weinstein SE, Shide DJ, Rolls BJ. Changes in food intake in response to stress in men and women: Psychological factors. Appetite 1997; 28:7–18.
[325] Bellisle F, Louis-Sylvestre J, Linet N, Rocaboy B, Dalle B, Cheneau F, et al. Anxiety and food intake in men. Psychosom Med 1990; 52:452–457.
[326] Lowe MR, Fisher EB. Emotional reactivity, emotional eating and obesity: A naturalistic study. J Behav Med 1983; 6:135–148.
[327] Blass EM, Shide DJ, Weller A. Stress-reducing effects of ingesting milk, sugars, and fats. A developmental perspective. Ann NY Acad Sci 1989; 575:292–305.
[328] Mercer ME, Holder MD. Food cravings, endogenous opioid peptides, and food intake: A review. Appetite 1997; 29:325–352.
[329] Dess NK, Edelheit D. The bitter with the sweet: The taste/stress/temperament nexus. Biol Psychol 1998; 48:103–119.
[330] Moller P, Wallin H, Knudsen LE. Oxidative stress associated with exercise, psychological stress and life-style factors. Chem-Biol Interact 1996; 102:17–36.
[331] Kiecolt-Glaser JK, Stephens RE, Lipetz PD, Speicher CE, Glaser R. Distress and DANN repair in human lymphocytes. J Behav Med 1985; 8:311–320.
[332] Leedy MG, Wilson MS. Testosterone and cortisol levels in crewman of U.S. Air Force fighter and cargo planes. Psychosom Med 1985; 47(4):333–338.
[333] Tomei LD, Kiecolt-Glaser JK, Kennedy S, Glaser R. Psychological stress and phorbol ester inhibition of radiation-induced apoptosis in human peripheral blood leukocytes. Psychiat Res 1990; 33:59–71.
[334] Allen PIM, Batty KA, Dodd CAS, Herbert J, Hugh CJ, Moore GF, et al. Dissociation between emotional and endocrine responses preceding an academic examination in male medical students. J Endocrinol 1985; 107:163–170.

MENOPAUSE, ESTROGEN, AND GONADOTROPINS IN ALZHEIMER'S DISEASE

Gemma Casadesus,[*,#] Raj K. Rolston,[¶,#] Kate M. Webber,[¶] Craig S. Atwood,[†] Richard L. Bowen,[‡,§§] George Perry,[¶,§] and Mark A. Smith[¶]

[*]Department of Neurosciences, Case Western Reserve University, Cleveland, Ohio 44106
[†]Department of Medicine, University of Wisconsin and Geriatric Research, Education and Clinical Center, Veterans Administration Hospital, Madison, Wisconsin 53705
[‡]Voyager Pharmaceutical Corporation, Raleigh, North Carolina 27615
[§]College of Sciences, University of Texas at San Antonio, San Antonio, Texas 78249
[§§]Current address: Raleigh, NC 27615
[¶]Department of Pathology, Case Western Reserve University, Cleveland, Ohio 44106
[#]Both authors contributed equally to the article

1. Abstract 139
2. Introduction 140
3. Hypothesized Pathogenic Mechanisms of AD 141
4. Gender Dichotomy in AD: Role of Sex Steroids 142
5. A Gonadotropin Evidence-Based Hypothesis for AD: High Gonadotropin vs Low Estrogen 144
6. Conclusion 147
References 148

1. Abstract

For decades, Alzheimer's disease (AD) has been linked to aging, gender, and menopause. Not surprisingly, this led most investigators to focus on the role of estrogen. While undoubtedly important, estrogen is unlikely the key determinant of disease pathogenesis. Rather, it appears that estrogen may

0065-2423/08 $35.00
DOI: 10.1016/S0065-2423(07)00006-6

work in conjunction with a novel determinant of disease pathogenesis, namely gonadotropins. The fact that gonadotropins, specifically luteinizing hormone, play a pivotal role in disease is apparent from significant etiological, epidemiological, and pathological evidences. Moreover, targeting gonadotropins appears to have beneficial actions as a therapeutic regimen.

2. Introduction

Dementia, a syndrome of many causes, defined as an acquired deterioration in cognitive abilities that impairs the successful performance of activities of daily living, is the result of disorders of cerebral neuronal circuits and is a consequence of the total quantity of neuronal loss as well as the specific location of such loss [1]. The most common cognitive ability lost with dementia is memory. In western countries, AD is the commonest cause of dementia, followed by vascular dementia, Parkinson's disease, and dementia due to alcoholism and drug/medication intoxication. Increasing age, however, appears to be the single strongest risk factor for dementia. Disabling memory loss increases with each decade above 50 years and, at autopsy, is most often associated with microscopic changes of AD. Today, whether or not dementia is an inevitable consequence of normal human aging remains a topic of controversy. Nevertheless, while some centenarians retain intact memory function with no evidence of clinically significant dementia, and while AD can occur at any age, we know that significant memory loss is seen in $\sim$10% of all persons above 70 years and AD is the causal factor in more than half of them. While a subtle cumulative decline in episodic memory, also termed as "benign forgetfulness of the elderly," is a natural part of normal aging, a significant portion of individuals with a mild cognitive problem, also referred to as mild cognitive impairment, that interferes with daily activities will progress to frank dementia, usually caused by AD. Depending on the cause of dementia, anatomically specific patterns of neuronal degeneration occur which dictate the clinical symptomatology. AD first involves the entorhinal cortex, spreads to the hippocampus, and eventually causes a relatively diffuse cortical degeneration [2]. It primarily presents with memory impairment and progresses to language deficits, with aphasia or other disturbance of language, and visuospatial deficits. If made after careful evaluation, a clinical diagnosis of AD is confirmed at autopsy 90% of the time [1]. Even though there is, at present, no definitive treatment for AD, it is important to detect. A diagnosis of AD would allow the treating physician to discontinue all unnecessary medication as well as identify and treat new intercurrent illness, find alternate ways to obtain history at ensuing visits, ensure the patient's medication is taken correctly, and help the patient and patient's family to deal with the disease.

Cognitive impairment results in a diminished quality of life and reduces the capability of the individual to live independently. This poses a serious public health problem. The increasing life expectancy of our population inevitably carries with it a rising incidence of cognitive symptomatology and age-related illnesses. The current number of 4 million individuals affected with AD in the United States today, if unchecked, is expected to rise to an estimated 14 million by the year 2050 [3].

Our incomplete understanding of the molecular mechanisms involved in cognitive decline and the pathogenesis of AD has impeded the development of effective therapy. Despite a large number of studies aimed at forestalling the onset and progression of AD, current therapeutic management studies have been, at best, limited to palliative treatment. It is crucial that we develop strategies to prevent, halt, or even reverse, decline in cognitive function in order to improve the quality of life of our aging population and avert a rise in health care costs. To achieve this goal, the molecular mechanisms involved in cognitive decline must be deciphered and better understood. Only then can successful diagnostic tools and therapeutic strategies for neurodegenerative diseases such as AD be devised. Here we review current knowledge, clinical and experimental, of the role of a changing hormonal environment during menopause and andropause in the pathogenesis of AD and, inevitably, the new direction in therapeutic options to which this understanding points.

In patients with AD, there is a progressive decline in episodic, working, and spatial memories [4, 5] which refer to the conscious recollection of facts and events. There is diminished capacity to form large-scale representations of the environment and difficulty in learning and orienting to unfamiliar settings [6, 7]. The mechanisms responsible for this type of behavioral decline have yet to be delineated. What has been described is the associated selective neuronal degeneration affecting the hippocampus and, to a lesser extent, other cortical brain regions. The hippocampus, a highly plastic area of the brain, is crucial in the modulation of the types of memory and cognition affected in AD. Importantly, the hippocampus is also one of the most age-sensitive areas in the brain. It is thought that greatly diminished plastic capabilities of this region lead to impairments in cognitive output.

3. Hypothesized Pathogenic Mechanisms of AD

The early appearance of histopathologic lesions in the hippocampus has been hypothesized to be one of the mechanisms that lead to cognitive dysfunction in AD. However, the etiologic events that lead to the two well-characterized histopathologic lesions of the disease, namely neurofibrillary tangles composed of hyperphosphorylated tau protein and senile plaques

composed of amyloid-β (Aβ) protein, are incompletely understood. Nonetheless, of the several hypotheses put forward to explain the pathogenesis of AD, the amyloid hypothesis has gained most attention. This is due to the finding that early onset AD results from mutations in either the amyloid-β protein precursor (AβPP) or the presenilins 1 and 2, proteins involved in the processing of Aβ [8]. However, studies using animal models do not support this theory. In transgenic rodent models that overexpress mutant AβPP, despite large depositions of Aβ in the brain, there is little or no neuronal loss [9]. In fact, there is increasing evidence to support the theory that Aβ deposition is a consequence rather than a causative factor in AD pathogenesis [10–13]. Other theories being considered as plausible explanations for the hallmark brain lesions seen in AD are tau phosphorylation [14–16], oxidative stress [17], metal ion dysregulation [18], and inflammation [19]. Tau, a microtubule-associated protein, serves to assemble and stabilize the microtubule. Tau hyperphosphorylation impairs its capacity to bind to microtubules and prevents the microtubules from functioning normally. Accumulating evidence supports the concept that oxidative stress generated by various mechanisms may be a major factor that contributes to the initiation and promotion of neurodegeneration [17, 20, 21]. Transition metals, such as iron, copper, aluminum, and zinc, have been found in high concentrations in the brains of patients with AD and studies suggest their involvement in the etiopathology of the brain changes seen in AD [22, 23]. Overall, these studies indicate that the environmental conditions in AD, exacerbated by imbalances in several metals, have the potential to catalyze and stimulate free radical formation and enhance neuronal degeneration. Other associated findings in AD include decreased cortical levels of acetylcholine, the enzyme choline acetyltransferase, nicotinic cholinergic receptors, and reduced norepinephrine in brainstem nuclei [2]. Each of these mechanisms, while they may have a role in the disease process in AD, cannot, when considered alone, sufficiently explain the spectrum of abnormalities found in AD [24]. The search therefore continues for a causative factor that would be present at the time of onset of the disease, predating the clinical features as we know them today, and which would serve as an initiator of the pathologic process and evolution of the disease.

4. Gender Dichotomy in AD: Role of Sex Steroids

Investigation of the epidemiological trends unique to AD yields conflicting data [25, 26]. The fact remains, however, that there is a higher prevalence [27–30] and incidence [31] of AD in aging women. There is also a higher incidence of Aβ plaques in brains of women as compared with men [32]. This gender-based disease predisposition is specific to AD and is not found in other degenerative diseases, such as Parkinson's disease, where men have a

higher prevalence and progression of disease. This has, naturally, focused attention on the roles played by diminishing levels during aging and reproductive senescence of estrogen and, to a lesser extent, testosterone, in the pathogenesis of AD.

The part played by sex steroids, and estrogen in particular, in age-related cognitive decline and AD has gained prominence due to a number of lines of evidence suggesting that postmenopausal estrogen deficiency may contribute to both the benign cognitive decline [33–35] and the etiology of AD in women [36, 37]. These findings are supported by epidemiological and observational studies indicating that hormone replacement therapy (HRT) lessens the risk of AD in postmenopausal women [38–42]. It is interesting, however, that reports suggest HRT to be protective only when administered during a "critical period," that constitutes the climacteric years. HRT is almost completely ineffective when given later during the postmenopausal years, during the latent preclinical stage of AD, the disease itself occurring much later in life [43–47].

The observed gender differences, in addition to the reported capacity of HRT to reduce AD risk in postmenopausal women, have led researchers to investigate a possible role for estrogen in the pathogenesis of AD. It is already known that estrogen has a proven ability to act as a neuroprotective agent by lowering the brain levels of Aβ [48], ameliorating the nerve cell injury caused by Aβ [49], and promoting synaptic plasticity and growth of nerve processes [50–52]. Additionally, estrogen is capable of reducing oxidative stress, increasing cerebral blood flow, and enhancing cholinergic function and glucose transport into the brain [53]. These effects are all known to exert a positive impact on the amelioration and prevention of AD. Several studies have been carried out on the effects of adrenal steroids on hippocampal plasticity [54–56]. One study in embryonic rat hippocampal cells suggests that a metabolite of dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA) may be responsible for some of the functions ascribed to estrogens [57].

In men, although cessation of gonadal hormone secretion is not abrupt during midlife, levels of testosterone decrease gradually with aging. There is some evidence to show that higher levels of estradiol, arising through aromatization of testosterone, in elderly men may protect against some decline in memory during normal aging [58, 59]. Some authors go so far as to suggest that testosterone replacement therapy may alleviate memory loss in elderly men [60, 61].

Despite the large body of evidence supporting a role for estrogen in preventing age-related cognitive decline as well as AD, there have been recent contradictory studies [62]. While reduced estrogen levels have been reported in patients with AD as compared to controls [39], HRT using estrogen and progestin resulted in little improvement in cognitive function [40]. One must also consider the fact that a "critical period" in HRT-based protection against AD suggests that falling levels of steroid hormones that accompany

menopause/andropause cannot sufficiently account for patterns of AD susceptibility. Such inconsistent results merely reflect our incomplete understanding of the basic mechanisms in AD. They do, however, raise questions regarding an authentic role of sex steroids in the disease process. Add to this the fact that steroid hormone changes do not account for the observation that, in Down's syndrome, where serum levels of estrogen and testosterone are comparable to those in the general population, males are at a significantly higher risk for developing precocious AD-type pathology and cognitive alterations, and at an earlier age, than females [63]. This reversal in Down's syndrome of the normally female gender-based predisposition to AD cannot therefore be explained on the basis of lowered sex steroid levels.

The Women's Health Initiative (WHI) Memory Study, which reported negative cognitive effects following HRT with conjugated equine estrogen at an AD-vulnerable age, has raised the most recent and significant challenge to estrogen's protective role in AD etiology. The WHI study [46, 64], which demonstrated that HRT in postmenopausal women does not improve cognitive performance and may actually increase the risk of developing AD, has raised new questions concerning the role of sex steroid hormones in age-related cognitive decline, concurrent neuronal dysfunction, and the development of AD [46, 65–67]. Many hypotheses have been postulated to justify the results of the WHI study. Some aspects related to the form (estradiol vs conjugated equine estrogen) and the route of administration (oral vs transdermal) of estrogen, the choice of progestin (natural vs synthetic progestins), the high doses administered, and the type of treatment regimen (continuous vs cyclic) might be deserving of consideration (reviewed in [68–70]). The investigators also suggest that the negative results may be linked to the increased risk of stroke reported in the steroid treatment group. The relationship between microinfarcts in the brain and susceptibility to AD is most likely to be related but has not yet been well characterized [71].

It would seem, therefore, that even in the face of evidence supporting the protective role of estrogen on cognition and AD, the current controversy clearly reveals that falling levels of steroid hormones that accompany menopause/andropause cannot sufficiently explain patterns of age-related cognitive decline and AD susceptibility.

5. A Gonadotropin Evidence-Based Hypothesis for AD: High Gonadotropin vs Low Estrogen

In light of some findings challenging the protective role of estrogens in AD, as detailed above, it is our view that the evidence, so far, points to the probability that the differential effects of HRT may be, at least partially,

dependent on secondary hormonal changes in gonadotropins such as luteinizing hormone (LH). In support of this hypothesis, the levels of gonadotropins including LH are highest during perimenopause and early menopause [72], when HRT has been observed to be most successful in preventing dementia [73, 74].

Each hormone of the hypothalamic-pituitary-gonadal (HPG) axis, including hypothalamic gonadotropin releasing hormone (GnRH), LH, follicle stimulating hormone (FSH), estrogen, progesterone, testosterone, activin, inhibin, and follistatin, is involved in regulating reproductive function by participating in a complex feedback loop. Hypothalamic secretion of GnRH initiates the feedback process by stimulating the anterior pituitary to secrete the gonadotropins, LH and FSH. These gonadotropins then bind to receptors on the gonads and stimulate oogenesis/spermatogenesis as well as the production of the sex steroids. Sex steroids complete the negative feedback loop by decreasing GnRH and gonadotropin secretion from the hypothalamus and pituitary gland (reviewed in [75]).

The balance of this feedback loop can shift during menopause (and ''andropause'') and result in an increase in the production of gonadotropins such as LH and FSH. In postmenopausal women, changes mediated by decreased action of estrogen [76] result in large increases in the concentration of serum LH and FSH [77]. Likewise, men (but to a lesser degree than women) also experience an increase in these hormones as their reproductive function declines during andropause [78]. Surprisingly, despite these well-documented hormonal changes, the effects of loss of negative feedback and consequent increased circulating gonadotropins on the aging brain remain largely unexplored. This may be because these hormones are traditionally considered to be involved in peripheral nervous system and not CNS function.

Evidence suggests, however, that gonadotropins such as LH also have CNS function. It is recognized that significant elevations of LH are found in vulnerable neuronal populations in AD as compared to controls [76]. LH, like estrogen, is capable of modulating cognitive behavior [79]. Luteinizing hormone receptors (LHR) are present in the brain [80–82] and, like estrogen receptors, are highly expressed in the hippocampus [80], which, as detailed above, is an age-sensitive, highly plastic area of the brain, crucial in the modulation of the types of cognition affected by aging and severely deteriorated in AD. LH itself has been found in the cytoplasm of pyramidal neurons of normal subjects, but in increased concentrations in AD brain compared to control [83]. This is likely due to the fact that LH and FSH are present in the cerebrospinal fluid of postmenopausal women (with LH higher than FSH in its cerebrospinal fluid to serum ratio) [84] as well as the fact that LH is known to cross the blood-brain barrier [79], again suggesting effects outside the reproductive system [85]. A study attempting to elucidate the downstream

consequences of binding of brain LH to its receptors showed increased expression of steroidogenic acute regulator protein, which regulates the first step in steroidogenesis, in vulnerable neurons and other cell types in AD brains as compared to controls [86]. Of particular importance was the finding that steroidogenic acute regulator expression colocalized with LHR expression. The authors suggest that LH binding to LHR in AD susceptible neurons induces potentially pathogenic signaling events in the brain and that the LH-regulated steroidogenic pathways may play a role in AD. LH represents the only factor, thus far, that explains the gender predisposition in the incidence of AD as well as its reversal in Down's syndrome [87]. In the normal population, where women have a higher prevalence of AD, LH is higher in women but in Down's syndrome, where serum LH is higher in men despite, sex steroid levels being comparable to the general population, men are at a higher risk of developing AD-type changes [88]. LH, unlike other hormones of the HPG axis, is highest during perimenopause and early menopause [72] when HRT has been observed to be most successful in preventing dementia [73].

As a consequence of these observations, there is growing evidence supporting a role for gonadotropins, particularly LH, in AD pathogenesis [89]. A twofold increase in circulating gonadotropins has been reported in patients with AD compared to age-matched controls [90, 91]. Of paramount importance in elucidating disease pathogenesis is the understanding of regional and temporal selectivity of neuronal death in AD. Lei *et al.*[80] have shown that regional expression of LH receptors in the brain corresponds to regional vulnerability seen in AD with the highest neuronal density being in the hippocampus. We have found correspondingly significantly elevated LH in vulnerable neuronal regions in AD as compared to controls [83]. Such increases appear to be a very early change, serving to predict neuronal populations at risk of degeneration and death. Elevations in LH parallel the ectopic expression of cell cycle and oxidative markers that represent one of the initiating pathologic changes preceding neuronal degeneration by decades [92, 93]. The highest concentrations of the hormone, human chorionic gonadotropin, which is homologous to LH, also correspond to the time of most rapid cell proliferation (i.e., the fetal period). This leads us to suspect that neuronal elevations in LH could play a major role in the mitogenic abnormalities documented in AD [83].

While AD is not traditionally characterized as a disease of cell division, it has been postulated that the unscheduled initiation of a mitotic division cycle in a mature, normally postmitotic neuron leads to abortive reactivation of a variety of cell cycle components and ultimately to the demise of the cells in AD [94–96]. The involvement of cell cycle-related events in the etiology of AD is supported by neuronal changes such as the ectopic expression of numerous markers of the cell cycle [97], organelle kinesis [98], and cytoskeletal alterations including tau phosphorylation [99]. Reactivation of the mitotic

signaling pathways by extracellular receptor kinase (ERK) and by mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) [16, 100, 101], which are coincidentally also known to be upregulated by gonadotropins, including LH [102], lend even more compelling support to this theory. Furthermore, such mitotic alterations are not only one of the earliest neuronal abnormalities in the disease [97, 101, 103], but also would lead to all of the other pathological changes reported in the disease [94]. LH is a powerful mitogen [102], and given the temporal and spatial overlap with mitotic changes in AD [83] (unpublished observations), it is likely that elevations in LH are responsible for inappropriate cell cycle reentry in neurons [83, 94]. Admittedly, this does not preclude the involvement of the other hormones of the HPG axis that also exhibit significant changes in serum concentrations later in life.

In testing the hypothesis that LH plays a role in cognition and AD, we have shown in experimental studies that, while LH did not alter AβPP expression in a neuroblastoma cell line, LH did alter AβPP processing toward the amyloidogenic pathway *in vitro* by increased secretion and insolubility of Aβ, decreased secretion of AβPP, and increased levels of AβPP-C99 [104]. In the same study, treatment with leuprolide acetate, a selective GnRH agonist that has been shown to markedly reduce LH by downregulating the pituitary GnRH receptors [104, 105], led to 3.5- and 1.5-fold reduction in total brain Aβ 1–40 and 1–42 concentrations, respectively, in C57B1/6J mice [104]. We have recently found that by experimentally abolishing LH using leuprolide acetate in an animal model of AD, the AβPP transgenic mouse improved cognitive performance and decreased Aβ deposition [106]. Additionally, overexpression of LH in a transgenic mouse model leads to cognitive deficits and neuronal function/plasticity changes, the effects of which are believed to be receptor specific [107]. These findings, together with data indicating that LH modulates AβPP processing *in vivo* and *in vitro* [104] toward amyloidogenic pathways, indicate that LH may play a crucial and direct role in age- and AD-related cognitive and associated neuronal function decline. Even more compelling evidence that LH may be a key player in AD is seen in the results of a recently completed phase II clinical trial (http://clinicaltrials.gov/ct/show/nct00076440?orden=6) which show evidence of stabilization in cognitive impairment and activities of daily living in female AD patients treated with high doses of leuprolide acetate (http://www.secinfo.com/d14D5a.z6483.htp, pp. 56–64).

6. Conclusion

Several reports in the literature support a protective role for estrogen on cognition and preventing AD. Results of animal and human studies, however, indicate that the "window of opportunity" for HRT is at the time of

menopause or immediately after ovariectomy. HRT administration following a considerable delay after menopause or ovariectomy has little beneficial effect on cognition. As a consequence of these observations, and the fact that LH concentrations are significantly higher in AD patients than in age-matched controls, there is growing evidence supporting a role for gonadotropins, particularly LH, in AD pathogenesis. The regional and temporal selectivity of neuronal cell death in AD, the regional expression of LH receptors, and the LH concentration in vulnerable brain areas lend credence to this theory. Gender dichotomy in AD prevalence, as well as gender reversal in Down's syndrome, makes it reasonable to believe that the observed beneficial effects of HRT are mediated, at least in part, through LH suppression. The most compelling evidence, however, is the response to high dose leuprolide acetate, a selective GnRH agonist, seen in female AD patients who show stabilization of cognitive impairment [108, 109]. In order to fine-tune this therapy, the intricate molecular mechanisms involved in producing this response, the effect on neuronal mediators, and structural changes in vulnerable brain regions have to be pursued.

References

[1] Bird TD, Miller BL. Alzheimer's disease and other dementias. In: Kasper DL, Braunwald E, Fauci A, Hauser S, Longo D, Jameson JL, editors. Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine. New York: McGraw-Hill Professional, 2004: 2393–2401.
[2] Smith MA. Alzheimer disease. Int Rev Neurobiol 1998; 42:1–54.
[3] Hebert LE, Scherr PA, Bienias JL, Bennett DA, Evans DA. Alzheimer disease in the US population: Prevalence estimates using the 2000 census. Arch Neurol 2003; 60:1119–1122.
[4] Katzman R. Alzheimer's disease. N Engl J Med 1986; 314:964–973.
[5] McDowd JM, Craik FI. Effects of aging and task difficulty on divided attention performance. J Exp Psychol Hum Percept Perform 1988; 14:267–280.
[6] Lindeboom J, Weinstein H. Neuropsychology of cognitive ageing, minimal cognitive impairment, Alzheimer's disease, and vascular cognitive impairment. Eur J Pharmacol 2004; 490:83–86.
[7] Weber RJ, Brown LT, Weldon JK. Cognitive maps of environmental knowledge and preference in nursing home patients. Exp Aging Res 1978; 4:157–174.
[8] Selkoe DJ. Alzheimer's disease: Genotypes, phenotypes, and treatments. Science 1997; 275:630–631.
[9] Irizarry MC, Soriano F, McNamara M, Page KJ, Schenk D, Games D, et al. Abeta deposition is associated with neuropil changes, but not with overt neuronal loss in the human amyloid precursor protein V717F (PDAPP) transgenic mouse. J Neurosci 1997; 17:7053–7059.
[10] Perry G, Nunomura A, Raina AK, Smith MA. Amyloid-beta junkies. Lancet 2000; 355:757.
[11] Obrenovich ME, Joseph JA, Atwood CS, Perry G, Smith MA. Amyloid-beta: A (life) preserver for the brain. Neurobiol Aging 2002; 23:1097–1099.

[12] Rottkamp CA, Atwood CS, Joseph JA, Nunomura A, Perry G, Smith MA. The state versus amyloid-beta: The trial of the most wanted criminal in Alzheimer disease. Peptides 2002; 23:1333–1341.
[13] Lee HG, Casadesus G, Zhu X, Takeda A, Perry G, Smith MA. Challenging the amyloid cascade hypothesis: Senile plaques and amyloid-beta as protective adaptations to Alzheimer disease. Ann N Y Acad Sci 2004; 1019:1–4.
[14] Trojanowski JQ, Clark CM, Arai H, Lee VM. Elevated levels of tau in cerebrospinal fluid: Implications for the antemortem diagnosis of Alzheimer's disease. J Alzheimers Dis 1999; 1:297–305.
[15] Avila J. Tau aggregation into fibrillar polymers: Taupathies. FEBS Lett 2000; 476:89–92.
[16] Zhu X, Lee HG, Raina AK, Perry G, Smith MA. The role of mitogen-activated protein kinase pathways in Alzheimer's disease. Neurosignals 2002; 11:270–281.
[17] Perry G, Castellani RJ, Hirai K, Smith MA. Reactive oxygen species mediate cellular damage in Alzheimer disease. J Alzheimers Dis 1998; 1:45–55.
[18] Perry G, Sayre LM, Atwood CS, Castellani R, Cash A, Rottkamp CA, et al. The role of iron and copper in the aetiology of neurodegenerative disorders: Therapeutic implications. CNS Drugs 2002; 16:339–352.
[19] Atwood CS, Huang X, Moir RD, Smith MA, Tanzi RE, Roher AE, et al. Neuroinflammatory responses in the Alzheimer's disease brain promote the oxidative post-translation modification of amyloid deposits. In: Iqbal K, Sisodia SS, Winblad B, editors. Alzheimer's Disease: Advances in Etiology, Pathogenesis and Therapeutics. Chichester, UK: John Wiley & Sons, Ltd., 2001: 341–361.
[20] Smith MA, Sayre LM, Monnier VM, Perry G. Radical AGEing in Alzheimer's disease. Trends Neurosci 1995; 18:172–176.
[21] Smith MA, Perry G, Richey PL, Sayre LM, Anderson VE, Beal MF, et al. Oxidative damage in Alzheimer's. Nature 1996; 382:120–121.
[22] Smith MA, Harris PL, Sayre LM, Perry G. Iron accumulation in Alzheimer disease is a source of redox-generated free radicals. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1997; 94:9866–9868.
[23] Sayre LM, Perry G, Harris PL, Liu Y, Schubert KA, Smith MA. *In situ* oxidative catalysis by neurofibrillary tangles and senile plaques in Alzheimer's disease: A central role for bound transition metals. J Neurochem 2000; 74:270–279.
[24] Zhu X, Raina AK, Perry G, Smith MA. Alzheimer's disease: The two-hit hypothesis. Lancet Neurol 2004; 3:219–226.
[25] Fratiglioni L, Viitanen M, von Strauss E, Tontodonati V, Herlitz A, Winblad B. Very old women at highest risk of dementia and Alzheimer's disease: Incidence data from the Kungsholmen Project, Stockholm. Neurology 1997; 48:132–138.
[26] Letenneur L, Commenges D, Dartigues JF, Barberger-Gateau P. Incidence of dementia and Alzheimer's disease in elderly community residents of south-western France. Int J Epidemiol 1994; 23:1256–1261.
[27] Jorm AF, Korten AE, Henderson AS. The prevalence of dementia: A quantitative integration of the literature. Acta Psychiatr Scand 1987; 76:465–479.
[28] Breitner JC, Silverman JM, Mohs RC, Davis KL. Familial aggregation in Alzheimer's disease: Comparison of risk among relatives of early- and late-onset cases, and among male and female relatives in successive generations. Neurology 1988; 38:207–212.
[29] Rocca WA, Hofman A, Brayne C, Breteler MMB, Clarke M, Copeland JRM, et al. Frequency and distribution of Alzheimer's disease in Europe: A collaborative study of 1980–1990 prevalence findings. The EURODEM-Prevalence Research Group. Ann Neurol 1991; 30:381–390.
[30] McGonigal G, Thomas B, McQuade C, Starr JM, MacLennan WJ, Whalley LJ. Epidemiology of Alzheimer's presenile dementia in Scotland, 1974–88. BMJ 1993; 306:680–683.

[31] Jorm AF, Jolley D. The incidence of dementia: A meta-analysis. Neurology 1998; 51: 728–733.
[32] Stam FC, Wigboldus JM, Smeulders AW. Age incidence of senile brain amyloidosis. Pathol Res Pract 1986; 181:558–562.
[33] Sherwin BB. Estrogen and cognitive functioning in women. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 1998; 217:17–22.
[34] Birge SJ, McEwen BS, Wise PM. Effects of estrogen deficiency on brain function. Implications for the treatment of postmenopausal women. Postgrad Med 2001; Spec No:11–16.
[35] Genazzani AR, Spinetti A, Gallo R, Bernardi F. Menopause and the central nervous system: Intervention options. Maturitas 1999; 31:103–110.
[36] Manly JJ, Merchant CA, Jacobs DM, Small SA, Bell K, Ferin M, et al. Endogenous estrogen levels and Alzheimer's disease among postmenopausal women. Neurology 2000; 54:833–837.
[37] Brookmeyer R, Gray S, Kawas C. Projections of Alzheimer's disease in the United States and the public health impact of delaying disease onset. Am J Public Health 1998; 88:1337–1342.
[38] Henderson VW, Paganini-Hill A, Emanuel CK, Dunn ME, Buckwalter JG. Estrogen replacement therapy in older women. Comparisons between Alzheimer's disease cases and nondemented control subjects. Arch Neurol 1994; 51:896–900.
[39] Tang MX, Jacobs D, Stern Y, Marder K, Schofield P, Gurland B, et al. Effect of oestrogen during menopause on risk and age at onset of Alzheimer's disease. Lancet 1996; 348: 429–432.
[40] Kawas C, Resnick S, Morrison A, Brookmeyer R, Corrada M, Zonderman A, et al. A prospective study of estrogen replacement therapy and the risk of developing Alzheimer's disease: The Baltimore Longitudinal Study of Aging. Neurology 1997; 48: 1517–1521.
[41] Sherwin BB. Can estrogen keep you smart? Evidence from clinical studies. J Psychiatry Neurosci 1999; 24:315–321.
[42] Sherwin BB. Estrogen and cognitive aging in women. Trends Pharmacol Sci 2002; 23:527–534.
[43] Sherwin BB. Surgical menopause, estrogen, and cognitive function in women: What do the findings tell us? Ann N Y Acad Sci 2005; 1052:3–10.
[44] Sherwin BB. Estrogen and cognitive aging in women. Neuroscience 2006; 138:1021–1026.
[45] Resnick SM, Henderson VW. Hormone therapy and risk of Alzheimer disease: A critical time. JAMA 2002; 288:2170–2172.
[46] Shumaker SA, Legault C, Rapp SR, Thal L, Wallace RB, Ockene JK, et al. Estrogen plus progestin and the incidence of dementia and mild cognitive impairment in postmenopausal women: The Women's Health Initiative Memory Study: A randomized controlled trial. JAMA 2003; 289:2651–2662.
[47] Sherwin BB. Estrogen and cognitive functioning in women. Endocr Rev 2003; 24:133–151.
[48] Petanceska SS, Nagy V, Frail D, Gandy S. Ovariectomy and 17beta-estradiol modulate the levels of Alzheimer's amyloid beta peptides in brain. Neurology 2000; 54:2212–2217.
[49] Goodman Y, Bruce AJ, Cheng B, Mattson MP. Estrogens attenuate and corticosterone exacerbates excitotoxicity, oxidative injury, and amyloid beta-peptide toxicity in hippocampal neurons. J Neurochem 1996; 66:1836–1844.
[50] McEwen BS, Alves SE, Bulloch K, Weiland NG. Ovarian steroids and the brain: Implications for cognition and aging. Neurology 1997; 48:S8–S15.
[51] Bi R, Foy MR, Vouimba RM, Thompson RF, Baudry M. Cyclic changes in estradiol regulate synaptic plasticity through the MAP kinase pathway. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2001; 98:13391–13395.

[52] Choi JM, Romeo RD, Brake WG, Bethea CL, Rosenwaks Z, McEwen BS. Estradiol increases pre- and post-synaptic proteins in the CA1 region of the hippocampus in female rhesus macaques (*Macaca mulatta*). Endocrinology 2003; 144:4734–4738.
[53] Pinkerton JV, Henderson VW. Estrogen and cognition, with a focus on Alzheimer's disease. Semin Reprod Med 2005; 23:172–179.
[54] Conrad CD, Lupien SJ, McEwen BS. Support for a bimodal role for type II adrenal steroid receptors in spatial memory. Neurobiol Learn Mem 1999; 72:39–46.
[55] McEwen BS. Plasticity of the hippocampus: Adaptation to chronic stress and allostatic load. Ann N Y Acad Sci 2001; 933:265–277.
[56] McEwen BS. Stress and hippocampal plasticity. Annu Rev Neurosci 1999; 22:105–122.
[57] Jellinck PH, Lee SJ, McEwen BS. Metabolism of dehydroepiandrosterone by rat hippocampal cells in culture: Possible role of aromatization and 7-hydroxylation in neuroprotection. J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol 2001; 78:313–317.
[58] Sherwin BB. Steroid hormones and cognitive functioning in aging men: A mini-review. J Mol Neurosci 2003; 20:385–393.
[59] Carlson LE, Sherwin BB. Higher levels of plasma estradiol and testosterone in healthy elderly men compared with age-matched women may protect aspects of explicit memory. Menopause 2000; 7:168–177.
[60] Seftel A. Memory loss as reported symptom of andropause. J Urol 2002; 168:862.
[61] Mulligan T, Godschalk M. Male menopause. Drugs Today (Barc) 1998; 34:455–461.
[62] Maki P, Hogervorst E. The menopause and HRT. HRT and cognitive decline. Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab 2003; 17:105–122.
[63] Schupf N, Kapell D, Nightingale B, Rodriguez A, Tycko B, Mayeux R. Earlier onset of Alzheimer's disease in men with Down syndrome. Neurology 1998; 50:991–995.
[64] Espeland MA, Rapp SR, Shumaker SA, Brunner R, Manson JE, Sherwin BB, et al. Conjugated equine estrogens and global cognitive function in postmenopausal women: Women's Health Initiative Memory Study. JAMA 2004; 291:2959–2968.
[65] Rapp SR, Espeland MA, Shumaker SA, Henderson VW, Brunner RL, Manson JE, et al. Effect of estrogen plus progestin on global cognitive function in postmenopausal women: The Women's Health Initiative Memory Study: A randomized controlled trial. JAMA 2003; 289:2663–2672.
[66] Mulnard RA. Estrogen as a treatment for Alzheimer disease. JAMA 2000; 284:307–308.
[67] Mulnard RA, Cotman CW, Kawas C, van Dyck CH, Sano M, Doody R, et al. Estrogen replacement therapy for treatment of mild to moderate Alzheimer disease: A randomized controlled trial. Alzheimer's Disease Cooperative Study. JAMA 2000; 283:1007–1015.
[68] Gleason CE, Cholerton B, Carlsson CM, Johnson SC, Asthana S. Neuroprotective effects of female sex steroids in humans: Current controversies and future directions. Cell Mol Life Sci 2005; 62:299–312.
[69] Baum LW. Sex, hormones, and Alzheimer's disease. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci 2005; 60:736–743.
[70] Yaffe K. Hormone therapy and the brain: Déjà vu all over again? JAMA 2003; 289: 2717–2719.
[71] Snowdon DA, Greiner LH, Mortimer JA, Riley KP, Greiner PA, Markesbery WR. Brain infarction and the clinical expression of Alzheimer disease. The Nun Study. JAMA 1997; 277:813–817.
[72] Burger HG. The endocrinology of the menopause. Maturitas 1996; 23:129–136.
[73] Henderson VW. Hormone therapy and Alzheimer's disease: Benefit or harm. Expert Opin Pharmacother 2004; 5:389–406.

[74] Zandi PP, Carlson MC, Plassman BL, Welsh-Bohmer KA, Mayer LS, Steffens DC, et al. Hormone replacement therapy and incidence of Alzheimer disease in older women: The Cache County Study. JAMA 2002; 288:2123–2129.
[75] Genazzani AR, Gastaldi M, Bidzinska B, Mercuri N, Genazzani AD, Nappi RE, et al. The brain as a target organ of gonadal steroids. Psychoneuroendocrinology 1992; 17:385–390.
[76] Couzinet B, Schaison G. The control of gonadotrophin secretion by ovarian steroids. Hum Reprod 1993; 8(Suppl. 2):97–101.
[77] Chakravarti S, Collins WP, Forecast JD, Newton JR, Oram DH, Studd JW. Hormonal profiles after the menopause. Br Med J 1976; 2:784–787.
[78] Neaves WB, Johnson L, Porter JC, Parker CR, Jr, Petty CS. Leydig cell numbers, daily sperm production, and serum gonadotropin levels in aging men. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1984; 59:756–763.
[79] Lukacs H, Hiatt ES, Lei ZM, Rao CV. Peripheral and intracerebroventricular administration of human chorionic gonadotropin alters several hippocampus-associated behaviors in cycling female rats. Horm Behav 1995; 29:42–58.
[80] Lei ZM, Rao CV, Kornyei JL, Licht P, Hiatt ES. Novel expression of human chorionic gonadotropin/luteinizing hormone receptor gene in brain. Endocrinology 1993; 132: 2262–2270.
[81] Apaja PM, Harju KT, Aatsinki JT, Petaja-Repo UE, Rajaniemi HJ. Identification and structural characterization of the neuronal luteinizing hormone receptor associated with sensory systems. J Biol Chem 2004; 279:1899–1906.
[82] Hamalainen T, Poutanen M, Huhtaniemi I. Age- and sex-specific promoter function of a 2-kilobase 5′-flanking sequence of the murine luteinizing hormone receptor gene in transgenic mice. Endocrinology 1999; 140:5322–5329.
[83] Bowen RL, Smith MA, Harris PL, Kubat Z, Martins RN, Castellani RJ, et al. Elevated luteinizing hormone expression colocalizes with neurons vulnerable to Alzheimer's disease pathology. J Neurosci Res 2002; 70:514–518.
[84] Temeli E, Oprescu M, Coculescu M, Alessandrescu D. LH and FSH levels in serum and cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) of human fetus. Endocrinologie 1985; 23:55–59.
[85] Lei ZM, Rao CV. Neural actions of luteinizing hormone and human chorionic gonadotropin. Semin Reprod Med 2001; 19:103–109.
[86] Webber KM, Stocco DM, Casadesus G, Bowen RL, Atwood CS, Previll LA, et al. Steroidogenic Acute Regulatory Protein (StAR): Evidence of gonadotropin-induced steroidogenesis in Alzheimer disease. Mol Neurodegener 2006; 1:14.
[87] Smith MA, Perry G, Atwood CS, Bowen RL. Estrogen replacement and risk of Alzheimer disease. JAMA 2003; 289:1100[author reply 1101–1102].
[88] Hsiang YH, Berkovitz GD, Bland GL, Migeon CJ, Warren AC. Gonadal function in patients with Down syndrome. Am J Med Genet 1987; 27:449–458.
[89] Barron AM, Verdile G, Martins RN. The role of gonadotropins in Alzheimer's disease: Potential neurodegenerative mechanisms. Endocrine 2006; 29:257–269.
[90] Bowen RL, Isley JP, Atkinson RL. An association of elevated serum gonadotropin concentrations and Alzheimer disease? J Neuroendocrinol 2000; 12:351–354.
[91] Short RA, Bowen RL, O'Brien PC, Graff-Radford NR. Elevated gonadotropin levels in patients with Alzheimer disease. Mayo Clin Proc 2001; 76:906–909.
[92] Ogawa O, Lee HG, Zhu X, Raina A, Harris PL, Castellani RJ, et al. Increased p27, an essential component of cell cycle control, in Alzheimer's disease. Aging Cell 2003; 2: 105–110.
[93] Nunomura A, Perry G, Aliev G, Hirai K, Takeda A, Balraj EK, et al. Oxidative damage is the earliest event in Alzheimer disease. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol 2001; 60:759–767.

[94] Raina AK, Zhu X, Rottkamp CA, Monteiro M, Takeda A, Smith MA. Cyclin toward dementia: Cell cycle abnormalities and abortive oncogenesis in Alzheimer disease. J Neurosci Res 2000; 61:128–133.
[95] Bowser R, Smith MA. Cell cycle proteins in Alzheimer's disease: Plenty of wheels but no cycle. J Alzheimer's Dis 2002; 4:249–254.
[96] Obrenovich ME, Raina AK, Ogawa O, Atwood CS, Smith MA. Alzheimer disease—A new beginning, or a final exit? In: Copani A, Nicoletti F, editors. The Cell Cycle and Neuronal Cell Death. Georgestown, Texas: Landes Bioscience, 2005: 79–93.
[97] McShea A, Harris PL, Webster KR, Wahl AF, Smith MA. Abnormal expression of the cell cycle regulators P16 and CDK4 in Alzheimer's disease. Am J Pathol 1997; 150:1933–1939.
[98] Hirai K, Aliev G, Nunomura A, Fujioka H, Russell RL, Atwood CS, et al. Mitochondrial abnormalities in Alzheimers disease. J Neurosci 2001; 21:3017–3023.
[99] Zhu X, Rottkamp CA, Boux H, Takeda A, Perry G, Smith MA. Activation of p38 kinase links tau phosphorylation, oxidative stress, and cell cycle-related events in Alzheimer disease. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol 2000; 59:880–888.
[100] Perry G, Roder H, Nunomura A, Takeda A, Friedlich AL, Zhu X, et al. Activation of neuronal extracellular receptor kinase (ERK) in Alzheimer disease links oxidative stress to abnormal phosphorylation. Neuroreport 1999; 10:2411–2415.
[101] Zhu X, Castellani RJ, Takeda A, Nunomura A, Atwood CS, Perry G, et al. Differential activation of neuronal ERK, JNK/SAPK and p38 in Alzheimer disease: The 'two hit' hypothesis. Mech Ageing Dev 2001; 123:39–46.
[102] Harris D, Bonfil D, Chuderland D, Kraus S, Seger R, Naor Z. Activation of MAPK cascades by GnRH: ERK and Jun N-terminal kinase are involved in basal and GnRH-stimulated activity of the glycoprotein hormone LHbeta-subunit promoter. Endocrinology 2002; 143:1018–1025.
[103] Vincent I, Zheng JH, Dickson DW, Kress Y, Davies P. Mitotic phosphoepitopes precede paired helical filaments in Alzheimer's disease. Neurobiol Aging 1998; 19:287–296.
[104] Bowen RL, Verdile G, Liu T, Parlow AF, Perry G, Smith MA, et al. Luteinizing hormone, a reproductive regulator that modulates the processing of amyloid-beta precursor protein and amyloid-beta deposition. J Biol Chem 2004; 279:20539–20545.
[105] Schally A, Nagy A. Targeted cytotoxic analogs of luteinizing hormone-releasing hormone: A reply. Eur J Endocrinol 2001; 144:559.
[106] Casadesus G, Webber KM, Atwood CS, Pappolla MA, Perry G, Bowen RL, et al. Luteinizing hormone modulates cognition and amyloid-beta deposition in Alzheimer APP transgenic mice. Biochim Biophys Acta 2006; 1762:447–452.
[107] Casadesus G, Milliken EL, Webber KM, Bowen RL, Lei Z, Rao CV, et al. Increases in luteinizing hormone are associated with declines in cognitive performance. Mol Cell Endocrinol 2007; 269:107–111.
[108] Reynolds BD, Smith MA, Gregory CW. Luteinizing hormone: A unifying hypothesis for Alzheimer disease etiology, pathogenesis and treatment. Alzheimer's Dementia 2006; 2(Suppl. 1):S621.
[109] LaPlante BJ, Powers CF, Gault JL, Reynolds BD, Gregory CW. Stabilization of cognitive decline in Alzheimer's disease following treatment with leuprolide acetate. Alzheimer's Dementia 2006; 2(Suppl):S620–S621.

This page intentionally left blank

IMMUNOSUPPRESSION ROUTED VIA THE KYNURENINE PATHWAY: A BIOCHEMICAL AND PATHOPHYSIOLOGIC APPROACH

Álvaro González,* Nerea Varo,* Estibaliz Alegre,* Angel Díaz,* and Ignacio Melero[†,‡]

***Laboratory of Biochemistry, University Clinic of Navarra, Avda Pio XII 36, Pamplona 31008, Spain**
[†]Centro de Investigación Médica Aplicada (CIMA), University of Navarra, Spain
[‡]Department of Internal Medicine, University Clinic of Navarra, Spain

1. Abstract 156
2. Introduction 157
3. Trp-Kynurenine Degradation Pathway 157
   3.1. Comparison Between IDO and TDO 159
   3.2. Distribution of the Kynurenine Pathway Enzymes 159
4. Biochemistry of IDO 160
   4.1. Molecular Biology of the Indo Gene 160
   4.2. Catalytic Properties of IDO 161
   4.3. Posttranslational Regulation of the IDO Activity 161
5. IDO Induction 162
   5.1. Induction of IDO by IFNs 162
   5.2. Induction of IDO by Cytolytic T-Lymphocyte-Associated Antigen 4-Immunoglobulin Fusion Protein 162
   5.3. Induction of IDO by Unmethylated Cytidyl Guanosyl Oligodeoxynucleotides 163
   5.4. Induction of IDO by 4-1BB 163
   5.5. Signaling Pathways Involved in IDO Induction 164
6. Measurement of Kynurenines in Human Biological Fluids 164
7. Nitric Oxide and the Kynurenine Pathway 166
8. Role of IDO in the Defense Against Infectious Pathogens 167
9. IDO as an Immunosuppressive Molecule 167
   9.1. IDO-Mediated Suppression by Innate Immunity 168
   9.2. IDO-Mediated Suppression by Adaptive Immunity 169
   9.3. Mechanism of Suppression 171
10. Protective Role of IDO in Rejection of the Fetus During Pregnancy 174

0065-2423/08 $35.00
DOI: 10.1016/S0065-2423(07)00007-8

11. Clinical Implications of the Immunosuppression Provoked by the Kynurenine Pathway 176
11.1. Cancer Immune Evasion by IDO Expression 176
11.2. Autoimmune Diseases 179
11.3. Transplantation 180
11.4. HIV Immunoescape by Inducing Kynurenine Pathway 181
11.5. Cardiovascular Diseases 182
11.6. Neurological and Psychiatric Diseases 183
12. Conclusions 184
References 186

Abbreviations

APCs	antigen-presenting cells
CpG	cytidyl guanosyl
CTLA-4	cytolytic T-lymphocyte antigen-4
DCs	dendritic cells
GAS	interferon-γ activating site
IDO	indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase
IFN	interferon
IRF	interferon regulatory factor
ISRE	interferon-stimulated response element
LPS	lipopolysaccharide
NAD	nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide
NK	natural killer
NO	nitric oxide
TDO	Trp 2,3-dioxygenase

1. Abstract

In the past years, it has been shown that kynurenines pathway is a regulator of both the innate and the adaptive immune responses. Particularly, the initial enzyme of this pathway, indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase (IDO), is implicated in maintaining tolerance during pregnancy, and also can be expressed in tumors to avoid the immune attack. In this chapter, we will describe how the kynurenine pathway affects the immune system with important implications both in physiology and in pathology. The incorrect activation or blockade suppressive properties of the kynurenine pathway are also implicated in a number of other diseases such as AIDS or autoimmune diseases.

2. Introduction

Most of the research effort in the immune system has been oriented to discover the mechanisms that activate the cellular and the humoral responses. However, it is beyond any doubt that there are also peripheral mechanisms that maintain tolerance and participate in health and disease. For example, self-reactive T cells that escape clonal deletion in the thymus must be suppressed by peripheral tolerance to avoid autoimmune diseases. Also, during evolution, a mechanism of maternal tolerance has been developed to avoid fetal rejection. Different mechanisms that contribute to peripheral tolerance have been described [1], and seem to act in an overlapping fashion. The kynurenines pathway has recently joined this selected group [2], and its importance is progressively being unraveled.

Tryptophan (Trp) is the rarest of the 20 amino acids found in proteins, and is an essential amino acid in animals. Apart from being one of the bricks that constitute proteins, it is the precursor of important molecules such as serotonin, melatonin, and nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD). Kynurenine was initially isolated by Kotake in 1926 and Trp degradation products through the route initiated by IDO are collectively known as kynurenines. The kynurenine pathway was initially situated in the context of the immune system as a part of the antitumoral [3] and intracellular antimicrobial [4] defense machinery. More recently, the kynurenine pathway has been shown to be a regulator of both the innate and the adaptive immune responses.

Although there is controversy related to the mechanism involved in suppression, and even in the type of immune cells that express IDO activity, it is fairly clear that the kynurenine pathway plays a pivotal role in regulating the balance between activation and inhibition of the immune system. In this chapter, we will describe how the kynurenine pathway affects the immune system with important implications both in physiology and in pathology.

3. Trp-Kynurenine Degradation Pathway

Trp metabolism through the kynurenine pathway is summarized in Fig. 1. Kotane discovered the enzyme that catalyzed the conversion of Trp to *N*-formylkynurenine and named this enzyme Trp pyrrolase, renamed after as Trp 2,3-dioxygenase (TDO, EC 1.13.11.11) [5]. This is one of the two first enzymes that initiate Trp degradation through the kynurenine pathway; the other is IDO (EC 1.13.11.17) [6, 7]. These enzymes are the rate-limiting enzymes of the Trp degradation pathway and are tightly regulated. Both enzymes catalyze the oxidative cleavage of the indole ring of Trp

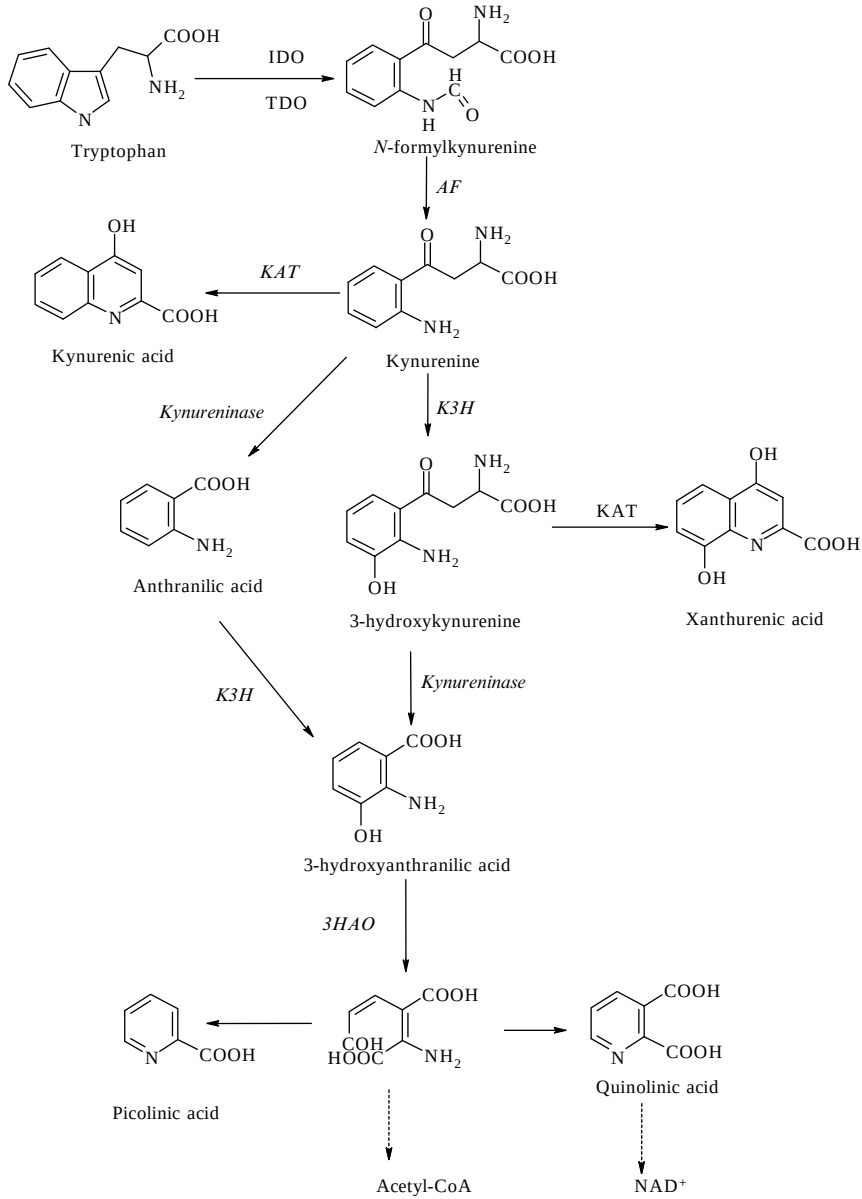


FIG. 1. Scheme of the kynurenine metabolic pathway in mammalian cells, in which indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase (IDO) catalyzes the initial and rate-limiting step. Most of the Trp not used for protein synthesis is metabolized through this pathway. IDO: indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase; TDO: tryptophan 2,3-dioxygenase; AF: arylformamidase; K3H: kynurenine 3-hydroxylase; KAT: kynurenine aminotransferase; 3HAO: 3-hydroxyanthranilic acid oxidase.

rendering *N*-formylkynurenine, which loses the formyl group to form the more stable product kynurenine. This reaction occurs spontaneously in acidic conditions or catalyzed by arylformamidase (EC 3.5.1.9). The aromatic ring of kynurenine is hydroxylated by the flavin-dependent kynurenine 3-monooxygenase (EC 1.14.13.9) yielding 3-hydroxykynurenine. Both kynurenine and 3-hydroxykynurenine undergo the conversion to anthranilic acid or 3-hydroxyanthranilic acid by a reaction catalyzed by kynureninase (EC 3.7.1.3). Alternatively, kynurenine and 3-hydroxykynurenine can be desaminated by the vitamin B6-dependent enzyme kynurenine aminotransferase (EC 2.6.1.7), rendering kynurenic acid or xanthurenic acid, respectively. 3-Hydroxyanthranilic acid can be further metabolized by 3-hydroxyanthranilic acid oxidase (EC 1.13.11.6) to the unstable intermediate aminocarboxymuconic semialdehyde, which is rapidly metabolized to either quinolinic acid or picolinic acid, or totally oxidized to CO_2 and H_2O. Quinolinic acid is a precursor of NAD^+ that links this degradation pathway with the intracellular redox status.

3.1. Comparison Between IDO and TDO

TDO and IDO are the enzymes that generate kynurenine from Trp in humans. These two enzymes notably differ in terms of location, structure, substrate specificity, and regulation [8]. TDO is a constitutive hepatic enzyme consisting of a homotetramer of 167 kDa subunits noncovalently bounded [9]. It shows substrate specificity for L-Trp, which binds with low affinity and uses O_2 in the oxidative ring cleavage. TDO activity is induced by Trp; other inducers are kynurenine, hystidine, tyrosine, and phenylalanine. It has been observed that the enzymatic activity increases after a protein-rich meal and is maintained several hours afterwards [10]. In addition, the gene has a glucocorticoid response element [11].

IDO is a 45-kDa monomeric enzyme with high affinity for Trp, though other indoles such as 5-hydroxy-Trp and serotonin can also serve as substrates. In addition to O_2, superoxide anion can be a source of oxygen in the oxidative reaction.

3.2. Distribution of the Kynurenine Pathway Enzymes

TDO is a hepatic enzyme, while IDO has a wider tissue distribution, with high activity in lungs, small intestine, and placenta, and lower activity in stomach and spleen [12]. In extrahepatic tissues, Trp is mainly metabolized to kynurenine by IDO. Not all the enzymes of the kynurenine pathway are simultaneously expressed in tissues, but hepatocytes are the only cells containing all the enzymes of the kynurenine pathway leading to complete

oxidation of Trp and also to NAD^+ synthesis [10, 13]. It has been shown that enzymes of the kynurenine pathway are differently expressed in tissues depending on the species [14]. In human astrocytes and neurons, there is a low activity of kynurenine 3-hydroxylase, kynureninase, and kynurenine 3,4-dioxygenase, and in lungs there is no detectable activity of kynurenine 3-hydroxylase [15]. Because of the absence of these enzymes, the production of the neurotoxic quinolinic acid is very limited in the brain in normal situations [15], but can be produced during inflammation [16]. In the immune system, monocytes have high kynurenine 3-hydroxylase, kynureninase, and 3-hydroxyanthranilic acid oxidase activities [15]. Once induced by IFN-γ, these cells also have high IDO activity, degrading Trp to quinolinic acid and producing NAD^+[17].

NAD^+ is an essential cofactor in many cellular reactions, and crucial for DNA repair and maintaining the redox balance. Significant amounts of NAD^+ are formed through the TDO-mediated kynurenine catabolic route in the liver [10, 13], but other cells such as astrocytes and neurons depend on extracellular sources of this cofactor [15]. IFN-γ-stimulated macrophages can produce NAD^+, protecting themselves against free radical production [17]. In diets with normal supply of niacin, this route is secondary for the synthesis of NAD^+ and $NADP^+$, but Trp becomes important as a precursor of NAD^+ in niacin-deficient diets. In chronic insufficient supply of Trp and niacin, a vitamin-deficient disease, pellagra, can occur.

4. Biochemistry of IDO

4.1. Molecular Biology of the Indo Gene

The Indo gene is situated in the short arm of chromosome 8, and consists of 10 exons that span 15 kbp [18]. There are no reports on alternative splicing or other posttranscriptional modifications. The human Indo cDNA encodes a single protein of 403 amino acids and 42 kDa [19], which presents 61% homology with murine IDO [20]. This protein has high hydrophobic amino acid content and 5% of carbohydrates [21].

The Indo gene has been conserved during the past 600 million years of evolution related with the Trp metabolism, and in other species has even evolved to perform different functions such as the oxygen transport in IDO-like myoglobin protein found in some gastropod mollusks [22]. Immunoregulation of T-cell immunity was not the initial role of such an ancient enzymatic activity, although it might have been recruited later in evolution for such purposes. We can therefore place this gene in the category of innate

immunity based on its appearance before the evolutive merge of the adaptive immunity [23]. During adaptation, Indo gene could have served as a bridge between innate and adaptative immunity, participating in the antiparasitic and antibacterial defense developed by macrophages, and in the modulation of T cells by dendritic cells (DCs).

4.2. Catalytic Properties of IDO

IDO is a heme-monooxygenase very different from other human heme-monooxygenases such as cytochrome P-450 [24]. The X-ray crystal structure of human IDO shows two α-helical domains with the heme group between them. The catalytic mechanism consists of the binding of O_2 to the ferrous heme, and the binding of L-Trp that enables the interaction between the –NH group of indole and the proximal atom of dioxygen producing *N*-formyl kynurenine [24]. In the absence of a reducing environment, Fe^{2+} is easily oxidized to Fe^{3+} by inactivating the enzyme. Dihydroflavin mononucleotide or tetrahydrobiopteridine has been proposed as a cofactor that maintains IDO-iron in a reduced state *in vivo* [25].

IDO has a wide substrate specificity, and catalyzes the oxidation of L- and D-Trp; however, high concentrations of L-Trp inhibit the activity of the enzyme [26]. 1-Methyl-Trp is a Trp analog that competitively inhibits IDO [27], but not TDO. 1-Methyl-Trp inhibits transport system L [28], therefore blocking the Trp entry into the cell and affecting protein synthesis and probably also affecting immune functions. In addition, it has been shown that 1-methyl-Trp can modulate DCs function independently of its action on IDO [29]. This compound is frequently used in the IDO enzyme research.

4.3. Posttranslational Regulation of the IDO Activity

IDO is highly induced during maturation of monocyte-derived DCs [30, 31], but full IDO activation requires further stimulation, mainly by IFN-γ, which implies a posttranslational regulation by some type of IDO activator [32]. For example, even though mouse splenic DCs express IDO protein at comparable levels, only the CD8α^+ subset has IDO activity after exposure to IFN-γ [33]. Orabona *et al.* [34] showed that IFN-γ induces in $CD8^+$ DCs the expression of the transcription factor IFN regulatory factor (IRF)-8, which induces IDO expression and downregulates the membrane protein adapter DAP12. The downregulation of DAP12 is necessary for full IDO activity, which implies that the loss of DAP12 expression could be a hallmark of the IDO-competent DCs.

Another mechanism of regulation of the IDO function is through modification of either the apoprotein or the cofactor. Nitric oxide (NO) is an IDO functional modifier acting at these two levels, in general, decreasing IDO activity during inflammation [35]. Also, some antioxidants such as pyrrolidine dithiocarbamate, a NF-κB inhibitor, decrease IDO activity post-translationally [36]. Another mechanism of regulation of the IDO activity is through the supply of the prosthetic group heme to the apoenzyme: the inhibitor of the heme biosynthesis, succinylacetone, can also inhibit IDO activity without affecting protein content [36].

5. IDO Induction

5.1. Induction of IDO by IFNs

IDO is induced by cytokines, mainly IFN-γ, in many tissues [3, 37]. In general, the effect of IFN-γ inducing IDO expression is more pronounced than the one provoked by IFN-α/β, and even the capacity of IFN-γ to induce IDO activity has been used in bioassays to measure this cytokine activity [38]. Professional antigen-presenting cells (APCs) such as monocytes, macrophages, and DCs, express IDO following IFN-γ exposure [37, 39, 40], and the maturation of monocytes to macrophages increases the capacity of IFN-γ to induce IDO [41]. Also, CD4+ can express IDO upon stimulation with IFN-α [42] and IFN-γ [43]. As IFN-γ is the most potent IDO inducer, the mechanism will be discussed in detail in the following paragraphs.

5.2. Induction of IDO by Cytolytic T-Lymphocyte-Associated Antigen 4-Immunoglobulin Fusion Protein

CD80 (B7–1) and CD86 (B7–2) are surface molecules present on DCs that interact with two counterreceptors expressed by lymphocytes (CD28 or CTLA-4). Cytolytic T-lymphocyte antigen-4 (CTLA-4) is a negative regulator of T-cell activation transiently expressed on T cells after activation that can bind CD80 and CD86 on DCs. The binding of the CTLA-4-Fc fusion protein to CD80 induces IDO expression in DCs [44, 45], and also in CD4+ T cells [46]. The mechanism of IDO induction in DC is indirect; CTLA-4-Fc induces IFN-γthat, in an autocrine or paracrine fashion, leads to IDO expression, Trp depletion, and conceivably immunosuppression. DCs obtained from mice deficient in either IFN-γ or signal transducer and activator of transcription 1 (STAT1) do not produce kynurenine after CTLA-4-Fc treatment *in vitro* [44]. In addition to the soluble form (CTLA-4-Fc), also CTLA-4 anchored in the membrane of regulatory CD4+ can induce IDO expression in DCs [47].

5.3. Induction of IDO by Unmethylated Cytidyl Guanosyl Oligodeoxynucleotides

The toll-like receptors (TLR) are membrane proteins that bind to pathogen-expressed molecules. The receptor, TLR9, binds cytidyl guanosyl (CpG) oligodeoxynucleotides present in the genome of bacteria and viruses, but not in human genome. This receptor is expressed by B lymphocytes and plasmacytoid DCs; and after TLR9 activation, there is an induction of IFN-α, IFN-γ, and other proinflammatory cytokines initiating the innate and adaptive immune responses [48]. Also, bacterial DNA and its synthetic immunostimulatory oligodeoxynucleotide analogs induce IDO, which is one of the defense mechanisms against intracellular pathogens [49]. However, the binding of bacterial DNA to TRL9 in lungs produces intense IDO expression, provoking TH1 and TH2 suppression [50].

The activation of TH1 cells by synthetic CpG-rich oligodeoxynucleotides has been shown to have therapeutic activity in mouse models of cancer, and infectious and asthma/allergy diseases; and for this reason, several clinical trials have been initiated using CpG-rich oligodeoxynucleotides [48]. However, repeated systemic administration of CpG-rich oligodeoxynucleotides causes lymphoid follicle destruction and immunosuppression [51] that could be related, at least in part, to the kynurenine pathway activation. For this reason, applications using CpG-oligodeoxynucleotides as adjuvants in vaccines for human use should consider this possible immunosuppression [52] and evaluate kynurenine production.

The effect of CpG oligodeoxynucleotides on IDO expression is related to the route of inoculation, which affects the cell type first encounter and the type of microenvironment [52]. Systemic administration of CpG oligodeoxynucleotides could induce IDO expression, provoking an activation of the kynurenine pathway and leading to T-cell suppression [53, 54]. However, subcutaneous application of antigen plus CpG oligodeoxynucleotides enhances antigen-specific T-cell activation in local lymph nodes [54].

5.4. Induction of IDO by 4-1BB

4-1BB (CD137) is a member of the tumor necrosis factor (TNF) receptor superfamily expressed on the surface of activated T cells and other leukocytes including natural killer (NK) cells and mature DCs [55]. 4-1BB-mediated costimulation greatly enhances T-cell-mediated immune responses helping in eradicating stabilized tumors and virus clearance [56, 57]. But the same 4-1BB costimulation produces opposite results, inducing tolerance and improving autoimmune diseases [55]. In a mouse model of rheumatoid arthritis, the administration of an anti-4-1BB agonist antibody induces

IFN-γ-mediated IDO expression in macrophages and DCs [58]. This enzyme leads to Trp depletion and produces kynurenines causing depletion of antigen-specific CD4+ cells. This prevents the development of collagen type II-induced arthritis in the mouse model. Interestingly, *in vivo* administration of the IDO inhibitor 1-methyl-Trp completely abolishes the therapeutic effect of the agonist anti-4-1BB monoclonal antibody. Similarly, the anti-4-1BB antibody improves experimental autoimmune uveoretinitis by IDO-dependent mechanisms [59].

5.5. Signaling Pathways Involved in IDO Induction

The Indo gene promoter has several response elements that confer responsiveness to IFN-α/β, and more potently to IFN-γ. In the promoter region of the Indo gene, there are two very important sequence elements, interferon-stimulated response element (ISRE) found in IFN-α/β-inducible genes, and interferon-γ activating site (GAS) found in IFN-γ-inducible genes, and there is also an MHC-II X,Y box-like motif [18, 60]. The presence of these elements confers responsiveness to inflammatory cytokines, mainly to IFN. Both IFN-α/β and IFN-γ induce IDO in monocytes, but IFN-γ is the most potent because the ISRE region is less stimulated by IFN-α/β [60]. Upon binding to its receptor, IFN initiates the Jak-STAT signaling pathway that activates specific DNA sequences in the cell nucleus (Fig. 2). STAT1 can bind directly to the GAS element and indirectly, through the IRF-1, to the ISRE element. There is a cooperative action between IRF-1 and STAT1 to mediate IDO induction upon stimulation with IFN-γ [61]; and, for example, mice deficient in IRF-1 or IFN-γ cannot induce IDO during infection [62].

There are also IFN-γ-independent mechanisms to induce IDO and not mediated through the STAT1 or IRF-1 pathway. Lipopolysaccharide (LPS) stimulates IDO expression and acts synergically with other cytokines such as TNF-α, in a mechanism involving NF-κB and/or the activity of the p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase[63].

6. Measurement of Kynurenines in Human Biological Fluids

There are several commercially available antibodies to detect IDO protein; however, this enzyme is posttranslationally regulated, so the immunological detection does not necessarily imply activity [64], and the enzymatic activity should be measured when studying functionality. IDO activity is easily inactivated *in vitro* by oxygen, which oxidizes Fe^{2+} of the heme group to Fe^{3+}. To measure IDO activity in cellular extracts, it is necessary to reduce the Fe^{3+}, usually with methylene blue plus ascorbic acid [26]. Catalase is also

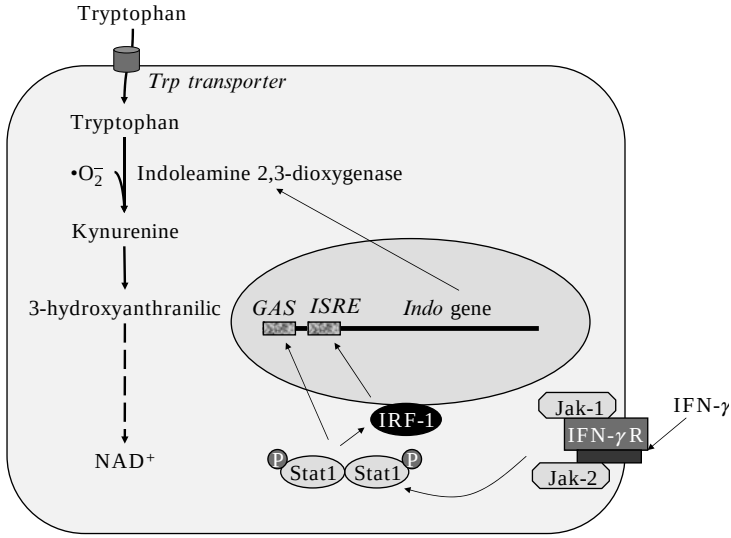


FIG. 2. IFN-γ induces indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase (IDO) gene (Indo) transcription through JAK-STAT1 signaling pathway, and participating also the interferon regulatory factor-1 (IRF-1). In the Indo promoter, there are two interferon-stimulated response elements (ISRE) and a single IFN-γ activating site (GAS) implicated in the response to IFN-γ. IDO catabolizes Trp in an oxidative reaction that consumes oxygen radicals. To be metabolized by the cytoplasmic enzyme, Trp should enter into the cell though a membrane transporter.

added to eliminate the hydrogen peroxide produced by the reducing system. In these conditions, Trp is readily converted to formylkynurenine by IDO enzyme (Fig. 1). Boiling the reaction product for several minutes eliminates the formyl group rendering kynurenine. Then, Trp and kynurenine are usually simultaneously measured by high-performance liquid chromatography using reversed phase C18 columns [65]. Trp is detected by its natural fluorescence at an excitation wavelength of 285 nm and an emission wavelength of 365 nm, and kynurenine is measured using an ultraviolet detector set at a wavelength of 360 nm. Some authors have measured kynurenine by a colorimetric method using the Ehrlich reagent; however, it is very unspecific and prone to react with many compounds that interfere and mislead the quantitation [66]. There are physiological variations in the serum concentrations: Trp and kynurenine concentrations are 15% higher in men than in women [65], and intense exercise increases serum levels of kynurenine [67]. An indirect form to estimate IDO activity is quantifying the kynurenine/Trp ratio in biological fluids [59].

Quinolinic acid is a neurotoxic kynurenine metabolite involved in several neurodegenerative disorders [68]. For this reason, different methods have

been developed to quantify this compound in brain tissue and cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), usually by gas chromatography-mass spectrometry [69, 70]; and there is a regional variation of concentration in the brain [71]. Specific antibodies have been used in immunohistochemistry to detect cells capable to synthesize quinolinic acid. Probably due to the different sensitivity of both methods, in normal brain tissue quinolinic acid can be quantified, but it is not immunologically detected [68]. In inflammatory neurological diseases, where the concentration of quinolinic acid can rise several hundred times, this compound can be detected by immunohistochemistry in tissues [68].

Kynurenines are mainly eliminated by renal excretion [72, 73]. Thus, alterations in kidney function cause retention of kynurenines. Indeed, a marked elevation of kynurenine and quinolinic acid in serum and CSF in renal failure patients has been observed [70, 74]. This elevation causes an accumulation of kynurenines in different tissues, probably playing a role in the pathogenesis of the uremic syndrome [75]. It can be postulated that these compounds might be involved in the relative immunosuppression that affects patients suffering from chronic kidney disease.

7. Nitric Oxide and the Kynurenine Pathway

NO is generated from l-Arg by the enzyme nitric oxide synthase (NOS). There are three NOS isoenzymes, two of them (eNOS and nNOS) are constitutive and produce low quantities of NO and the third form is inducible (iNOS) and produces large quantities of NO. This compound has important immunomodulatory properties [76]. In enzymes carrying the heme group, NO can bind to this prosthetic group modifying the catalytic activity, either activating [77] or inhibiting [78], depending on the enzyme. Alternatively, NO can form peroxynitrite that reacts with tyrosine residues producing nitrotyrosines, which change the protein properties [79]. As IDO is a heme-protein, NO can bind its heme prosthetic group, inhibiting IDO enzyme activity [80–82]. Similarly, extensive IDO protein nitration due to elevated peroxynitrites output, as produced by iNOS, inhibits IDO activity [35, 82, 83]. This inhibition affects the entire kynurenine pathway as IFN-γ-induced synthesis of NAD^+ by macrophages is markedly increased in the presence of an NOS inhibitor [17]. NO favors IDO degradation by the proteasome [84], which could be related to IDO nitration because nitration of tyrosine residues in proteins induces accelerated degradation of modified proteins by the proteasome [85].

However, low micromolar concentrations of NO, as produced by eNOS, stimulate IDO activity, even when there is IDO protein nitration [35]. Coexpression of eNOS and IDO is found in human monocytes [86, 87] and in placenta [2]. As a result, eNOS can participate in the immune tolerance in an IDO-dependent fashion. However, when there is an inflammatory attack,

in which iNOS is induced as a part of the immune response, the high NO production deactivates the immunosuppressive IDO enzyme, thus favoring a more intense immune response [35].

NO interferes with the tolerogenic effect of kynurenines in the immune system, as demonstrated in a murine model of type 1 diabetes mellitus. Certainly, the high expression of peroxynitrites in DCs in predisposed nonobese diabetic (NOD) mice provokes the inactivation of STAT1 in these cells [88]. The blockade of this signaling route impairs the IFN-γ-mediated Trp degrading pathway, which interferes with the tolerance to self-antigens [88]. Restoration of this blockade allows IDO expression in DCs and the development of tolerance.

Kynurenine metabolites also modulate iNOS expression, but while picolinic acid can increase [89], 3-hydroxyanthranilic acid can inhibit IFN-γ-dependent iNOS mRNA expression and activity in macrophages [90].

8. Role of IDO in the Defense Against Infectious Pathogens

One of the most simple and ancient host defense against pathogens is the depletion of nutrients, such as iron-chelating proteins. The kynurenine pathway, by depleting Trp, can locally impair the growth of microbes. Soon after the discovery of IDO, it was observed that this enzyme is notably induced in mouse lung after an intraperitoneal administration of bacterial LPS [91], leading to Trp degradation and increased plasma kynurenine levels [92]. IFN-γ inhibits IDO-dependent growth of group B streptococci [93], intracellular pathogens (e.g., *Chlamydia psittaci*, *Leishmania donovani*, and *Toxoplasma gondii*) [94, 97], and viruses (e.g., *cytomegalovirus* or Herpes Simplex Virus) [95, 96]. This effect is mediated by increased Trp degradation, and inhibition could be reversed by the addition of Trp excess. Infection with *Candida albicans* produces an IFN-γ-dependent IDO induction in DCs and polymorphonuclear neutrophils that inhibits fungi growth, and in this case the antioxidant properties of IDO and kynurenines have a central role [98].

TNF-α can increase the IFN-γ-dependent IDO induction, potentiating the antiviral action of this cytokine [96]. IDO expression induced by IFN-γ in airway epithelial-like cells provokes exaggerated IL-6 and IL-8 responses to TNF-α and LPS challenge [99]. This could help to explain why respiratory viral infections can increase inflammatory responses to concurrent or secondary bacterial challenges, thereby worsening respiratory distress [99].

9. IDO as an Immunosuppressive Molecule

As it has been mentioned before, earlier literature considered the Trp degrading pathway a mechanism to inhibit pathogens growth and tumor proliferation. This point of view was challenged in 1998 when Munn and

Mellor [2] demonstrated that Trp degradation protected mice fetuses from maternal rejection. Soon later, it was shown that cells express IDO to limit T-cell proliferation in response to antigens: transfection of Indo gene into tumor cell lines confers them the capacity to inhibit T-cell responses [100]. Since then, a considerable amount of evidence has been accumulated regarding the immunosuppressive role of the kynurenine pathway and its role in developing tolerance (summarized in Fig. 3).

9.1. IDO-Mediated Suppression by Innate Immunity

Macrophages are the first defense line against pathogens, and the binding of bacterial molecules to receptors on the surface macrophages triggers the generation of the respiratory burst and phagocytosis. However, macrophages can also downregulate T-cell response, which is, at least in part, mediated by the kynurenine pathway. Monocytes differentiated to macrophages with macrophage colony stimulating factor (M-CSF) and suppress the proliferation of CD3-stimulated T cells [101]. To reach this suppressive state, macrophages should be induced to synthesize IDO, mainly by IFN-γ. T cells induce IDO in macrophages by an IFN-γ-dependent mechanism, which implies that these cells should be immunocompetent and previously activated. The order of cytokine treatment in culture is crucial, because when monocytes are previously treated with IFN-γ they do not achieve this T-cell

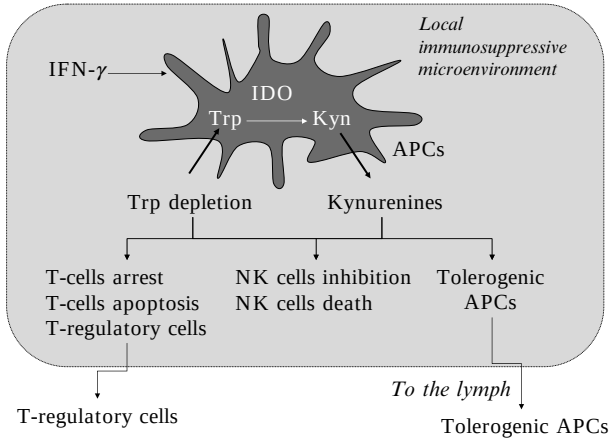


FIG. 3. Immunosuppressive effect of the kynurenine pathway. IFN-γ can induce the kynurenine pathway in antigen-presenting cells (APCs) producing immunosuppression in the microenvironment, and can also induce suppression at distance by migration of tolerogenic APCs to lymphatic nodes or by inducing regulatory T cells.

suppressive function once differentiated with M-CSF [102]. T-cell arrest is mediated exclusively by IDO induction without participation of any other macrophage inhibitory mechanism since addition of purified IDO protein also impairs the proliferation of phytohemagglutinin-stimulated T cells [103]. Stimulated T cells can initiate a response entering cell cycle, but they are halted at the middle of G1 when there is IDO activity in the microenvironment [101, 102]. This arrested situation of T cells cannot be overridden by Trp restoration only, but a second round of stimulation together with Trp addition is also necessary [101].

NK cells are another tool of the innate defense that can also be inhibited by the kynurenine pathway. Trp depletion can downregulate Ag-specific T-cell clonal expansion leading to suppression in response. Also, kynurenine inhibits phytohemagglutinin-stimulated NK cells proliferation [103], probably through cytotoxic mechanisms [104]. However, the NK-cell response, which does not need a clonal expansion, is downregulated by a direct effect on the NK-cell killing capability [105]. In this case, kynurenines seem to exert an efficient suppressive effect; and effectively, kynurenine can inhibit NK-cell responses induced by IL-2 and IL-12 [105]. Suppression is achieved at concentrations and for periods of time that do not cause cytotoxicity, but impair the upregulation of specific activatory surface receptors that bind triggering ligands on target cells. Indeed, L-kynurenine prevents the IL-2-induced upregulation of the activating cellular receptors NKp46 and NKG2D, responsible for NK-cell triggering, and consequently decreases killing capacity of NK cells [105]. The suppressive effect of kynurenine is transient as NK cells regain the phenotype and function after the metabolite removal. A similar effect on NKp46 is observed when L-kynurenine is present during IL-12 stimulation of NK cells.

9.2. IDO-Mediated Suppression by Adaptive Immunity

Different murine models have demonstrated that the functionally active kynurenine pathway suppresses T-cell-mediated immune responses. DCs are the most important APCs, specialized to induce or to suppress T-cell responses [106]. As it occurs with other cell types, IFN-γ induces functional IDO enzyme in DCs—an effect that is enhanced by CD40 ligand and LPS [107]. Of special interest is the demonstration by Grohmann *et al.* that CTLA-4-Ig upregulates IDO in murine DCs via an IFN-γ-dependent mechanism [44]. Plasmacytoid DCs do not express IDO and are not tolerogenic under basal conditions; there are multiple ligands and cytokines that induce the expression of IDO giving a tolerogenic phenotype to plasmacytoid DCs in mice [108]. CD28-Ig also induces IDO in plasmacytoid DCs in SOCS3-deficient mice through IFN-γ-induction and the IFN-like actions of IL-6

[108]. More recently, it was reported that CD200R ligation by the soluble CD200-Ig fusion protein induces IDO in plasmacytoid DCs through an IFN-α/β-elicited signaling pathway [109].

Maturation of human monocyte-derived DCs with TNF-α plus PGE2 induces IDO expression [30, 110]. Munn *et al.* [40] have shown that a population of nonadherent human DCs, characterized by CD123 and CCR6 expression, produces IDO protein, but the enzyme is only active after stimulation with IFN-γ. However, other authors have challenged these findings [111], and although this discordance has been attributed to the methodology used to differentiate DCs in culture [112], to detect IDO function and protein, and to analyze DCs function of T-cell stimulation [112, 113], the controversy is maintained [113]. Furthermore, DCs comprise a heterogeneous population, in which the differentiation and maturation culture conditions are very important in order to attain IDO-mediated suppression, as observed in the case of macrophages [102]. Moreover, not all the types of DCs have IDO activity [40, 111, 112]. For example, when maturation is induced with CD40 ligand, DCs express inactive IDO, which is even downregulated by IFN-γ. On the contrary, the addition of IL-10 together with CD40 ligand and IFN-γ generates mature DCs expressing fully active IDO enzyme.

In spite of this controversy, there are strong evidences that some populations of DCs express IDO conferring them immune suppressive capacity [33, 34, 40, 107], which can suppress T-cell proliferation in an allogeneic mixed lymphocyte reaction [100] and induce regulatory CD4+ cells [114]. These IDO expressing DCs behave in a dominant fashion, that is, they can suppress T-cell response to antigens presented by neighboring IDO negative cells. This effect has been demonstrated *in vitro* using simultaneously IDO negative and positive DCs in a mixed lymphocyte reaction [115]. This dominant suppressive effect can be crucial in cancer hosts, where the presence of IDO positive DCs in lymph draining nodes could induce suppression in the surrounding media thus facilitating the tumoral metastasis [115, 116].

Other enzymes of the kynurenine pathway are also induced during maturation of DCs. Studies with microarrays have shown that maturation of human DCs with TNF-α and polyI:C induces coordinately in less than 24 hours a cluster of genes involved in Trp metabolism: IDO, kynureninase, kynurenine monooxygenase, and tryptophanyl tRNA synthetase [31]. The final Trp degrading enzyme 3-hydroxyanthranilic acid oxidase that produces quinolinic acid is downregulated in these conditions. Recently, Belladonna *et al.* have shown that murine splenic DCs express all the enzymes necessary to synthesize quinolinic acid, a reaction that is enhanced by the addition of IFN-γ [117]. Murine CD8-DCs subsets do not have IDO activity, but when these cells are stimulated with IFN-γ in presence of kynurenine, these cells acquire suppressive properties. This implies that, independently of Trp

concentrations, DCs can be induced to create tolerance if there is enough supply of kynurenines.

The possibility of generating DCs expressing active IDO or even other enzymes of the kynurenine pathway is an important point as DCs have been used in cancer immunotherapy trials, and generating tolerogenic DCs could lead to opposite results than the expected ones. In our experience, clinical grade DCs generated with standard protocols with GM-CSF+ IL-4 and matured with TNF-α and poly I:C do not express active IDO (unpublished observations). Nevertheless, when using DCs in clinical trials it would be wise to check IDO expression by measuring Trp consumption and the kynurenine concentration in the culture supernatants.

9.3. Mechanism of Suppression

Since the discovery of the role of IDO as an immunosuppressive molecule [2], several hypotheses have arisen to explain its mechanism of action. The initial theory proposes that Trp depletion in the T-cell surrounding microenvironment causes functional suppression of lymphocytes [32]. This hypothesis has been recently critically discussed [113, 114], because there are some caveats to explain immunosuppression, particularly *in vivo*. Other hypotheses suggest that Trp metabolites, mainly kynurenine, induce suppression [104]. Finally, the third hypothesis is that Trp metabolism modifies APCs properties [32, 118]. Probably this third mechanism is indirect and mediated by the first two. Independently of the mechanism involved, an important fact is that it is initiated by an antigen-specific response, so it is not a general immunosuppression. Moreover, most likely, these mechanisms are not mutually exclusive and can be synergistic, and in some situations suppression may be mainly the result of elevated kynurenine metabolites rather than the depletion of Trp, and vice versa. However further research is needed to clarify these possibilities, particularly to define precisely the concentration of Trp in the microenvironment and the distribution of the Trp metabolites that can have different functions.

9.3.1. *The Trp Depletion Theory*

IDO induction in allogeneic mixed lymphocyte reaction provoked Trp depletion, driving to T-cell arrest. Supplementation with high Trp concentration to IDO+ macrophages prevents suppression [101]. As a possible explanation of the mechanism involved, Munn *et al.* [119] proposed the conserved amino acid sensitive GCN2 kinase pathway as the molecular target of IDO suppression in T cells. Trp depletion causes a rise in uncharged tRNA in T cells, and GCN2 contains a regulatory domain that binds the uncharged forms of tRNA. As a result, there is an activation of GCN2 kinase in T cells that initiates a highly conserved downstream signaling pathway,

termed integrated stress response. This pathway leads to T-cell anergy. However, Fallarino *et al.* [114] showed that it is not Trp depletion alone, but the combined action of Trp depletion and kynurenines that is necessary to downregulate T-cell CD3ζ expression through a GCN2 kinase-dependent mechanism. Furthermore, some authors have found that T cells can proliferate in Trp-deprived medium [103].

To achieve an efficient T-cell suppression, the concentration of Trp in the medium should be below 1 μM [101]. IDO is an intracellular enzyme with cytoplasmic location [120], and macrophages need a very efficient transport system to import Trp from the surrounding medium (Fig. 4) [121]. There is a widely distributed amino acid transporter system for Trp and other neutral amino acids, named L-system. This L-system has a K_m for Trp of 23.6 μM, which is too high to decrease the concentration of this amino acid to the extent needed to suppress T cells [28]. However, during monocytes

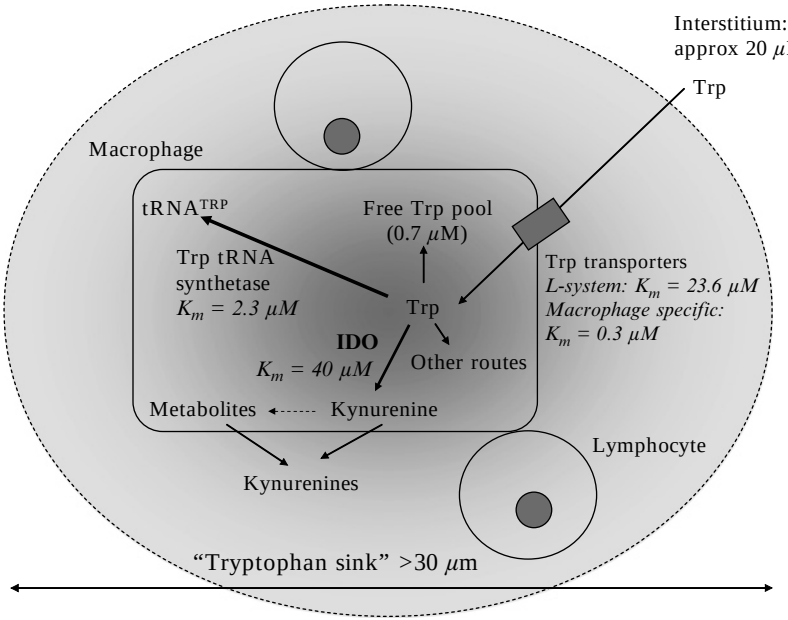


FIG. 4. Generation of an immunosuppressive environment by antigen-presenting cells (APCs). Trp is internalized from the medium by two types of transporters: A L-system, and another more specific of macrophages and with a higher affinity for Trp. Inside the cell, Trp is derived for the synthesis of proteins and transferred to a tRNA by a Trp tRNA synthetase, or directed to the kynurenine pathway by indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase (IDO), which is the first enzyme of this route, to be further metabolized to different kynurenines. Both the kynurenines and Trp depletion can provoke arrest of activated T cells.

differentiation to macrophages, another transporter with high affinity for Trp is highly induced [122], which is not expressed in T cells. This transporter expressed in macrophages has a K_m for Trp of 0.2–0.3 μM, so it has the capacity to efficiently import Trp in the range of amino acid concentrations necessary to produce T-lymphocyte arrest. Considering that the K_m of the IDO enzyme is 40 μM for l-Trp [21], this enzyme works at suboptimal substrate concentration. This implies that the velocity of Trp degradation decreases as the concentration of Trp diminishes.

Neither the amino acid transporter nor the IDO are polarized during the synaptic contact between T lymphocytes and IDO expressing cells. For this reason, the proposed "Trp sink" is not limited to the boundary between these cells, but must measure at least double of the average T-lymphocyte size (Fig. 4). This point is challenged by the observation made by Terness *et al.* [113] that a local Trp decrease could be quickly compensated by gradient diffusion from the surrounding tissue and plasma, a flow that it is particularly intense in human placenta [123, 124]. Also, positron emission tomography shows that amino acids diffuse in few minutes from the vascular compartment to irrigated tumors, but not to poorly irrigated or necrotic tumors.

9.3.2. *Immune Modulatory Function of Kynurenine Pathway Metabolites*

Trp metabolism produces different kynurenines, some of them with important tolerogenic properties; the provoked suppression can be specific for certain T-cell subpopulations: 3-hydroxyanthranilic acid and quinolinic acid induce apoptosis in murine thymocytes and TH1 cells, but not in TH2 cells [125]. The apoptosis is mediated by caspase-8 and the mitochondrial release of cytochrome C. This suppression is also observed in human T cells, showing that kynurenines suppress irreversibly allogeneic T-cell proliferation *in vitro* [104]. l-Kynurenine inhibition of proliferation occurs only at the early stages of cell activation [103], which is in accordance with previous data showing that macrophage-dependent arrest of T cells specifically affects the initial transition from quiescence to proliferation [102]. These Trp catabolic products exert a cytotoxic action on CD3+ cells, mainly when activated. B and NK cells are also susceptible to these compounds [104].

As we have mentioned before that Trp addition can reverse IDO-mediated macrophage suppression [101], which apparently rules out significant contributions from kynurenines since more Trp yields more metabolites, yet it restores T-cell proliferation [126]. Enzymes of the Trp metabolism induced during DCs maturation [31] lead to an accumulation of kynurenine, 3-hydroxykynurenine, and 3-hydroxy-anthranilate. The concentration of individual kynurenines needed to achieve suppression is higher that those that can be found *in vivo*, but when there are several kynurenines together in

the medium the suppression is achieved at more physiological concentrations [104]. DCs are more resistant to the toxic actions of kynurenines than lymphocytes and NK cells [104, 125]. Undoubtedly, the increase of Trp metabolites is accompanied by a decrease in the concentration of this amino acid. Apart from their cytotoxic effect, kynurenines cooperate with Trp depletion in developing a tolerogenic microenvironment affecting T-cell response capacity. The suppressive effect of l-kynurenine and picolinic acid on T- and NK-cell proliferation is potentiated by Trp depletion [103]. IDO expressing DCs mediate activation of GCN2 kinase in peripheral CD4+ CD25− cells, which participate in acquiring a regulatory phenotype Foxp3 +. This effect can be mimicked by stimulating CD4+ lymphocytes in a conditioned medium low in Trp and with kynurenines. This suggests a relevant role of toxic Trp metabolites in DCs-induced suppression.

10. Protective Role of IDO in Rejection of the Fetus During Pregnancy

Fetus can be considered from an immunological point of view as a semi-allogeneic transplant; having half of the genes from the father, fetus should be rejected by the maternal immunocompetent system. Nevertheless, evolution has found the mechanism to avoid this attack by maintaining the general immune competence. This is one of the most intriguing questions in biology. In 1998, Munn *et al.* showed the implication of IDO in protecting fetus from the maternal attack in a mouse model [2]. The administration of the IDO inhibitor, 1-methyl-Trp, to pregnant mice during allogeneic gestation increased the rate of abortion of allogeneic fetuses a few days after implantation. The blockade of IDO permits the recognition of fetal antigens by T cells, provoking an intense inflammatory response with antigen-independent complement deposition and hemorrhage [127]. In syngeneic pregnancy, where the fetuses have the same antigens as the mother, this IDO inhibitor did not have any effect and the fetuses developed normally. The immunology of placentation [128] and the development of pregnancy is different between human and mouse, and we have to be cautious when extrapolating result from mice experiments.

In humans, IDO is produced as early as day 6 by blastocysts, and thereafter throughout pregnancy by syncytiotrophoblasts, extravillous cytotrophoblasts, and macrophages in the villous stroma and in the fetal membranes [129]. This enzyme is induced by the hormones that are highly produced during pregnancy, such as chorionic gonadotrophin [130]. IDO enzyme is fully active as demonstrated in the cultures of placenta explants [129], producing local Trp depletion and kynurenines production. Furthermore, some

authors have found decreased serum Trp concentration during pregnancy accompanied by an increase in the kynurenine/Trp ratio, which suggests an increased IDO-dependent Trp degradation. However, the degree of change of these compounds is not very high and there is a great overlap between different situations. At the end of pregnancy, there is a lower serum kynurenine concentration due to a lower Trp concentration.

The activation of the kynurenine pathway can affect the mood of the mother after delivery. Trp is the precursor of the neurotransmitter serotonin, whose synthesis could be compromised by Trp availability during pregnancy. As a result of the activation of the kynurenine pathway, there is a decrease of Trp, particularly at the end of term and in the early puerperium. Several studies have demonstrated that depression and anxiety symptoms in the early puerperium are associated with an increased catabolism of Trp [132].

As the kynurenine pathway seems to play an important role in pregnancy as an immunosuppressive mechanism, a defect in the activation could lead to complications and even abortion. As it has been mentioned before, ligation of CTLA-4 expressed by T-regulatory cells to the B7 molecules on DCs from normal pregnant women induces IFN-γ-dependent IDO expression, but is decreased in DCs from women suffering spontaneous abortion [133]. Preeclampsia is an important complication that occurs during the second half of pregnancy, a condition characterized by a relative failure of the uteroplacental circulation. This occurs as a result of an exacerbated inflammatory activity, that also happens, but with much lower intensity, in normal pregnancy. There are evidences that IDO may impair the normal maternal systemic inflammatory response during normal pregnancy, and this inhibition becomes disrupted in preeclampsia [131]. The activity and mRNA expression of IDO in term placentas is lower in preeclampsia compared to normal pregnancy, which is reflected by lower plasma kynurenine/Trp ratios [131].

However, Trp degradation pathway is not the only mechanism that protects the fetus from immune maternal attack. Mice lacking Indo gene can deliver allogeneic and syngeneic puppies with similar success rates, and 1-methyl-Trp does not affect pregnancy outcome in these knockout mice [134]. These data call for the existence of other controls of both innate and adaptive immunity during pregnancy. There are other suppressive molecules expressed in placenta, such as the nonclassical MHC class I antigen HLA-G [135], probably providing redundant mechanisms to create a protective microenvironment. Both HLA-G and IDO suppress T-cell response by independent and complementary mechanisms [136]. In fact, there is a relationship between IDO and HLA-G; we have shown that 1-methyl-Trp increases the expression of HLA-G in APCs [137], leading to decreased NK cytotoxicity and T-cell proliferation [138].

11. Clinical Implications of the Immunosuppression Provoked by the Kynurenine Pathway

11.1. Cancer Immune Evasion by IDO Expression

Tumor cells have great plasticity and employ diverse immunosuppressive tools to escape from the host attack, which are common to different cancer cell types independently of the acquired oncogenic mutations [139]. Furthermore, very likely, tumors employ the machinery used by the fetus to avoid maternal rejection. One of these tolerogenic mechanisms is the expression of IDO and production of kynurenines. Certainly, as early as in 1956, Boyland and Williams [140] observed increased Trp metabolism with kynurenine excretion in patients with cancer. In addition, the expression of IDO and kynurenine production has been shown in many different human tumor cell lines exposed to IFN-γ [3, 141]. Positron emission tomography has demonstrated increased Trp captation by brain tumors, which metabolized this amino acid to kynurenine [142].

After the discovery of the immunosuppressive role of IDO in pregnancy, Mellor and Munn soon postulated that tumor cells could employ this enzyme to evade the immune system attack [23]. Evidence of this new hypothesis came initially from the use of the IDO inhibitor 1-methyl-Trp, which increases T-cell attack against tumors. This compound can increase the allogeneic T-cell response to Lewis lung carcinoma cells when present in the medium; and *in vivo* administration caused growth delay in syngeneic mice [143]. An obvious question is: can depletion of a nutrient be beneficious for tumoral growth? The answer comes from the hypothesis of cancer immune editing [144]. Trp depletion can negatively affect tumor growth [3], but if tumor cells were less sensitive to Trp deprivation than T lymphocytes, this nutrient shortage could give a notorious advantage to their survival. Cancerous cell elimination by immune cells could make a selective pressure where some tumor cells express IDO enzyme helping to evade tumor surveillance [145]. As a result, IDO expression can be beneficial for the tumor even if it was initially noxious, due to its role as an immunosuppressive molecule [146]. The expression of IDO in tumor cells has been shown to be an independent prognostic factor of impaired survival in patients with serous advanced ovarian cancer [147] or colorectal cancer [148]. In endometrial cancer, IDO expression positively correlates with surgical stage, myometrial invasion, lymph-vascular space involvement, and lymph node metastasis, but not with the histological grade. Patients with high IDO expression have significantly impaired overall survival and progression-free survival [149]. If the induction of IDO in tumor cells is also kept under the control of IFN-γ, then it can be turned on precisely when activated lymphocytes are approaching.

Uyttenhove *et al.* [139] have demonstrated variable IDO expression in primary human tumors: while being high in prostate, colorectal, pancreatic, and cervical tumors, it is almost absent in choriocarcinomas and testicular seminomas. By elegant experiments, this group demonstrated the role of IDO in tumor evasion: transfection of the immunogenic mouse tumor cell line P815 with IDO made it resistant to rejection even in preimmunized mice, and systemic treatment of mice with 1-methyl-Trp delayed tumor outgrowth. Interestingly, the effects observed with this IDO inhibitor were dependent on the presence of functional T cells.

Bin1-Amphiphysin2 is a cancer suppressor gene that participates in the traffic control of vesicles and in signal transduction [150, 151], and the lack of Bin1 expression in some cancers is related to the expression of Indo gene [150]. When Bin1 is repressed, IFN-γ increases STAT1 and NF-κB-dependent Indo transcription provoking an overproduction of IDO protein, which favors the immune escape of the tumor cells [150]. The enzyme cyclooxygenase-2, highly expressed in many tumors [152], is another possible inductor of IDO [153], as cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitors suppress IFN-γ-mediated IDO expression [154]. It was demonstrated in a mouse model of breast cancer that administration of the cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitor celecoxib decreased IDO expression and improved the response to the tumor. Furthermore, there was a direct correlation between cyclooxygenase-2 and IDO expression in primary human breast cancer specimens, although the clinical significance has not been established yet [153].

11.1.1. *APCs in Tumor Draining Lymph Nodes Can be Induced to Express IDO*

Even though some tumor cells can express IDO suppressing activation of T cells in the tumoral microenvironment, there is still capacity to develop an immune response outside the tumor itself [155]. However, the tumoral microenvironment can induce the expression of IDO in infiltrating APCs, mainly DCs, which could be an efficient mechanism to overcome the adaptive immunity allowing tumor survival [126]. The presence of IDO positive infiltrating cells has been demonstrated immunohistochemically in some tumors such as hepatocarcinoma [156], breast, colon [40], and nonsmall cell lung carcinoma [157]. In the latter case, the infiltrating cells expressing IDO were eosinophil granulocytes.

It is well known that the analysis of the tumoral cells in the sentinel lymph node in patients with cancer is an important aid in the prognosis and therapeutic approach [158]. Additionally, the presence of plasmacytoid DCs expressing IDO in tumor draining lymph nodes has been reported in patients with melanoma [116], even in absence of tumoral cells. The immunohistochemical detection of IDO expressing DCs in the sentinel node at the

moment of diagnosis indicates adverse prognosis in this disease [115]. These mononuclear cells expressing IDO present in tumor draining lymph nodes may confer an advantage to the tumor to escape the immune response.

11.1.2. *Measurement of the Kynurenine Pathway in Patients with Cancer*

An increased Trp catabolism in both solid and hematological cancers, reflected by decreased Trp concentration or, less frequently, by increased kynurenine levels has been documented. Probably the increased kynurenine formation is associated with an ineffective activation of the immune system as it is usually associated with increased neopterine levels and bad prognosis [159, 160]. Indeed, lower Trp/kynurenine ratio correlates in some studies with the deterioration in quality of life [159, 161, 162]. Examples of tumors where the kynurenine pathway is frequently activated are carcinomas of bladder [163], colon, and breast [164] as well as melanoma [160] and lymphomas [164]. In a study of patients with gynecological cancer, it was shown that there was a decrease of circulating Trp but not kynurenine, compared to healthy controls [165]. Patients with disseminated melanoma have lower serum Trp concentration than the cancer-free population [160].

Treatment of cancer with biological modifiers can induce this immunosuppressive pathway, potentially with negative effects in the clinical outcome. For example, patients undergoing a phase I toxicity trial of recombinant IL-2 had decreased plasma Trp levels and corresponding increased urinary kynurenine and neopterin, indicating activation of the immune system and, particularly the kynurenine pathway [166]. The treatment of patients with advanced malignancies in a phase I trial with TNF and IFN-γ therapy provoked a clear increase of IDO in monocytes, accompanied with kynurenine and neopterin excretion in urine [167].

11.1.3. *Effect of the Combination of IDO Inhibitors with Chemotherapeutic Drugs*

As it was indicated before, both tumors and APCs, either spontaneously or after cytokine stimulation, can express IDO, which can drive to immune suppression. For this reason, therapeutic approaches to treat cancer patients should overcome the tolerance molecular tools that tumor cells employ.

IDO inhibitors slow down tumor growth [139, 143, 150], but a complete remission was achieved with a combination of an IDO inhibitor and classical chemotherapeutic drugs, as demonstrated by Muller *et al.* in a mouse model [150]. The benefit of this therapeutical approach seems to be based on the activation of the immune system and on the toxicity of the drug. The effectiveness of this therapeutic approach requires an intact T-cell response, as CD4+ depletion impairs the effectiveness of the treatment.

As the aim of immunotherapy is to use the adaptive immune system to provoke an effective response to tumor cells, the IDO enzyme can be a therapeutic target to potentiate T-cell response in cancer immunotherapy [32]. An immune therapeutic approach to treat tumors is the use of DC-based cancer vaccines. DCs used for therapeutic vaccination in melanoma patients express IDO, and can attract or induce FoxP3+ regulatory T cells at the site of application [168]. The combination of this treatment with drugs that inhibit IDO has provided encouraging results reducing primary tumor burden, preventing metastasis, and increasing survival in a mouse model of breast cancer [153]. Different molecules are being tested as inhibitors of IDO looking for a favorable pharmacokinetics and efficiencies [150, 169].

As we have mentioned before in the case of pregnancy, the kynurenine pathway probably is not the only mechanism that tumors use to evade the immune system. The knowledge of how tumor cells actively and passively evade the immune system will provide in the next future new, and probably safer, therapeutic approaches to treat patients with advanced cancer [150].

11.2. Autoimmune Diseases

A clear failure of the mechanisms of self-tolerance occurs in autoimmune diseases, where T and/or B lymphocytes react against their own organism causing tissue damage. This is provoked by alterations in the equilibrium between immune activation and suppression. We will show some examples where the kynurenine pathway seems to play a role, mainly in the treatment of these diseases:

1. Multiple sclerosis is a disease characterized by relapsing and remitting T-cell-mediated autoimmune inflammation of the central nervous system (CNS). The activation of the kynurenine pathway seems to play a role in the remission of this disease, thus controlling the clinical course of the disease. IFN-β treatment is usually employed in relapsing-remitting multiple sclerosis patients and provokes an increase in the kynurenine/Trp ratio [170]. Experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis is a murine model of the disease, where it has been observed that IDO expression by macrophages/activated microglia contributes to remission [171, 172], but mice lacking the IFN-γ receptor did not recover from the disease [173]. During the recovery phase, the higher IDO expression is reflected by an increased serum kynurenine/Trp ratio [171]. Also, 1-methyl-Trp exacerbated symptoms of the disease in this animal model [171, 172]. Myelin-specific T cells are suspected to cause multiple sclerosis, and when stimulated with tolerogenic altered self-peptides express IDO, which can have suppressive properties [174]. Certainly, several kynurenines suppressed proliferation of myelin-specific T cells and inhibited production of proinflammatory TH-1 cytokines [174]. The

synthetic analog of kynurenines, *N*-(3,4,-dimethoxycinnamoyl)anthranilic acid, not only has these actions *in vitro* but also, more importantly, oral treatment greatly ameliorated experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis in mice.

2. Rheumatoid arthritis is a destructive and painful autoimmune disease that attacks the joints. In rheumatoid arthritis, there is an activation of the kynurenine pathway [175], whose importance has been shown by the demonstration that 4–1BB antibodies amelioration of rheumatoid arthritis in a mouse model is through the IFN-γ-dependent IDO induction [58]. The recombinant CTLA-4-Ig fusion protein (abatacept) has been approved to treat autoimmune rheumatoid arthritis, and the clinical benefits can be related to the capacity of this molecule to induce IDO-mediated immunosuppression, as we have described in previous paragraphs.

3. Type 1 diabetes mellitus is a T-cell-mediated autoimmune disease that results in the destruction of the insulin-producing β cells of the pancreatic islets of Langerhans. Transplantation of isolated human islets is a possible treatment for human diabetic subjects, although it is necessary immunosuppressive therapy to avoid both recurrence of autoimmunity and allorejection [176]. NOD mouse is a model of autoimmune disease where there is a predisposition to develop type 1 diabetes as a result of a deficiency of both peripheral and central tolerance. Adenoviral gene transfer of IDO to prediabetic NOD mouse pancreatic islets allows the prolongation of islet graft survival into NODscid recipient mice [177]. However, this treatment does not impair the onset of the disease. Apart of the benefits of IDO induction in ameliorating the disease, NO-mediated disruption of the IDO-inducing pathway can provoke type 1 diabetes mellitus in NOD mice [88].

11.3. Transplantation

As it has been described before, the IDO enzyme, via Trp depletion, suppresses adaptive T-cell responses in inflammation, host immune defense, and maternal tolerance. However, its role in solid organ transplantation remains unclear. Several groups have investigated the role of IDO expression in different models of transplantation. A possible role for IDO in modulating the response to a graft was first suggested by the finding that overexpression of IDO in donor pancreatic islets prior to transplantation extended survival in an animal model [177]. In rats, it has been described that IDO-induced Trp metabolites (kynurenine, 3-hydroxykynurenine, and 3-hydroxyanthranilic acid) suppress the T-cell response and prolong skin allograft survival [178].

Also, data obtained from studies of endothelial cells in graft rejectionsuggest that the variable expression of IDO in different endothelial cells is

important not only in the regulation of graft rejection but also could be a potential therapeutic strategy [179, 180]. In addition, available experimental data indicate that IDO may participate in the mechanism of spontaneous donor-specific tolerance of liver grafts [181]. Finally, a recent report found upregulation of IDO in renal biopsies from rejection episodes, a finding absent in nonrejected grafts [182], probably associated with immune activation. Moreover, acute rejection in patients after kidney transplantation is associated with increased serum and urinary kynurenine/Trp ratio.

In summary, based on these findings it appears that cells expressing IDO can inhibit T-cell responses and hence induce tolerance in some models of transplantation. Further studies will be needed to evaluate whether the kynurenine/Trp could be useful in monitoring allograft rejection.

11.4. HIV Immunoescape by Inducing Kynurenine Pathway

Usually after a viral infection, most viruses are either eliminated or suppressed, persisting as a low-damaging latent infection. After infection with HIV, there is a cytotoxic T-lymphocyte and antibody response, but the virus is not definitively eliminated [183]. HIV-1 infection can persist without clinical manifestations for years, despite an apparently functioning host immune system. The virus can induce some tolerogenic mechanisms that may protect itself from immune attacks, such as FAS-ligand expression or downregulation of MHC. Regulatory T cells expressing high levels of CTLA-4 and with suppressive activity are increased in tissues from patients suffering HIV infection and SIV-infected macaques. The administration of antibody that blocks CTLA-4 in SIV-infected macaques treated with antiretroviral therapy decreased IDO expression and the level of the suppressive cytokine TGF-β in tissues [184]. An important effect is that CTLA-4 blockade was associated with decreased viral RNA levels in lymph nodes and increased effector function of both SIV-specific CD4+ and CD8+ T cells. Also, some HIV strains can induce IDO in macrophages [185] and microglia [186], and the immunosuppressive properties of IDO could help virus to avoid cellular immunity. As IDO-expressing infected macrophages are protected from the immune system, this could also serve as a stable viral reservoir. For this reason, pharmacological modulation of this enzyme could help in therapy, as in a murine model, IDO inhibition with 1-methyl-Trp facilitates cytotoxic lymphocyte response against virus-infected macrophages [187].

The kynurenine pathway can also influence the low hemoglobin levels found in HIV-1-positive patients [188]. It is rather speculative, but probably, that Trp degradation arrests proliferation of not only T cells but also other

cells such as erythroid progenitor cells [188]. In addition to participating in the immune evasion of the virus, the kynurenine metabolite quinolinic acid can mediate in the neurological pathogenesis of the disease. Quinolinic acid is an endogenous agonist of the *N*-methyl-D-aspartate receptor, a subtype of the glutamate receptor in brain. Macrophages infected with HIV-1 produce quinolinic acid, and therefore provoke neuronal dysfunction in these patients. Elevated levels of quinolinic acid associated with the severity of neurological symptoms have been found in the CSF of patients with AIDS-related dementia complex [189].

Determination of Trp and kynurenine in serum reflects the activation of the kynurenine degrading pathway in this disease [190–192], and the ratio correlates with the serum concentration of IFN-γ [190]. Patients infected with HIV show increased kynurenine/Trp ratio, which is more noticeable in symptomatic patients [190]. This ratio reflects the stage of the disease and correlates with CD4+ count, the classical parameter of evaluation AIDS patients [191]. Treatment with antiretroviral therapy increases Trp and decreases kynurenine concentrations [192]. It remains to be explored whether treatment with antiretroviral drugs inhibits IDO and other enzymes of the kynurenine pathway.

11.5. Cardiovascular Diseases

Inflammation and immune activation play a role at all stages of the pathogenesis of atherosclerosis and cardiovascular disease. Accordingly, inflammation markers are elevated in patients with clinical and subclinical atherosclerosis and predict cardiovascular events. Interestingly, enhanced Trp degradation and increased serum kynurenine/Trp ratio has been reported in patients with coronary heart disease compared with healthy controls, indicating an activated cellular immune response. The enhanced Trp degradation in these patients has been correlated with enhanced neopterin formation [193].

Macrophages are critically involved in plaque formation and in this cell type IFN-γ induces IDO activity, which degrades Trp via the kynurenine pathway. IFN-γ is a central player in atherogenesis and in the development and progression of cardiovascular disease. It appears that in cardiovascular disease, biochemical reactions induced by IFN-γ may have detrimental consequences for host cells [194]. Finally, in a porcine model of cardiac arrest, the potential use of the Trp degradation rate as a means of estimating the extent of immune activation was evaluated. Results suggested that the kynurenine/Trp ratio could serve as a marker of immune activation [195].

11.6. Neurological and Psychiatric Diseases

Several lines of evidence suggest a link between the immunological network and neuroendocrine functions with consequences in the psychological status of patients. In fact, in chronic inflammatory diseases, mood disorders and related symptoms are observed. These are also observed as adverse effects of the administration of cytokines such as IFN-α and IL-2 that are employed to treat pathologies, such as hepatitis C and cancer. Intriguingly, the most serious side effects are symptoms associated with depression: fatigue, drowsiness, irritability, loss of appetite, and cognitive deficits. Finally, in animals, the administration of proinflammatory cytokines induces changes in the behavior that resemble the vegetative symptoms of depression in humans.

The neurotransmitter serotonin is synthetized by the tetrahydrobiopterin-dependent Trp 5-hydroxylase and appears to play a role in depression symptomatology. In depressed people, changes in serotonin and its receptors have been described. In addition, evidence exists for a dysregulation of the noradrenergic system and a hyperactive hypothalamic–pituitary–adrenal axis in depression:

1. Trp is a source of serotonin generation. Consequently, in states of persistent immune activation, availability of Trp is decreased due to the IDO activity and leads to reduced serotonin production and serotonergic dysfunction [196, 197]. Indeed, increased degradation of Trp and low serum levels of Trp correlate with neuropsychiatric abnormalities such as cognitive decline and depressive symptoms especially in long-lasting chronic diseases [199]. But also, increased degradation of Trp has been demonstrated in patients with depression [196]. This same mechanism is responsible for the depressive states associated with cytokine therapy and those patients developing more pronounced depressive symptoms show a more marked increase in Trp metabolism [200].

2. Another mechanism that may contribute to the development of neurologic/psychiatric disorders is the accumulation of neuroactive kynurenine metabolites such as quinolinic acid, which is an *N*-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptor agonist in situations of Trp depletion [201]. An increase in quinolinic acid is associated with features of depression [189].

3. Proinflammatory cytokines by stimulating IDO lead to Trp depletion, and thus affect serotonin metabolism. Also, IL-1, IL-2, and TNF-α influence noradrenergic activity and IL-1, IL-6, and TNF-α are stimulators of the hypothalamic–pituitary–adrenal axis. Altogether, administration of cytokines may induce alterations in the brain resembling those found in depressed patients, which leads to the hypothesis that cytokines induce depression by their influence on the serotonin, noradrenergic, and hypothalamic–pituitary–adrenal system [202, 203]. In summary, activation of IDO appears to be an

important link between the immune system and the pathogenesis of depression.

Impairment in dopaminergic neurotransmission is crucial in the pathogenesis of schizophrenia, suggesting a disequilibrium between dopaminergic and glutamatergic neurotransmission. The immune system may have effects on glutamatergic neurotransmission mediated by the kynurenine pathway. Glutamatergic hypofunction is mediated by the NMDA-receptor antagonism. The only endogenous NMDA-receptor antagonist identified is kynurenic acid. This metabolite also blocks the nicotinergic acetylcholine receptor and increased kynurenic acid levels can explain psychotic symptoms and cognitive deterioration [204].

In schizophrenia, there is a shift to increased type 2 immune response with two functional consequences: downregulation of the expression of IDO (located in astrocytes and microglial cells) while TDO is upregulated. Also, the TH1/TH2 imbalance is associated with a high activation of astrocytes and imbalance in the activation of astrocytes/microglial cells, which leads to accumulation of kynurenic acid. This happens because astrocytes lack the enzymatic machinery for the normal metabolism of Trp and further production of quinolinic acid. Thus, kynurenic acid accumulates in the CNS, while the metabolic pathway in microglial cells is blocked. Accordingly, an increase in TDO activity has been observed in critical CNS regions of schizophrenics. These mechanisms result in an accumulation of kynurenic acid in critical CNS regions of schizophrenics compared to controls [205]. Thus, the immune-mediated glutamatergic–dopaminergic dysregulation may lead to the clinical symptoms of schizophrenia.

12. Conclusions

Since the discovery of IDO in maintaining pregnancy in mice [2], considerable amount of evidence has shown that the kynurenine pathway induces an active tolerogenic state, helping in the regulation of the quality and intensity of the specific immune response [32]. There is a tight regulation of IDO expression that depends on the multiple incoming signals and also on the capacity of a functional immune system to decide whether this enzyme is active or not. The effect is not restricted to a localized microenvironment but can act at distance and maintaining the specificity by means of regulatory T cells and tolerogenic DCs [32]. However, the mechanism of immunosuppression and the type of DCs that can express IDO should be further clarified [112, 113]. Alterations of this pathway have been implicated in some diseases such as autoimmune diseases. The discovery that tumor cells can use this

metabolic route as a mechanism to evade the immune attack [206] opens a new perspective in the treatment of this disease. For example, drugs that inhibit this pathway emerge as a type of immunomodulator that would help conventional drugs to treat tumors. Very promising are the results obtained

TABLE 1
CLINICAL IMPLICATIONS OF THE KYNURENINE PATHWAY

Disease		Evidence in humans	Mediator	References
Cancer		Tumor cell lines	↑IDO, ↑Kyn	[3, 140]
	Brain	Yes	↑Trp captation	[141]
	Lewis lung carcinoma	Yes	1MTrp increases T cell response	[143]
	Ovary	Yes	↑IDO	[147]
	Colorectum	Yes	↑IDO	[148]
	Melanoma	Yes	↑Kyn	[160]
	Bladder	Yes	↑Kyn	[163]
	Breast, lymphoma	Yes	↑Kyn	[163, 164]
Autoimmune diseases	Multiple sclerosis	Yes	↑IDO, ↑Kyn/trp	[170–172, 174]
	Rheumatoid arthritis	Yes	↑Kyn/trp	[175]
	Type 1 diabetes	No		[88, 176, 177]
Transplantation	Pancreatic islets	No	Overexpression of IDO	[177]
	Rat skin allografts	No	↑Kyn	[178]
	Graft rejection	Yes	IDO	[179, 180]
	Liver graft	Yes	IDO	[181]
	Kidney transplantation	Yes	↑IDOkyn/trp relates to rejection	[182]
AIDS		Yes	↑IDO leads to virus immune escape ↑Kyn/trp	[186, 188–192]
Cardiovascular diseases	Coronary heart disease	Yes	↑Kyn/trp	[193]
	Cardiac arrest	No	↑Kyn/trp	[195]
Neurological and psychiatric diseases	Depression	Yes	↓Trp ↑Quinolinic acid ↑Proinflammatory y cytokines	[196, 198, 202, 203]
	Schizophrenia	Yes	↑Kynurenic acid	[204, 205]

by Muller *et al.* [150] combining IDO inhibitors and conventional cytotoxic drugs. The results obtained by cancer vaccines, that are nowadays rather limited, would also be improved by the use of IDO inhibitors. Considering how important this pathway is in the diseases, some of them mentioned in this chapter (summarized in Table 1), it is very likely that the measurement of the degree of activation of this pathway will be introduced in the routine in clinical laboratory in the near future [207].

References

[1] Aluvihare VR, Kallikourdis M, Betz AG. Tolerance, suppression and the fetal allograft. J Mol Med 2005; 83:88–96.
[2] Munn DH, Zhou M, Attwood JT, Bondarev I, Conway SJ, Marshall B, et al. Prevention of allogeneic fetal rejection by tryptophan catabolism. Science 1998; 281:1191–1193.
[3] Ozaki Y, Edelstein MP, Duch DS. Induction of indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase: A mechanism of the antitumor activity of interferon gamma. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1988; 85:1242–1246.
[4] Thomas S, Garrity L, Brandt C, Schobert CS, Feng GS, Taylor MW, et al. IFN-gamma-mediated antimicrobial response. Indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase-deficient mutant host cells no longer inhibit intracellular *Chlamydia* spp. or *Toxoplasma* growth. J Immunol 1993; 150:5529–5534.
[5] Kotake Y, Masayama T. Uber den mechanismus der Kynurenin-bildung aus tryptophan. Hoppe-Seyler's Z Physiol Chem 1937; 243:237–244.
[6] Thomas SR, Stocker R. Redox reactions related to indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase and tryptophan metabolism along the kynurenine pathway. Redox Rep 1999; 4:199–220.
[7] Taylor M, Feng G. Relationship between interferon-gamma, indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase, and tryptophan catabolism. FASEB J. 1991; 5:2516–2522.
[8] Yoshida R, Hayaishi O. Indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase. Methods Enzymol 1987; 142:188–195.
[9] Dick R, Murray BP, Reid MJ, Correia MA. Structure-function relationships of rat hepatic tryptophan 2,3-dioxygenase: Identification of the putative heme-ligating histidine residues. Arch Biochem Biophys 2001; 392:71–78.
[10] Satyanarayana U, Rao BS. Effect of dietary protein level on some key enzymes of the tryptophan-NAD pathway. Br J Nutr 1977; 38:39–45.
[11] Comings DE, Muhleman D, Dietz G, Sherman M, Forest GL. Sequence of human tryptophan 2,3-dioxygenase (TDO2): Presence of a glucocorticoid response-like element composed of a GTT repeat and an intronic CCCCT repeat. Genomics 1995; 29:390–396.
[12] Yamazaki F, Kuroiwa T, Takikawa O, Kido R. Human indolylamine 2,3-dioxygenase. Its tissue distribution, and characterization of the placental enzyme. Biochem J 1985; 230:635–638.
[13] Satyanarayana U, Rao BS. *In vivo* conversion of tryptophan to nicotinic acid in rats studied by simultaneous incorporation of [^{3}H]-tryptophan and [^{14}C]-nicotinic acid into liver NAD and NADP. Ann Nutr Metab 1983; 27:1–7.
[14] Fujigaki S, Saito K, Takemura M, Fujii H, Wada H, Noma A, et al. Species differences in-tryptophan-kynurenine pathway metabolism: Quantification of anthranilic acid and its related enzymes. Arch Biochem Biophys 1998; 358:329–335.
[15] Heyes MP, Chen CY, Major EO, Saito K. Different kynurenine pathway enzymes limit quinolinic acid formation by various human cell types. Biochem J 1997; 326:351–356.

[16] Heyes MP, Saito K, Major EO, Milstien S, Markey SP, Vickers JH. A mechanism of quinolinic acid formation by brain in inflammatory neurological disease. Attenuation of synthesis from l-tryptophan by 6-chlorotryptophan and 4-chloro-3-hydroxyanthranilate. Brain 1993; 116:1425–1450.
[17] Grant RS, Passey R, Matanovic G, Smythe G, Kapoor V. Evidence for increased de novo synthesis of NAD in immune-activated RAW264.7 macrophages: A self-protective mechanism? Arch Biochem Biophys 1999; 372:1–7.
[18] Kadoya A, Tone S, Maeda H, Minatogawa Y, Kido R. Gene structure of human indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 1992; 189:530–536.
[19] Dai W, Gupta SL. Molecular cloning, sequencing and expression of human interferon-gamma-inducible indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase cDNA. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 1990; 168:1–8.
[20] Habara-Ohkubo A, Takikawa O, Yoshida R. Cloning and expression of a cDNA encoding mouse indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase. Gene 1991; 105:221–227.
[21] Shimizu T, Nomiyama S, Hirata F, Hayaishi O. Indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase. Purification and some properties. J Biol Chem 1978; 253:4700–4706.
[22] Suzuki T, Yuasa H, Imai K. Convergent evolution. The gene structure of Sulculus 41 kDa myoglobin is homologous with that of human indoleamine dioxygenase. Biochim Biophys Acta 1996; 1308:41–48.
[23] Mellor AL, Munn DH. Tryptophan catabolism and T-cell tolerance: Immunosuppression by starvation? Immunol Today 1999; 20:469–473.
[24] Sugimoto H, Oda S, Otsuki T, Hino T, Yoshida T, Shiro Y. Crystal structure of human indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase: Catalytic mechanism of O_2 incorporation by a heme-containing dioxygenase. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2006; 103:2611–2616.
[25] Ozaki Y, Reinhard J, John F, Nichol CA. Cofactor activity of dihydroflavin mononucleotide and tetrahydrobiopterin for murine epididymal indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 1986; 137:1106–1111.
[26] Yamamoto S, Hayaishi O. Tryptophan pyrrolase of rabbit intestine. D- and I-tryptophan-cleaving enzyme or enzymes. J Biol Chem 1967; 242:5260–5266.
[27] Cady SG, Sono M. 1-Methyl-dl-tryptophan, beta-(3-benzofuranyl)-DI-alanine (the oxygen analog of tryptophan), and beta-[3-benzo(B)thienyl]-DI-alanine (the sulfur analog of tryptophan) are competitive inhibitors for indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase. Arch Biochem Biophys 1991; 291:326–333.
[28] Kudo Y, Boyd CAR. The role of l-tryptophan transport in I-tryptophan degradation by indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase in human placental explants. J Physiol (Lond) 2001; 531:417–423.
[29] Agaugue S, Perrin-Cocon L, Coutant F, Andre P, Lotteau V. 1-Methyl-tryptophan can interfere with TLR signaling in dendritic cells independently of IDO activity. J Immunol 2006; 177:2061–2071.
[30] Dietz AB, Bulur PA, Knutson GJ, Matasic R, Vuk-Pavlovic S. Maturation of human monocyte-derived dendritic cells studied by microarray hybridization. Biochem Biophys Res Commun; 2000; 275:731–738.
[31] McIlroy D, Tanguy-Royer S, Le Meur N, Guisle I, Royer PJ, Léger J, et al. Profiling dendritic cell maturation with dedicated microarrays. J Leukoc Biol 2005; 16:16.
[32] Mellor AL, Munn DH. IDO expression by dendritic cells: Tolerance and tryptophan catabolism. Nat Rev Immunol 2004; 4:762–774.
[33] Fallarino F, Vacca C, Orabona C, Belladonna ML, Bianchi R, Marshall B, et al. Functional expression of indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase by murine CD8α+ dendritic cells. Int Immunol 2002; 14:65–68.

[34] Orabona C, Puccetti P, Vacca C, Bicciato S, Luchini A, Fallarino F, et al. Toward the identification of a tolerogenic signature in IDO-competent dendritic cells. Blood 2006; 107:2846–2854.
[35] Lopez AS, Alegre E, Diaz A, Mugueta C, Gonzalez A. Bimodal effect of nitric oxide in the enzymatic activity of indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase in human monocytic cells. Immunol Lett 2006; 106:163–171.
[36] Thomas SR, Salahifar H, Mashima R, Hunt NH, Richardson DR, Stocker R. Antioxidants inhibit indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase in IFN-γ-activated human macrophages: Post-translational regulation by pyrrolidine dithiocarbamate. J Immunol 2001; 166:6332–6340.
[37] Takikawa O, Kuroiwa T, Yamazaki F, Kido R. Mechanism of interferon-γ action. Characterization of indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase in cultured human cells induced by interferon-γ and evaluation of the enzyme-mediated tryptophan degradation in its anticellular activity. J Biol Chem 1988; 263:2041–2048.
[38] Daubener W, Wanagat N, Pilz K, Seghrouchni S, Fischer HG, Hadding U. A new, simple, bioassay for human IFN-γ. J Immunol Methods 1994; 168:39–47.
[39] Alberati-Giani D, Cesura AM. Expression of the kynurenine enzymes in macrophages and microglial cells: Regulation by immune modulators. Amino Acids 1998; 14:251–255.
[40] Munn DH, Sharma MD, Lee JR, Jhaver KG, Johnson TS, Keskin DB, et al. Potential regulatory function of human dendritic cells expressing indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase. Science 2002; 297:1867–1870.
[41] Carlin J, Borden E, Byrne G. Interferon-induced indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase activity inhibits Chlamydia psittaci replication in human macrophages. J Interferon Res 1989; 9:329–337.
[42] Curreli S, Romerio F, Mirandola P, Barion P, Bemis K, Zella D. Human primary CD4+ T cells activated in the presence of IFN-2b express functional indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase. J Interferon Cytokine Res 2001; 21:431–437.
[43] Boasso A, Herbeuval J-P, Hardy AW, Winkler C, Shearer GM. Regulation of indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase and tryptophanyl-tRNA-synthetase by CTLA-4-Fc in human CD4+ T cells. Blood 2005; 105:1574–1581.
[44] Grohmann U, Orabona C, Fallarino F, Vacca C, Calcinaro F, Falorni A, et al. CTLA-4-Ig regulates tryptophan catabolism *in vivo*. Nat Immunol 2002; 3:1097–1101.
[45] Munn DH, Sharma MD, Mellor AL. Ligation of B7–1/B7–2 by human CD4+ T cells triggers indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase activity in dendritic cells. J Immunol 2004; 172: 4100–4110.
[46] Boasso A, Herbeuval J-P, Hardy AW, Winkler C, Shearer GM. Regulation of indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase and tryptophanyl-tRNA-synthetase by CTLA-4-Fc in human CD4+ T cells. Blood 2005; 105:1574–1581.
[47] Fallarino F, Grohmann U, Hwang KW, Orabona C, Vacca C, Bianchi R, et al. Modulation of tryptophan catabolism by regulatory T cells. Nat Immunol 2003; 4:1206–1212.
[48] Krieg AM. Therapeutic potential of Toll-like receptor 9 activation. Nat Rev Drug Discov 2006; 5:471–484.
[49] Hayashi T, Rao SP, Takabayashi K, Van Uden JH, Kornbluth RS, Baird SM, et al. Enhancement of innate immunity against Mycobacterium avium infection by immunostimulatory DNA is mediated by indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase. Infect Immun 2001; 69:6156–6164.
[50] Hayashi T, Beck L, Rossetto C, Gong X, Takikawa O, Takabayashi K, et al. Inhibition of experimental asthma by indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase. J Clin Invest 2004; 114:270–279.
[51] Heikenwalder M, Polymenidou M, Junt T, Sigurdson C, Wagner H, Akira S, et al. Lymphoid follicle destruction and immunosuppression after repeated CpG oligodeoxynucleotide administration. Nat Med 2004; 10:187–192.

[52] Fallarino F, Puccetti P. Toll-like receptor 9-mediated induction of the immunosuppressive pathway of tryptophan catabolism. Eur J Immunol 2006; 36:8–11.
[53] Mellor AL, Baban B, Chandler PR, Manlapat A, Kahler DJ, Munn DH. Cutting edge: CpG oligonucleotides induce splenic CD19+ dendritic cells to acquire potent indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase-dependent T cell regulatory functions via IFN type 1 signaling. J Immunol 2005; 175:5601–5605.
[54] Wingender G, Garbi N, Schumak B, Jüngerkes F, Endl E, Von Bubnoff D, et al. Systemic application of CpG-rich DNA suppresses adaptive T cell immunity via induction of IDO. Eur J Immunol 2006; 36:12–20.
[55] Myers LM, Vella AT. Interfacing T-cell effector and regulatory function through CD137 (4–1BB) co-stimulation. Trends Immunol 2005; 26:440–446.
[56] Arribillaga L, Sarobe P, Arina A, Gorraiza M, Borrás-Cuestaa F, Ruiza J, et al. Enhancement of CD4 and CD8 immunity by anti-CD137 (4–1BB) monoclonal antibodies during hepatitis C vaccination with recombinant adenovirus. Vaccine 2005; 23:3493–3499.
[57] Melero I, Hervas-Stubbs S, Glennie M, Pardoll D, Chen L. Immunostimulatory monoclonal antibodies for cancer therapy. Nat Rev Cancer 2007; 7:95–106.
[58] Seo SK, Choi JH, Kim YH, Kang WJ, Park HY, Suh JH, et al. 4–1BB-mediated immunotherapy of rheumatoid arthritis. Nat Med 2004; 10:1088–1094.
[59] Choi BK, Asai T, Vinay DS, Kim YH, Kwon BS. 4–1BB-mediated amelioration of experimental autoimmune uveoretinitis is caused by indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase-dependent mechanisms. Cytokine 2006; 34:233–242.
[60] Hassanain H, Chon S, Gupta S. Differential regulation of human indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase gene expression by interferons-γ and -α. Analysis of the regulatory region of the gene and identification of an interferon-γ-inducible DNA-binding factor. J Biol Chem 1993; 268:5077–5084.
[61] Chon SY, Hassanain HH, Gupta SL. Cooperative role of interferon regulatory factor 1 and p91 (STAT1) response elements in interferon-gamma-inducible expression of human indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase gene. J Biol Chem 1996; 271:17247–17252.
[62] Silva NM, Rodrigues CV, Santoro MM, Reis LFL, Alvarez-Leite JI, Gazzinelli RT. Expression of indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase, tryptophan degradation, and kynurenine formation during *in vivo* infection with *Toxoplasma gondii:* Induction by endogenous gamma interferon and requirement of interferon regulatory factor 1. Infect Immun 2002; 70:859–868.
[63] Fujigaki H, Saito K, Fujigaki S, Sudo K, Ishiguro H, Seishima M, et al. The signal transducer and activator of transcription 1α and interferon regulatory factor 1 are not essential for the induction of indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase by lipopolysaccharide: Involvement of p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase and nuclear factor-κB pathways, and synergistic effect of several proinflammatory cytokines. J Biochem (Tokyo) 2006; 139:655–662.
[64] Lopez AS, Alegre E, LeMaoult J, Carosella E, Gonzalez A. Regulatory role of tryptophan degradation pathway in HLA-G expression by human monocyte-derived dendritic cells. Mol Immunol 2006; 43:2151–2160.
[65] Widner B, Werner ER, Schennach H, Wachter H, Fuchs D. Simultaneous measurement of serum tryptophan and kynurenine by HPLC. Clin Chem 1997; 43:2424–2426.
[66] Alegre E, Lopez AS, Gonzalez A. Tryptophan metabolites interfere with the Ehrlich reaction used for the measurement of kynurenine. Anal Biochem 2005; 339:188–189.
[67] Ito Y, Saito K, Maruta K, Nakagami Y, Koike T, Oguri Y, et al. Kynurenine concentration of serum was increased by exercise. Adv Exp Med Biol 1999; 467:717–722.
[68] Moffett JR, Namboodiri MA. Tryptophan and the immune response. Immunol Cell Biol 2003; 81:247–265.

[69] Medana IM, Hien TT, Day NP, Phu NH, Mai NTH, Van Chu'ong L, et al. The clinical significance of cerebrospinal fluid levels of kynurenine pathway metabolites and lactate in severe malaria. J Infect Dis 2002; 185:650–656.
[70] Saito K, Fujigaki S, Heyes MP, Shibata K, Takemura M, Fujii H, et al. Mechanism of increases in l-kynurenine and quinolinic acid in renal insufficiency. Am J Physiol Renal Physiol 2000; 279:F565–F572.
[71] Stone TW. Kynurenines in the CNS: From endogenous obscurity to therapeutic importance. Prog Neurobiol 2001; 64:185–218.
[72] Holmes EW. Determination of serum kynurenine and hepatic tryptophan dioxygenase activity by high-performance liquid chromatography. Anal Biochem 1988; 172:518–525.
[73] Marfella A, Bilancio A, Polese C, Iodice F, Edmondo C, Cerasuolo D, et al. Urinary neopterin and kynurenine in patients submitted to surgical stress with different inhalational anesthetics (halothane or isoflurane). Int J Immunopharmacol 1999; 21:423–433.
[74] Pawlak D, Tankiewicz A, Mysliwiec P, Buczko W. Tryptophan metabolism via the kynurenine pathway in experimental chronic renal failure. Nephron 2002; 90:328–335.
[75] Pawlak D, Tankiewicz A, Matys T, Buczko W. Peripheral distribution of kynurenine metabolites and activity of kynurenine pathway enzymes in renal failure. J Physiol Pharmacol 2003; 54:175–189.
[76] Bogdan C. Nitric oxide and the immune response. Nat Immunol 2001; 2:907–916.
[77] Ignarro LJ. Haem-dependent activation of guanylate cyclase and cyclic GMP formation by endogenous nitric oxide: A unique transduction mechanism for transcellular signaling. Pharmacol Toxicol 1990; 67:1–7.
[78] Khatsenko O, Gross S, Rifkind A, Vane J. Nitric oxide is a mediator of the decrease in cytochrome P450-dependent metabolism caused by immunostimulants. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1993; 90:11147–11151.
[79] Gow AJ, Farkouh CR, Munson DA, Posencheg MA, Ischiropoulos H. Biological significance of nitric oxide-mediated protein modifications. Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol 2004; 287:L262–L268.
[80] Thomas S, Mohr D, Stocker R. Nitric oxide inhibits indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase activity in interferon-γ primed mononuclear phagocytes. J Biol Chem 1994; 269:14457–14464.
[81] Alberati-Giani D, Malherbe P, Ricciardi-Castagnoli P, Kohler C, Denis-Donini S, Cesura A. Differential regulation of indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase expression by nitric oxide and inflammatory mediators in IFN-γ-activated murine macrophages and microglial cells. J Immunol 1997; 159:419–426.
[82] Fujigaki H, Saito K, Lin F, Fujigaki S, Takahashi K, Martin BM, et al. Nitration and inactivation of IDO by peroxynitrite. J Immunol 2006; 176:372–379.
[83] Fallarino F, Bianchi R, Orabona C, Vacca C, Belladonna ML, Fioretti MC, et al. CTLA-4-Ig activates forkhead transcription factors and protects dendritic cells from oxidative stress in nonobese diabetic mice. J Exp Med 2004; 200:1051–1062.
[84] Hucke C, MacKenzie CR, Adjogble KDZ, Takikawa O, Daubener W. Nitric oxide-mediated regulation of gamma interferon-induced bacteriostasis: Inhibition and degradation of human indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase. Infect Immun 2004; 72:2723–2730.
[85] Souza JM, Choi I, Chen Q, Weisse M, Daikhin E, Yudkoff M, et al. Proteolytic degradation of tyrosine nitrated proteins. Arch Biochem Biophys 2000; 380:360–366.
[86] Muhl H, Pfeilschifter J. Endothelial nitric oxide synthase: A determinant of TNFα production by human monocytes/macrophages. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 2003; 310:677–680.
[87] Roman V, Dugas N, Abadie A, Amirand C, Zhao H, Dugas B, et al. Characterization of a constitutive type III nitric oxide synthase in human U937 monocytic cells: Stimulation by soluble CD23. Immunology 1997; 91:643–648.

[88] Grohmann U, Fallarino F, Bianchi R, Orabona C, Vacca C, Fioretti MC, et al. A defect in tryptophan catabolism impairs tolerance in nonobese diabetic mice. J Exp Med 2003; 198:153–160.
[89] Melillo G, Cox GW, Biragyn A, Sheffler LA, Varesio L. Regulation of nitric-oxide synthase mRNA expression by interferon-gamma and picolinic acid. J Biol Chem 1994; 269:8128–8133.
[90] Sekkai D, Guittet O, Lemaire G, Tenu J-P, Lepoivre M. Inhibition of nitric oxide synthase expression and activity in macrophages by 3-hydroxyanthranilic acid, a tryptophan metabolite. Arch Biochem Biophys 1997; 340:117–123.
[91] Yoshida R, Hayaishi O. Induction of pulmonary indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase by intraperitoneal injection of bacterial lipopolysaccharide. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1978; 75:3998–4000.
[92] Takikawa O, Yoshida R, Kido R, Hayaishi O. Tryptophan degradation in mice initiated by indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase. J Biol Chem 1986; 261:3648–3653.
[93] MacKenzie CR, Hadding U, Daubener W. Interferon-gamma-induced activation of indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase in cord blood monocyte-derived macrophages inhibits the growth of group B streptococci. J Infect Dis 1998; 178:875–878.
[94] Murray HW, Szuro-Sudol A, Wellner D, Oca MJ, Granger AM, Libby DM, et al. Role of tryptophan degradation in respiratory burst-independent antimicrobial activity of gamma interferon-stimulated human macrophages. Infect Immun 1989; 57:845–849.
[95] Bodaghi B, Goureau O, Zipeto D, Laurent L, Virelizier J-L, Michelson S. Role of IFN-γ-induced indoleamine 2,3 dioxygenase and inducible nitric oxide synthase in the replication of human cytomegalovirus in retinal pigment epithelial cells. J Immunol 1999; 162:957–964.
[96] Adams O, Besken K, Oberdörfer C, MacKenzie CR, Rüβing D, Daübener W. Inhibition of human herpes simplex virus type 2 by interferon γ and tumor necrosis factor α is mediated by indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase. Microbes Infect 2004; 6:806–812.
[97] Gupta SL, Carlin JM, Pyati P, Dai W, Pfefferkorn ER, Murphy MJ, Jr.. Antiparasitic and antiproliferative effects of indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase enzyme expression in human fibroblasts. Infect Immun 1994; 62:2277–2284.
[98] Bozza S, Fallarino F, Pitzurra L, Zelante T, Montagnoli C, Bellocchio S, et al. A crucial role for tryptophan catabolism at the host/*Candida albicans* interface. J Immunol 2005; 174:2910–2918.
[99] van Wissen M, Snoek M, Smids B, Jansen HM, Lutter R. IFN-γ amplifies IL-6 and IL-8 responses by airway epithelial-like cells via indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase. J Immunol 2002; 169:7039–7044.
[100] Mellor AL, Keskin DB, Johnson T, Chandler P, Munn DH. Cells expressing indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase inhibit T cell responses. J Immunol 2002; 168:3771–3776.
[101] Munn DH, Shafizadeh E, Attwood JT, Bondarev I, Pashine A, Mellor AL. Inhibition of T cell proliferation by macrophage tryptophan catabolism. J Exp Med 1999; 189:1363–1372.
[102] Munn D, Pressey J, Beall A, Hudes R, Alderson M. Selective activation-induced apoptosis of peripheral T cells imposed by macrophages. A potential mechanism of antigen-specific peripheral lymphocyte deletion. J Immunol 1996; 156:523–532.
[103] Frumento G, Rotondo R, Tonetti M, Damonte G, Benatti U, Ferrara GB. Tryptophan-derived catabolites are responsible for inhibition of T and natural killer cell proliferation induced by indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase. J Exp Med 2002; 196:459–468.
[104] Terness P, Bauer TM, Rose L, Dufter C, Watzlik A, Simon H, et al. Inhibition of allogeneic T cell proliferation by indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase-expressing dendritic cells: Mediation of suppression by tryptophan metabolites. J Exp Med 2002; 196:447–457.

[105] Della Chiesa M, Carlomagno S, Frumento G, Balsamo M, Cantoni C, Conte R, et al. The tryptophan catabolite l-kynurenine inhibits the surface expression of NKp46 and NKG2D activating receptors and regulates NK cell function. Blood 2006; 105:4118–4125.
[106] Steinman RM, Hawiger D, Nussenzweig MC. Tolerogenic dendritic cells. Annu Rev Immunol 2003; 21:685–711.
[107] Hwu P, Du MX, Lapointe R, Do M, Taylor MW, Young HA. Indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase production by human dendritic cells results in the inhibition of T cell proliferation. J Immunol 2000; 164:3596–3599.
[108] Fallarino F, Orabona C, Vacca C, Bianchi R, Gizzi S, Asselin-Paturel C, et al. Ligand and cytokine dependence of the immunosuppressive pathway of tryptophan catabolism in plasmacytoid dendritic cells. Int Immunol 2005; 17:1429–1438.
[109] Fallarino F, Asselin-Paturel C, Vacca C, Bianchi R, Gizzi S, Fioretti MC, et al. Murine plasmacytoid dendritic cells initiate the immunosuppressive pathway of tryptophan catabolism in response to CD200 receptor engagement. J Immunol 2004; 173:3748–3754.
[110] Braun D, Longman RS, Albert ML. A two step induction of indoleamine 2,3 dioxygenase (IDO) activity during dendritic cell maturation. Blood 2005; 106:2375–2381.
[111] Terness P, Chuang J-J, Bauer T, Jiga L, Opelz G. Regulation of human auto- and alloreactive T cells by indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase (IDO)-producing dendritic cells: Too much ado about IDO? Blood 2005; 105:2480–2486.
[112] Munn DH, Mellor AL, Rossi M, Young JW. Dendritic cells have the option to express IDO-mediated suppression or not. Blood 2005; 105:2618.
[113] Terness P, Chuang JJ, Opelz G. The immunoregulatory role of IDO-producing dendritic cells revisited. Trends Immunol 2006; 27:68–73.
[114] Fallarino F, Grohmann U, You S, McGrath BC, Cavener DR, Vacca C, et al. The combined effects of tryptophan starvation and tryptophan catabolites down-regulate T cell receptor ζ-chain and induce a regulatory phenotype in naive T cells. J Immunol 2006; 176:6752–6761.
[115] Munn DH, Sharma MD, Hou D, Baban B, Lee JR, Antonia SJ, et al. Expression of indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase by plasmacytoid dendritic cells in tumor-draining lymph nodes. J Clin Invest 2004; 114:280–290.
[116] Lee JR, Dalton RR, Messina JL, Sharma MD, Smith DM, Burgess RE, et al. Pattern of recruitment of immunoregulatory antigen-presenting cells in malignant melanoma. Lab Invest 2003; 83:1457–1466.
[117] Belladonna ML, Grohmann U, Guidetti P, Volpi C, Bianchi R, Fioretti MC, et al. Kynurenine pathway enzymes in dendritic cells initiate tolerogenesis in the absence of functional IDO. J Immunol 2006; 177:130–137.
[118] Grohmann U, Bianchi R, Belladonna ML, Silla S, Fallarino F, Fioretti MC, et al. IFN-γ inhibits presentation of a tumor/self peptide by CD8α-dendritic cells via potentiation of the CD8α+ subset. J Immunol 2000; 165:1357–1363.
[119] Munn DH, Sharma MD, Baban B, Harding HP, Yuhong Z, Ron D, et al. GCN2 kinase in T cells mediates proliferative arrest and anergy induction in response to indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase. Immunity 2005; 22:633–642.
[120] Kudo Y, Boyd CA. Human placental indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase: Cellular localization and characterization of an enzyme preventing fetal rejection. Biochim Biophys Acta 2000; 1500:119–124.
[121] Kudo Y, Boyd CA. The physiology of immune evasion during pregnancy the critical role of placental tryptophan metabolism and transport. Pflug Arch Eur J Phys 2001; 442:639–641.
[122] Seymour RL, Ganapathy V, Mellor AL, Munn DH. A high-affinity, tryptophan-selective amino acid transport system in human macrophages. J Leukoc Biol 2006; 80:1320–1327.

[123] Kliman HJ. Uteroplacental blood flow: The story of decidualization, menstruation, and trophoblast invasion. Am J Pathol 2000; 157:1759–1768.
[124] Paolini CL, Meschia G, Fennessey PV, Pike AW, Teng C, Battaglia FC, et al. An *in vivo* study of ovine placental transport of essential amino acids. Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab 2001; 280:E31–E39.
[125] Fallarino F, Grohmann U, Vacca C, Bianchi R, Orabona C, Spreca A, et al. T cell apoptosis by tryptophan catabolism. Cell Death Differ 2002; 9:1069–1077.
[126] Mellor AL, Munn DH. Tryptophan catabolism and regulation of adaptive immunity. J Immunol 2003; 170:5809–5813.
[127] Mellor AL, Sivakumar J, Chandler P, Smith K, Molina H, Mao D, et al. Prevention of T cell-driven complement activation and inflammation by tryptophan catabolism during pregnancy. Nat Immunol 2001; 2:64–68.
[128] Moffett A, Loke C. Immunology of placentation in eutherian mammals. Nat Rev Immunol 2006; 6:584–594.
[129] Kudo Y, Boyd CAR, Spyropoulou I, Redman CW, Takikawa O, Katsuki T, et al. Indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase: Distribution and function in the developing human placenta. J Reprod Immunol 2004; 61:87–98.
[130] Steckel NK, Koldehoff M, Beelen DW, Elmaagacli AH. Indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase expression in monocytes of healthy nonpregnant women after induction with human choriongonadotropine. Scand J Immunol 2005; 61:213–214.
[131] Kudo Y, Boyd CAR, Sargent IL, Redman CWG. Decreased tryptophan catabolism by placental indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase in preeclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 2003; 188:719–726.
[132] Kohl C, Walch T, Huber R, Kemmler G, Neurauter G, Fuchs D, et al. Measurement of tryptophan, kynurenine and neopterin in women with and without postpartum blues. J Affect Disord 2005; 86:135–142.
[133] Miwa N, Hayakawa S, Miyazaki S, Myojo S, Sasaki Y, Sakai M, et al. IDO expression on decidual and peripheral blood dendritic cells and monocytes/macrophages after treatment with CTLA-4 or interferon-γ increase in normal pregnancy but decrease in spontaneous abortion. Mol Hum Reprod 2005; 11:865–870.
[134] Baban B, Chandler P, McCool D, Marshall B, Munn DH, Mellor AL. Indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase expression is restricted to fetal trophoblast giant cells during murine gestation and is maternal genome specific. J Reprod Immunol 2004; 61:67–77.
[135] Rouas-Freiss N, Goncalves RM-B, Menier C, Dausset J, Carosella ED. Direct evidence to support the role of HLA-G in protecting the fetus from maternal uterine natural killer cytolysis. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1997; 94:11520–11525.
[136] Le Rond S, Gonzalez A, Gonzalez ASL, Carosella ED, Rouas-Freiss N. Indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase and human leucocyte antigen-G inhibit the T-cell alloproliferative response through two independent pathways. Immunology 2005; 116:297–307.
[137] Gonzalez A, LeMaoult J, Lopez A, Alegre E, Caumartin J, Le Rond S, et al. Linking two immuno-suppressive molecules: Indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase can modify HLA-G cell-surface expression. Biol Reprod 2005; 73:571–578.
[138] Carosella ED, Moreau P, Le Maoult J, Le Discorde M, Dausset J, Rouas-Freiss N. HLA-G molecules: From maternal-fetal tolerance to tissue acceptance. Adv Immunol 2003; 81: 199–252.
[139] Uyttenhove C, Pilotte L, Theate I, Stroobant V, Colau D, Parmentier N, et al. Evidence for a tumoral immune resistance mechanism based on tryptophan degradation by indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase. Nat Med 2003; 9:1269–1274.
[140] Boyland E, Williams DC. The metabolism of tryptophan. 2. The metabolism of tryptophan in patients suffering from cancer of the bladder. Biochem J 1956; 64:578–582.

[141] Werner-Felmayer G, Werner E, Fuchs D, Hausen A, Reibnegger G, Wachter H. Characteristics of interferon induced tryptophan metabolism in human cells *in vitro*. Biochim Biophys Acta 1989; 1012:140–147.
[142] Juhasz C, Chugani DC, Muzik O, Wu D, Sloan AE, Barger G, et al. *In vivo* uptake and metabolism of α-^{11}Cmethyl-I-tryptophan in human brain tumors. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 2005; 26:345–357.
[143] Friberg M, Jennings R, Alsarraj M, Dessureault S, Cantor A, Extermann M, et al. Indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase contributes to tumor cell evasion of T cell-mediated rejection. Int J Cancer 2002; 101:151–155.
[144] Kim R, Emi M, Tanabe K, Arihiro K. Tumor-driven evolution of immunosuppressive networks during malignant progression. Cancer Res 2006; 66:5527–5536.
[145] Dunn GP, Bruce AT, Ikeda H, Old LJ, Schreiber RD. Cancer immunoediting: From immunosurveillance to tumor escape. Nat Immunol 2002; 3:991–998.
[146] Muller AJ, Prendergast GC. Marrying immunotherapy with chemotherapy: Why say IDO? Cancer Res 2005; 65:8065–8068.
[147] Okamoto A, Nikaido T, Ochiai K, Takakura S, Saito M, Aoki Y, et al. Indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase serves as a marker of poor prognosis in gene expression profiles of serous ovarian cancer cells. Clin Cancer Res 2005; 11:6030–6039.
[148] Brandacher G, Perathoner A, Ladurner R, Schneeberger S, Obrist P, Winkler C, et al. Prognostic value of indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase expression in colorectal cancer: Effect on tumor-infiltrating T cells. Clin Cancer Res 2006; 12:1144–1151.
[149] Ino K, Yoshida N, Kajiyama H, Shibata K, Yamamoto E, Kidokoro K, et al. Indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase is a novel prognostic indicator for endometrial cancer. Br J Cancer 2006; 95:1555–1561.
[150] Muller AF, Duhadaway JB, Donover PS, Sutanto-Ward E, Prendergast G. Inhibition of indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase, an immunoregulatory target of the cancer suppression gene Bin1, potentiates cancer chemotherapy. Nat Med 2005; 11:312–319.
[151] Bild AH, Turkson J, Jove R. Cytoplasmic transport of STAT3 by receptor-mediated endocytosis. EMBO J. 2002; 21:3255–3263.
[152] Pereg D, Lishner M. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs for the prevention and treatment of cancer. J Intern Med 2005; 258:115–123.
[153] Basu GD, Tinder TL, Bradley JM, Tu T, Hattrup CL, Pockaj BA, et al. Cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitor enhances the efficacy of a breast cancer vaccine: Role of IDO. J Immunol 2006; 177:2391–2402.
[154] Sayama S, Yoshida R, Oku T, Imanishi J, Kishida T, Hayaishi O. Inhibition of interferon-mediated induction of indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase in mouse lung by inhibitors of prostaglandin biosynthesis. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 1981; 78:7327–7330.
[155] Munn DH, Mellor AL. IDO and tolerance to tumors. Trends Mol Med 2004; 10:15–18.
[156] Ishio T, Goto S, Tahara K, Tone S, Kawano K, Kitano S. Immunoactivative role of indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase in human hepatocellular carcinoma. J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2004; 19:319–326.
[157] Astigiano S, Morandi B, Costa R, Mastracci L, D'Agostino A, Ratto GB, et al. Eosinophil granulocytes account for indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase-mediated immune escape in human non-small cell lung cancer. Neoplasia 2005; 7:390–396.
[158] Scoggins CR, Chagpar AB, Martin RC, McMasters KM. Should sentinel lymph-node biopsy be used routinely for staging melanoma and breast cancers? Nat Clin Pract Oncol 2005; 2:448–455.
[159] Huang A, Fuchs D, Widner B, Glover C, Henderson DC, Allen-Mersh TG. Serum tryptophan decrease correlates with immune activation and impaired quality of life in colorectal cancer. Br J Cancer 2002; 86:1691–1696.

[160] Weinlich G, Murr C, Richardsen L, Winkler C, Fuchs D. Decreased serum tryptophan concentration predicts poor prognosis in malignant melanoma patients. Dermatology 2007; 214:8–14.
[161] Denz H, Orth B, Weiss G, Herrmann R, Huber P, Wachter H, et al. Weight loss in patients with hematological neoplasias is associated with immune system stimulation. Clin Investig 1993; 71:37–41.
[162] Huang A, Fuchs D, Widner B, Glover C, Henderson DC, Allen-Mersh TG. Tryptophan and quality of life in colorectal cancer. Adv Exp Med Biol. 2003; 527:353–358.
[163] Gailani S, Murphy G, Kenny G, Nussbaum A, Silvernail P. Studies on tryptophan metabolism in patients with bladder cancer. Cancer Res 1973; 33:1071–1077.
[164] Gailani S, Ezdinli E, Nussbaum A, Silvernail P, Elias EG. Studies on tryptophan metabolism in patients with lymphoma. Cancer Res 1974; 34:1664–1667.
[165] Schroecksnadel K, Winkler C, Fuith LC, Fuchs D. Tryptophan degradation in patients with gynecological cancer correlates with immune activation. Cancer Lett 2005; 223:323–329.
[166] Brown RR, Lee CM, Kohler PC, Hank JA, Storer BE, Sondel PM. Altered tryptophan and neopterin metabolism in cancer patients treated with recombinant interleukin 2. Cancer Res 1989; 49:4941–4944.
[167] Schiller JH, Witt PL, Storer B, Alberti D, Tombes MB, Arzoomanian R, et al. Clinical and biologic effects of combination therapy with gamma-interferon and tumor necrosis factor. Cancer 1992; 69:562–571.
[168] Wobser M, Voigt H, Houben R, Eggert AO, Freiwald M, Kaemmerer U, et al. Dendritic cell based antitumor vaccination: Impact of functional indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase expression. Cancer Immunol Immunother 2007; 56:1017–1024.
[169] Muller AJ, Scherle PA. Targeting the mechanisms of tumoral immune tolerance with small-molecule inhibitors. Nat Rev Cancer 2006; 6:613–625.
[170] Amirkhani A, Rajda C, Arvidsson B, Bencsik K, Boda K, Seres E, et al. Interferon-beta affects the tryptophan metabolism in multiple sclerosis patients. Eur J Neurol 2005; 12:625–631.
[171] Sakurai K, Zou J-P, Tschetter JR, Ward JM, Shearer GM. Effect of indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase on induction of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Neuroimmunol 2002; 129:186–196.
[172] Kwidzinski E, Bunse J, Aktas O, Richter D, Mutlu L, Zipp F, et al. Indolamine 2,3-dioxygenase is expressed in the CNS and down-regulates autoimmune inflammation. FASEB J 2005; 19:1347–1349.
[173] Willenborg D, Fordham S, Bernard C, Cowden W, Ramshaw I. IFN-gamma plays a critical down-regulatory role in the induction and effector phase of myelin oligodendrocyte glycoprotein-induced autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Immunol 1996; 157:3223–3227.
[174] Platten M, Ho PP, Youssef S, Fontoura P, Garren H, Hur EM, et al. Treatment of autoimmune neuroinflammation with a synthetic tryptophan metabolite. Science 2005; 310:850–855.
[175] Schroecksnadel K, Kaser S, Ledochowski M, Neurauter G, Mur E, Herold M, et al. Increased degradation of tryptophan in blood of patients with rheumatoid arthritis. J Rheumatol 2003; 30:1935–1939.
[176] Shapiro AMJ, Lakey JRT, Ryan EA, Korbutt GS, Toth E, Warnock GL, et al. Islet transplantation in seven patients with type 1 diabetes mellitus using a glucocorticoid-free immunosuppressive regimen. N Engl J Med 2000; 343:230–238.
[177] Alexander AM, Crawford M, Bertera S, Rudert WA, Takikawa O, Robbins PD, et al. Indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase expression in transplanted NOD islets prolongs graft survival after adoptive transfer of diabetogenic splenocytes. Diabetes 2002; 51:356–365.

[178] Bauer TM, Jiga LP, Chuang J-J, Randazzo M, Opelz G, Terness P. Studying the immunosuppressive role of indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase: Tryptophan metabolites suppress rat allogeneic T-cell responses *in vitro* and *in vivo*. Transplant Int 2005; 18:95–100.

[179] Beutelspacher SC, Tan PH, McClure MO, Larkin DFP, Lechler RI, George AJT. Expression of indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase (IDO) by endothelial cells: Implications for the control of alloresponses. Am J Transplant 2006; 6:1320–1330.

[180] Beutelspacher SC, Pillai R, Watson MP, Tan PH, Tsang J, McClure MO, et al. Function of indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase in corneal allograft rejection and prolongation of allograft survival by over-expression. Eur J Immunol 2006; 36:690–700.

[181] Miki T, Sun H, Lee Y, Tandin A, Kovscek AM, Subbotin V, et al. Blockade of tryptophan catabolism prevents spontaneous tolerogenicity of liver allografts. Transplant Proc 2001; 33:129–130.

[182] Brandacher G, Cakar F, Winkler C, Schneeberger S, Obrist P, Bösmüller C, et al. Noninvasive monitoring of kidney allograft rejection through IDO metabolism evaluation. Kidney Int 2007; 71:60–67.

[183] McMichael AJ, Rowland-Jones SL. Cellular immune responses to HIV. Nature 2001; 410:980–987.

[184] Hryniewicz A, Boasso A, Edghill-Smith Y, Vaccari M, Fuchs D, Venzon D, et al. CTLA-4 blockade decreases TGF-beta, IDO, and viral RNA expression in tissues of SIVmac251-infected macaques. Blood 2006; 108:3834–3842.

[185] Grant RS, Naif H, Thuruthyil SJ, Nasr N, Littlejohn T, Takikawa O, et al. Induction of indolamine 2,3-dioxygenase in primary human macrophages by human immunodeficiency virus type 1 is strain dependent. J Virol 2000; 74:4110–4115.

[186] Burudi EME, Marcondes MCG, Watry DD, Zandonatti M, Taffe MA, Fox HS. Regulation of indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase expression in simian immunodeficiency virus-infected monkey brains. J Virol 2002; 76:12233–12241.

[187] Potula R, Poluektova L, Knipe B, Chrastil J, Heilman D, Huanyu D, et al. Inhibition of indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase (IDO) enhances elimination of virus-infected macrophages in an animal model of HIV-1 encephalitis. Blood 2005; 106:2382–2390.

[188] Wirleitner B, Schroecksnadel K, Winkler C, Fuchs D. Neopterin in HIV-1 infection. Mol Immunol 2005; 42:183–194.

[189] Heyes MP, Brew BJ, Martin A, Price RW, Salazar AM, Sidtis JJ, et al. Quinolinic acid in cerebrospinal fluid and serum in HIV-1 infection: Relationship to clinical and neurological status. Ann Neurol 1991; 29:202–209.

[190] Fuchs D, Moller AA, Reibnegger G, Werner ER, Werner-Felmayer G, Dierich MP, et al. Increased endogenous interferon-gamma and neopterin correlate with increased degradation of tryptophan in human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection. Immunol Lett 1991; 28:207–211.

[191] Huengsberg M, Winer JB, Gompels M, Round R, Ross J, Shahmanesh M. Serum kynurenine-to-tryptophan ratio increases with progressive disease in HIV-infected patients. Clin Chem 1998; 44:858–862.

[192] Neurauter G, Zangerle R, Widner B, Quirchmair G, Sarcletti M, Fuchs D. Effective antiretroviral therapy reduces degradation of tryptophan in patients with HIV-1 infection. Adv Exp Med Biol 2003; 527:317–323.

[193] Wirleitner B, Rudzite V, Neurauter G, Murr C, Kalnins U, Erglis A, et al. Immune activation and degradation of tryptophan in coronary heart disease. Eur J Clin Invest 2003; 33:550–554.

[194] Schroecksnadel K, Frick B, Winkler C, Fuchs D. Crucial role of interferon-γ and stimulated macrophages in cardiovascular disease. Curr Vasc Pharmacol 2006; 4:205–213.

[195] Amann A, Widner B, Rieder J, Antretter H, Hoffmann G, Mayr V, et al. Monitoring of immune activation using biochemical changes in a porcine model of cardiac arrest. Mediators Inflamm 2001; 10:343–346.
[196] Maes M, Meltzer HY, Scharpe S, Bosmans E, Suy E, De Meester I, et al. Relationships between lower plasma L-tryptophan levels and immune-inflammatory variables in depression. Psychiatry Res 1993; 49:151–165.
[197] Wirleitner B, Neurauter G, Schrocksnadel K, Frick B, Fuchs D. Interferon-gamma-induced conversion of tryptophan: Immunologic and neuropsychiatric aspects. Curr Med Chem 2003; 10:1581–1591.
[198] Price LH, Malison RT, McDougle CJ, Pelton GH, Heninger GR. The neurobiology of tryptophan depletion in depression: Effects of intravenous tryptophan infusion. Biol Psychiatry 1998; 43:339–347.
[199] Widner B, Laich A, Sperner-Unterweger B, Ledochowski M, Fuchs D. Neopterin production, tryptophan degradation, and mental depression—What is the link? Brain Behav Immun 2002; 16:590–595.
[200] Muller N, Schwarz MJ. Neuroimmune-endocrine crosstalk in schizophrenia and mood disorders. Expert Rev Neurother 2006; 6:1017–1038.
[201] Freese A, Swartz KJ, During MJ, Martin JB. Kynurenine metabolites of tryptophan: Implications for neurologic diseases. Neurology 1990; 40:691–695.
[202] Wichers M, Maes M. The psychoneuroimmuno-pathophysiology of cytokine-induced depression in humans. Int J Neuropsychopharmacol 2002; 5:375–388.
[203] Zalcman S, Murray L, Dyck DG, Greenberg AH, Nance DM. Interleukin-2 and -6 induce behavioral-activating effects in mice. Brain Res 1998; 811:111–121.
[204] Muller N, Schwarz M. Schizophrenia as an inflammation-mediated dysbalance of glutamatergic neurotransmission. Neurotox Res 2006; 10:131–148.
[205] Miller CL, Llenos IC, Dulay JR, Barillo MM, Yolken RH, Weis S. Expression of the kynurenine pathway enzyme tryptophan 2,3-dioxygenase is increased in the frontal cortex of individuals with schizophrenia. Neurobiol Dis 2004; 15:618–629.
[206] Gajewski TF. Identifying and overcoming immune resistance mechanisms in the melanoma tumor microenvironment. Clin Cancer Res 2006; 12:2326–2330.
[207] Maneglier B, Rogez-Kreuz C, Cordonnier P, Therond P, Advenier C, Dormont D, et al. Simultaneous measurement of kynurenine and tryptophan in human plasma and supernatants of cultured human cells by HPLC with coulometric detection. Clin Chem 2004; 50:2166–2168.

This page intentionally left blank

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF TUMOR-ASSOCIATED MACROPHAGES

Ang Yuan,*,§ Jeremy J.-W. Chen,†,‡ and Pan-Chyr Yang†,§

***Department of Emergency Medicine, National Taiwan University Hospital, Taipei, Taiwan**
†Center for Genomic Medicine, National Taiwan University College of Medicine, Taipei, Taiwan
‡Institutes of Biomedical Sciences and Molecular Biology, National Chung-Hsing University, Taichung, Taiwan
§Department of Internal Medicine, National Taiwan University Hospital, Taipei, Taiwan

1. Abstract 199
2. Introduction 200
3. Association Between TAM Density and Patient Prognosis 201
4. Antitumor Activity of TAMs and the Association Between High TAM Density and a Good Prognosis 205
5. Polarization of TAM into M1 and M2 Phenotype Macrophage in Tumor Microenvironment 208
6. Effect of TAMs on Cancer Cells 209
7. Possible Regulatory Mechanism of Gene Expression in TAMs or Cancer Cells After the TAM–Cancer Cell Interaction 211
8. Effect of TAMs on Stromal Cells in the Tumor Microenvironment 213
9. A Global View on Changes in Gene Expression in Cancer Cells After Interaction with TAMs 213
10. Implication of TAMs in Immunotherapy of Human Cancers 214
11. Concluding Remarks 216
References 216

1. Abstract

The macrophage is an important component of the human immune defense mechanism. Cancer cells secrete a variety of chemoattractants that attract macrophages and cause them to accumulate in the tumor tissue, wherein the

0065-2423/08 $35.00
DOI: 10.1016/S0065-2423(07)00008-X

macrophage becomes a tumor-associated macrophage (TAM). Recent evidence has shown that the function of tumor stromal TAMs can be modified by cancer cells and the factors they secrete. TAMs are directed toward stimulating tumor growth and progression and thus have protumorigenesis activity. However, there is also limited evidence that TAMs still play an important role in the killing and destruction of cancer cells, inhibit cancer metastasis, and have antitumor activity. Whether TAMs show protumorigenesis or antitumor activity depends on interaction with cancer cells, other stromal cells, and the tumor microenvironment. Gene expression profiles of TAMs, cancer cells, and other stromal cells are altered by cell–cell interactions. This phenomenon results in positive or negative regulation of angiogenesis, tumor cell proliferation, apoptosis, cancer cell migration and invasion, and the secretion of a variety of cytokines or factors. Whether TAMs have a positive or negative effect also depends on the macrophage activation state, the status of tumor development, and the anatomic locus of macrophage infiltration. Understanding of the mechanisms that regulate TAM function is essential in designing therapies to promote antitumor activity in humans. Although limited evidence from both animal and human studies indicates a potential role for TAMs in cancer treatment, the clinical usefulness of these therapies require further studies.

2. Introduction

Cancer progression is a complex multistep process that consists of transformation, tumor growth, invasion, and metastasis. Recent evidence shows that the stromal extracellular matrix and stromal cells (including fibroblasts, inflammatory cells, and endothelial cells) play an important role in promoting tumor progression [1]. Cancer progression is therefore not exclusively regulated by the disruption (overexpression or underexpression) of oncogenes and tumor suppression genes in cancer cells, but also depends on the stromal compartment to create a more tumor-promoting microenvironment. The interaction between cancer cells and stromal cells has been recently shown to promote tumorigenesis [1, 2].

It is now becoming clear that the inflammatory cells present in the tumor microenvironment play an indispensable role in the cancer progression. Substantial evidence suggests that stromal cells adjacent to cancer cells, including fibroblasts and inflammatory cells, such as macrophages, neutrophils, and lymphocytes, can interact with the cancer cells and express angiogenic factors [3–5].

The macrophage is a major component of the stromal cells around tumors. Initially, these macrophages were considered to have a cytotoxic effect after

activation by a variety of stimulators and to play an important role in immune defense against microbiologic pathogens or cancer cells. However, recently, tumor-associated macrophage (TAM) function was shown to be modified by cancer cells and to be switched to facilitate tumor growth and metastasis. Furthermore, recent studies have also demonstrated that interactions occur between TAMs and cancer cells and between TAMs and other stromal cells, and that these interactions change the gene expression profile of TAMs, cancer cells, and other stromal cells. In this chapter, we will focus on the protumorigenesis (stimulating tumor progression) and antitumor effects of TAM and the effects of the interactions between TAMs and cancer cells or other stromal cells on the regulation of the expression of genes that are responsible for the tumor progression or tumor inhibition. Finally, we will discuss the clinical implications of using activated macrophages or gene therapy to activate TAMs in the treatment of human cancers.

3. Association Between TAM Density and Patient Prognosis

The macrophage is an important component of the inflammatory cells within the tumor stroma. Evidence suggests that macrophages may account for the major part of the host leukocyte infiltrate in the majority of human malignant tumors [3]. Several investigators had counted the macrophage number in cancer surgical specimen under microscopy by immunohistochemical staining, and they reported that the percentage of macrophages in human malignancies is between 10% and 65%. These macrophages are referred to as TAMs. TAMs are mainly derived from peripheral blood monocytes, which are recruited into the tumor mass by several cytokines, such as macrophage chemotactic proteins secreted by cancer cells [4]. TAMs can also proliferate in the stroma of the tumor in response to stimulation from cancer cells [5]. On activation, TAMs can release a vast diversity of growth factors, proteolytic enzymes, cytokines, and inflammatory mediators, many of which are key agents in tumor progression, angiogenesis, and metastasis. Recently, TAMs were shown to be an important interface between tumor cells and the immune system, and may promote neoplastic growth and progression in several ways, including increasing cancer cell proliferation, enhancing angiogenesis, facilitating cancer cell invasion and metastasis, and suppressing human immune responses [6–8].

The association between TAM density (determined by average of macrophage counts under 400× field microscopy) and tumor proliferation, angiogenesis, and the clinical course and outcome of human cancer has been investigated in a number of studies. A high TAM density has been reported to correlate with a high proliferation index of cancer cells in breast cancer,

prostate cancer, and endometrial cancers [9–11]. TAM density was also reported to be associated with the differentiation of cancer cells and tumor size in a variety of human cancers, including breast cancer, bladder cancer, and glioma [12–14]. An association between macrophage infiltration and tumor-associated angiogenesis has also been demonstrated [14–20]. TAM density has been shown to correlate with tumor microvessel density (MVD) in a variety of human cancers, including endometrial, ovarian, breast, prostate, bladder, melanoma, and central nervous system malignancies [14–20]. Tsutsui *et al.* [21] showed that TAM density correlated with MVD and vascular endothelial cell growth factor (VEGF) protein expression in 249 patients with invasive ductal carcinoma. Takanami *et al.* [22] demonstrated that TAM infiltration was associated with MVD angiogenesis in pulmonary adenocarcinoma. Other studies showed that TAM density was associated with expression of angiogenesis factors, including interleukin-8 (IL-8), tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), VEGF, and hypoxia inducible factor 2α (HIF- 2α) [23–26]. An association between TAMs and tumor invasiveness and metastasis has also been demonstrated in human cancer, including breast cancer: patients with a high TAM density show a trend to higher regional lymph node metastasis [21]. The association between TAM density and clinical outcome has been examined in several studies. Extensive TAM infiltration has been shown to correlate with a poor prognosis in a variety of human carcinomas, including breast, cervix, bladder, and prostate cancers and glioma [6, 10, 11, 13, 14]. Leek *et al.* [6] showed that a higher CD68-positive macrophage index was significantly associated with a worse prognosis for both relapse-free and overall survival in 101 breast cancer patients. Lee *et al.* [12] showed that in 75 breast cancer patients diffuse TAM infiltration was associated with a high tumor grade, tumor necrosis, and large tumor size, and indicated a poor prognosis. Furthermore, Volodko *et al.* [9] and Goede *et al.* [27] demonstrated that intensive TAM infiltration was strongly associated with a high tumor grade and poor prognosis in invasive ductal carcinoma of the breast. In prostate cancer, Lissbrant *et al.* [10] showed that TAM density correlated positively with tumor angiogenesis and a shorter survival time. Salvesen *et al.* [11] reported that in 60 cervical cancer patients both TAM density and tumor cell VEGF protein expression were significantly increased in patients with an aggressive tumor, and that a high average macrophage counts in the tumor correlated with high cancer cell proliferative activity and decreased survival. In addition, Fujimoto *et al.* [28] showed an association between TAM density, IL-8 protein expression, and microvessel count (MVC) in 80 cervical cancer patients, and that high level of IL-8 expression by TAMs was an indicator of poor prognosis. Hanada *et al.* [13] showed that, in 63 bladder transition cell carcinoma patients, a high TAM density correlated with tumor invasiveness, tumor stage, tumor grade, vascular

invasion, and distant metastasis, and was associated with an adverse prognosis. In lung cancer, Koukourakis *et al.* [17] showed that a high TAM density was linked to a poor prognosis in 141 non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) patients. To evaluate the prognostic role of TAM in lung cancer, Chen *et al.* [16] measured TAM density in 41 NSCLC tumor surgical specimens by immunohistochemical staining with anti-CD68 antibodies, and correlated TAM density with intratumoral MVC, tumoral IL-8 expression, and clinical outcome. They found that TAM density correlated significantly and positively with tumoral IL-8 expression and intratumoral MVC. A high TAM density was also associated with a short relapse-free survival. Consistent with this, Takanami *et al.* [22] showed that high TAM density was significantly associated with a high microvessel density and a poor prognosis in 113 lung adenocarcinoma patients. Other studies have shown that a high TAM density is an adverse prognostic indicator in uveal melanoma, prostate, endometrial, bladder, and lung cancer (by univariate or multivariate analysis) [10, 11, 13, 17, 29], although a few studies found no association between TAM density and clinical outcome in several human cancers, such as astrocytomas and ovary cancers [30, 31].

How TAMs contribute to an adverse prognosis in lung cancer has undergone extensive investigation, and these studies have identified several different possible mechanisms linking TAMs to tumor progression or invasion in human solid cancers (Fig. 1). First, several studies have demonstrated an association between increased tumor vascularity and macrophage infiltration in several human cancers [18–20], suggesting that TAMs enhance the angiogenic potential of tumors. Macrophage infiltration has been shown to correlate with vessel density in endometrial, ovarian, breast, and central nervous system malignancies [14–20]. The angiogenesis factors secreted by TAMs have been shown to be chemokines [IL-8, migration inhibitory factor (MIF), etc.], VEGF, TNF-α, thymidine phosphorylase, and a variety of cytokines, including granulocyte macrophage colony stimulating factor (GM-CSF), transforming growth factor-α (TGF-α), transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β), IL-1, IL-6, and prostanoids [32–34]. In addition, TAMs may enhance angiogenesis by increasing procoagulant activity and fibrin deposition [35]. On the other hand, studies have shown that a lack of macrophages may result in decreased angiogenesis and thereby cancer cell death [6, 36]. Second, TAMs have been reported to produce growth factors, such as epidermal growth factor (EGF), platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF), and transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β), cytokines (IL-6, L-1, and TNF-α), and ornithine, which can enhance tumor cell replication and growth [34]. Third, TAMs can enhance cancer cell invasion and dissemination by increasing the production of cytokines (TNF-α, IL-1), extracellular matrix-degrading proteinases [such as matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs)], and plasminogen activator [37, 38].

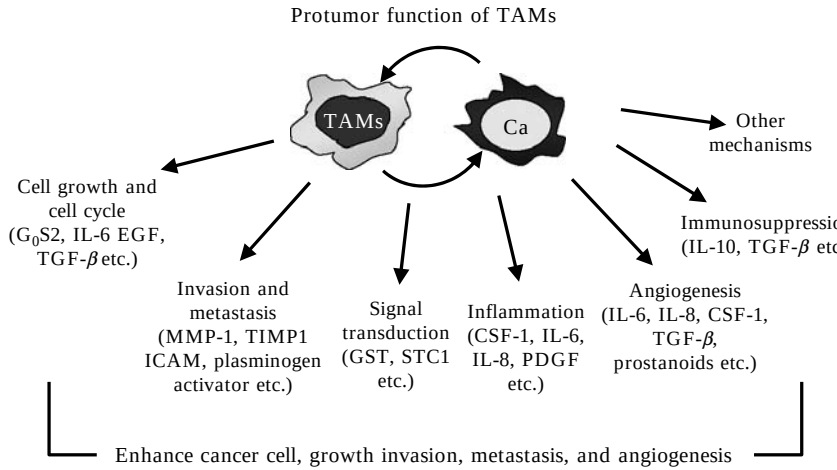


FIG. 1. A possible mechanism by which tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs) contribute to protumorigenesis effects and an adverse prognosis in cancer patients. After education by the tumor microenvironment, TAMs may express and secrete a variety of factors, which enhance cancer cell growth, invasion, metastasis, angiogenesis, signal transduction, and inflammation, and inflammation can stimulate tumorigenesis or metastasis. G_0S2, G_0/G_1 switch gene 2; EGF, epidermal growth factor; MMP-1, matrix metalloproteinase-1; TIMP-1, matrix metalloproteinase tissue inhibitor-1; ICAM, intracellular adhesion molecule; STC-1, stanniocalcin-1; CSF-1, colony stimulation factor-1; PDGF, platelet-derived growth factor [34, 49]. (This figure is modified from Fig. 1 in Ref. [49] with permission.)

For example, urokinase-type plasminogen activator (uPA) is a serine protease involved in extracellular matrix degradation. Upregulation of uPA expression has been reported in TAMs in several human cancers, and this can subsequently enhance tumor angiogenesis, invasion, and metastasis [39, 40]. Furthermore, uPA levels have been shown to correlate with reduced relapse-free and overall survival in breast cancer [41]. MMPs are a family of matrix-degrading enzymes, which includes collagenase (MMP-1), gelatinase A (MMP-2), stromelysin (MMP-3), matrilysin (MMP-7), gelatinase B (MMP-9), and other MMPs. TAMs can produce most forms of MMPs, and MMP-9 produced by TAMs was shown to correlate with the metastatic potential of a variety of human cancers [42–44]. MMP-9 can degrade basement membrane type IV collagen, elastin, gelatin, and other glycan core proteins, and can directly accomplish cleavage of galectin-3, transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β), and plasminogen, that is, activities that can substantially regulate tumor cell invasion and angiogenesis. Macrophage colony stimulating factor (M-CSF) is another agent by which TAMs can promote cancer cells invasiveness and metastasis. M-CSF can convert TAMs into mature functional

osteoclasts, which can increase bone resorption and facilitate bone metastasis of human cancers [45]. Fourth, TAMs can induce expression of inhibitory prostaglandin E2 (PGE2) and cytokines (IL-10), which suppress cell-mediated immune responses and inhibit cytotoxic T cell function and nature killer (NK) cell and lymphokine-activated killer cell cytotoxicity, and this can further promote tumor growth and expansion [46–48]. Other possible mechanisms contributing to the protumor function of TAMs are that TAMs may promote the epithelial–mesenchymal transition of cancer cells (our unpublished data showed that the TAMs can increase epithelial–mesenchymal transition-related genes expression in lung cancer cell after coculture). Finally, TAMs were also reported to be able to induce resistance of cancer cells to chemotherapeutic and hormone-therapeutic agents [49].

4. Antitumor Activity of TAMs and the Association Between High TAM Density and a Good Prognosis

The tumoricidal activity of activated macrophages has been studied for several decades. In contrast to the protumor effect of TAMs in human cancers, some investigations showed that TAMs may have important anti-tumor activity in human malignancy. Macrophages can become tumoricidal for cancer cells after they are activated by antibodies, cytokines [such as interferon-γ (IFN-γ)], or lipopolysaccharide (LPS). The tumoricidal effects of TAMs after activation include direct cytotoxicity against cancer cells and indirect cytotoxicity due to the secretion of products that can induce anti-tumor effects of other immune-related cells.

Macrophages form an important part of the immune cell or inflammatory cell infiltrate in tumors and are found in virtually all human malignancies. Although current evidence suggests that TAMs can be ''educated'' in the tumor microenvironment and subsequently reprogrammed to suppress host defense against cancer or to produce tumor growth-promoting factors, they have been shown to have tumoricidal effects in certain circumstances in some human cancers. As described above, most studies have shown that TAMs have protumorigenesis activity, may promote invasion activity, and were negatively associated with the patient survival in a variety of human cancers. However, some investigations showed that TAMs are associated with good patient prognosis in human cancers, including gastric and prostate cancers [15, 50]. Shimura *et al*. [15] showed that, in 85 prostate cancer patients, high TAM density correlated negatively with clinical stage and was associated with decreased lymph node metastasis and with a good prognosis. Migita *et al*. [50] showed that, in 104 gastric cancer patients, TAM density was higher in patients with intestinal-type disease rather than diffuse-type and

in those without liver metastasis than in those with liver metastasis, and suggested that TAM density correlated with a better clinical outcome. In lung cancer, Kerr *et al.* [51] showed that a high TAM density was associated with tumor regression and a favorable prognosis. Furthermore, Funada *et al.* [52] reported that peritumoral macrophage infiltration was associated with less lymph node metastasis and a good prognosis in colorectal cancer patients.

Welsh *et al.* [53] recently evaluated the relationship between tumor islet macrophages (TAMs that invade and infiltrate into the tumor nest, which may play a cytotoxic effect against cancer cell) and survival in 175 patients with surgically resected NSCLC. An increased tumor islet macrophage density or increased islet/stromal macrophage ratio was associated with longer survival in both early and advanced lung cancer groups. In contrast, increasing stromal macrophage density was an independent predictor of the reduced survival. The tumor islet macrophage density and tumor islet/stromal macrophage ratio were favorably independent prognostic indicators in patients with NSCLC. Islet TAM density had the greatest effect: 5-year survival was 52.9% in patients with an islet macrophage density greater than the median value of 131 cells/mm^2, but only 7.7% when the density was less than the median. Interestingly, patients with a high islet TAM density, but incomplete resection, survived markedly longer than patients with a low islet TAM density but complete resection. Similarly, Ohno *et al.* [54] showed that a high islet TAM density was associated with increased survival in gastric carcinoma patients. These results suggest that TAMs in different microanatomical areas or TAMs with different phenotypes in tumors may have different functions (protumor activity or antitumor activity). Stromal macrophages play a role in enhancing stromal formation and angiogenesis, which can subsequently promote tumor growth and metastasis [14–20]. On the other hand, tumor islet macrophages have cytotoxic effects and can inhibit tumor growth and spread [53, 54]. The tumor microenvironment can also modify TAM phenotype. Stromal TAMs express proteinase and proangiogenesis factors and promote tumor growth and metastasis in a variety of human cancers. In contrast, tumor islet TAMs express nitric oxide synthase and TNF-α, both of which have tumoricidal effects against prostate cancer [13]. Furthermore, islet TAMs can present tumor-associated antigens to cytotoxic T cells, which play an important role in the tumor cell destruction [54]. Macrophage infiltration was shown to correlate positively with CD8 T cell infiltration in gastric cancer [54].

The possible antitumor activity of TAMs may involve several mechanisms (Fig. 2). First, activated macrophages can kill cancer cells by direct cellular cytotoxicity, which involves direct contact between the macrophage and cancer cell and the translocation of lysosomal organelles from cytotoxic

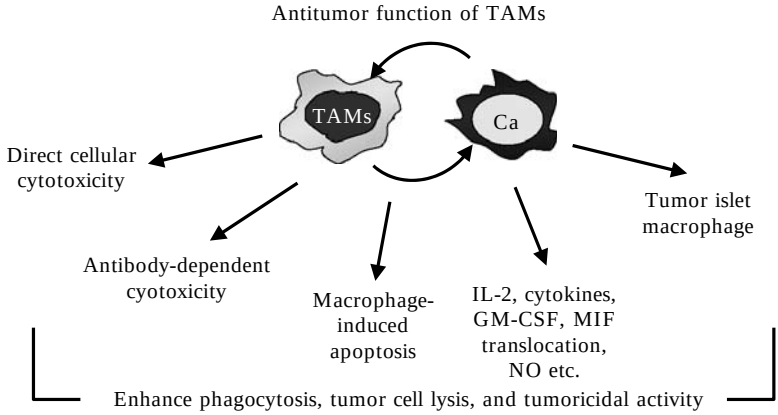


FIG. 2. Potential antitumor functions of tumor-associated macrophage (TAM) against cancer cells. After interaction with cancer cells, TAMs may enhance cancer cell phagocytosis, tumor cell lysis, and tumoricidal activity by direct cytotoxicity and antibody-dependent cytotoxicity, inducing apoptosis, expressing and secreting a variety of factors and cytokines, and other unknown mechanisms. The tumor islet macrophage is a cytotoxic phenotype TAM [49, 53]. (This figure is modified from Fig. 2 in Ref. [49] with permission.)

macrophages into the cytoplasm of cancer cells, with subsequent tumor lysis [34]. Second, macrophages can cause antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity by binding to antibody-coated cancer cells via their Fc receptor. TAMs have been shown to express CD16 (one type of Fc receptor) and have been suggested to play an important role in antibody-dependent tumor cytotoxicity [34, 55]. Third, many macrophage secretory products, such as ecosanoids (prostaglandins and leukotrienes), cytokine (IL-1, TNF-α), free radicals, NO, and enzymes (arginase), have cytotoxic or cytostatic activity against cancer cells [56–59]. Fourth, activated macrophages can induce apoptosis of cancer cells. This macrophage-induced apoptosis has been demonstrated in lymphoma, mastocytoma, and fibroblast cell lines [60–62]. Other factors may also contribute to the antitumor activity of TAMs, such as the expression of macrophage MIF, GM-CSF, and IL-2. Several studies have shown that MIF mRNA and protein levels are higher in tumors than in surrounding normal tissues and that cancer patients with tumor expression of MIF have a better prognosis than those lacking MIF expression [63–65]. Shinohara *et al.* [66] showed that transfection of the murine GM-CSF gene into human colon cancer cells increases their sensitivity to TAM-mediated tumor cell lysis *in vitro*. Incubation with GM-CSF induces CD11b expression on macrophages and increases the attachment of TAMs to cancer cells, thus increasing their tumoricidal activity [66]. IL-12 secreted by macrophages was also shown to be important for tumoricidal activity. Narvaiza *et al.* [67] showed

that cotransfection of IL-12 and IFN-γ-inducible protein-10 (IP-10) into murine colorectal adenocarcinoma cells resulted in total tumor eradication. Finally, although tumor islet macrophages have potential antitumor activity and have prognostic significance in NSCLC, the biologic explanation for their antitumor effect is still unclear. Further studies are needed to clarify the antitumor mechanism of tumor islet macrophages in NSCLC.

5. Polarization of TAM into M1 and M2 Phenotype Macrophage in Tumor Microenvironment

Recent evidence has demonstrated that polarization of TAMs into different phenotype subsets (M1 or M2) may play an important role on regulation of their function in tumor microenvironment. Cells belonging to the monocyte–macrophage lineage have long time been recognized to be heterogeneous, and macrophage heterogeneity is likely to reflect the plasticity and versatility of these cells in response to exposure to microenvironmental signals. Cytokines and microbial products profoundly and differentially affect the function of mononuclear phagocytes. Mononuclear phagocytes often function as control switches of the immune system, securing the balance between pro- and anti-inflammatory reactions. Depending on the activating stimuli, these cells can develop into different subsets: classically (M1) or alternatively (M2) activated mononuclear phagocytes (including M2a, M2b, and M2c), and the molecular and functional characterization of which is a current topic of investigation. Evidence has also shown that IFN-γ with LPS or TNF can polarize macrophage into M1 phenotype, which can induce Th1 response, type 1 inflammation, and involved in killing of pathogen or tumor cells. In contrast, IL-4, and IL-13, immunocomplex and toll-like receptor, and IL-10 had been shown to be able to polarize macrophage into M2a, M2b, and M2c phenotype, respectively, which involves in the Th2 response, allergy, killing of parasite, immunoregulation, matrix deposition, remodeling, and tumor promotion. The surface receptor, arginine metabolism, cytokine and chemokine secretion, and transcriptional program are different from each other (Fig. 3) [68].

In summary, TAMs play a complex and multifaceted role in the regulation of tumor growth and development. They have been shown to be directly tumoricidal and to stimulate the antitumor activity of other immune-related cells in several studies. However, there is accumulating evidence that cancer cells can modify the tumoricidal activity of TAMs and can sometimes even reprogram TAM activity in a protumorigenesis direction, that is, promote the growth, survival, and metastasis of the tumors themselves. There is substantial evidence that the interaction between TAMs and cancer cells can modify the extracellular

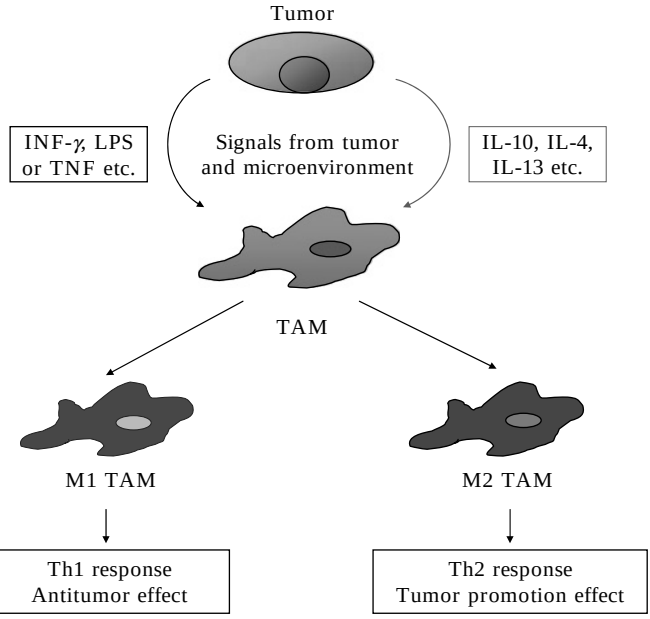


FIG. 3. Polarization of tumor-associated macrophage (TAM) into M1 or M2 phenotype macrophage by signals from tumor and the microenvironment. Cancer cell and tumor microenvironment can modify the TAMs function by producing different cytokines. IFN-γ, lipopolysaccharide (LPS), or tumor necrosis factor (TNF) can polarize TAM into M1 phenotype, and IL-10, IL-4, and IL-13 can polarize TAM into M2 phenotype macrophage. M1 phenotype macrophage can induce Th1 response and had antitumor effects, while M2 phenotype macrophage can induce Th 2 response which had tumor-promotion effects.

matrix and enhance cancer cell invasion and metastasis. Thus, TAMs may have either positive or negative effects on tumor growth, and their effects on tumor progression and invasion may depend on the tumor microenvironment, tumor-derived regulation, the differentiation of TAMs into cytotoxic macrophages, and other unclear molecular immunologic mechanisms. Further investigations are needed to elucidate the mechanism of regulation of TAM function in human malignancies, including lung cancer, and this may help in the future design of adjunctive therapy for human malignancy.

6. Effect of TAMs on Cancer Cells

It is becoming clear that inflammatory cells in the tumor microenvironment play an indispensable role in the cancer progression. This may explain why many cancers arise at sites of chronic irritation and inflammation [69].

Among these inflammatory cells, which include monocytes/macrophages, lymphocytes, neutrophils, and mast cells, the macrophage is the pivotal inflammatory cell within the tumor stroma. Recently, a number of reports have shown that TAMs constitute an important interface between tumor cells and the immune system, and that they might influence neoplastic growth and progression in several ways [6–8]. Tumor-infiltrating macrophages (TIMs) have also been shown to correlate with vessel density in ovarian [30] and breast [19] cancer and other malignancies [14], and have been associated with VEGF and epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) expression in cancer cells [70]. TIMs can be activated in malignant tumors and this may contribute to tumor angiogenesis [71, 72], and there is also a significant correlation between the number of infiltrating macrophages and angiogenesis [10, 28]. A high density of TAMs has been associated with angiogenesis and an adverse prognosis in lung adenocarcinoma [22].

Angiogenesis is required for tumor growth, progression, and metastasis [73, 74]. Several studies have demonstrated that a high intratumoral MVC correlates with tumor advancement, systemic metastasis, and prognosis in several human cancers, including melanoma, breast cancer, colon cancer, and lung cancer [75–78]. Angiogenesis is a complicated process that involves the degradation of the basement membrane and invasion of the stroma by endothelial cells, which then proliferate, migrate, and become organized into a capillary structure [79]. This process is regulated by the local activity of a variety of angiogenic factors, such as IL-8, VEGF, and basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF) [74, 80, 81]. Our previous study [82] demonstrated that the presence of infiltrating macrophages in sections from lung cancer patients is accompanied by increased levels of IL-8 mRNA and positively correlated with tumor angiogenesis and negatively with patient survival.

The interaction between the tumor and surrounding stromal cells, such as macrophages, fibroblasts, and endothelial cells, is complex. In this chapter, we mainly focus on the interaction between cancer cells and TAMs. It has been shown that macrophages are attracted by monocyte chemotactic protein-1 and TGF-β1 secreted by tumor cells and that tumor production of TGF-β1 is responsible for activating macrophages [83]. On activation, TAMs release a vast diversity of growth factors, proteolytic enzymes, cytokines, and inflammatory mediators. Many of these are key agents in angiogenesis. White *et al.* [32] showed increased expression of angiogenic cysteine-amino acid-cysteine (CXC) chemokines, such as IL-8, in macrophages after coculture with NSCLC cells, indicating that cancer cells can stimulate inflammatory cells to express increased amounts of angiogenic factors. Using a human monocyte cell line model, THP-1, and an *in vitro* coculture apparatus

(Transwell), we also demonstrated that marked IL-8 mRNA expression (4.5-fold increase) is induced in macrophages after interaction with lung cancer cells [82]. TAM-derived angiogenic factors include VEGF, bFGF, platelet-derived endothelial cell growth factor, TNF-α, and IL-8 [70, 84].

However, TAMs are not the only source of increased angiogenic factors in the tumor microenvironment. The study of Liss *et al*. [83] showed that tumor cells themselves can be activated by macrophages and secrete angiogenic factors, which might contribute to tumor angiogenesis in head and neck squamous cell carcinomas. Our previous study [82] also revealed that IL-8 expression in cancer cells can be dramatically increased after interaction with macrophages. In this interaction, IL-8 expression was synergistically increased in both macrophages and cancer cells. Which cell is the predominant source of the angiogenic factors is still controversial. However, it is certain that TAMs play an important initiator role in the regulation of IL-8 expression in cancer cells. In addition, the amplification and propagation of IL-8 expression in cocultures is seen not only with the cancer cells mentioned above, but also with other tumor cell types (osteosarcoma and hepatoma) [82], and it has been suggested that increased IL-8 expression may be a common feature of the cancer cell/macrophage interaction.

7. Possible Regulatory Mechanism of Gene Expression in TAMs or Cancer Cells After the TAM–Cancer Cell Interaction

Paracrine regulation between cancer cells and TAMs has been observed and may play an important role in the tumor angiogenesis [82, 83]. Furthermore, using macrophage-cocultured cancer cells to sensitize naïve cancer cells, it was demonstrated that not only paracrine, but also autocrine regulation was seen in the lung cancer cells/TAMs cocultures [85]. This autocrine effect is also seen with different lung cancer cell lines [82], suggesting that autocrine regulation of IL-8 expression is a rather general phenomenon in the lung cancer cells. This suggests that autocrine regulation might play a crucial role in the tumor progression, particularly in cancer cells that have not interacted directly with TAMs but have been stimulated by TAM-activated cancer cells. It is well known that TNF-α activates angiogenic factors in several human tumor cell types and in vascular endothelial cells [84, 86], and a previous report hinted that TNF-α and IL1-α, produced by activated macrophages, are involved in tumor progression and angiogenesis in human malignant melanoma [84]. Moreover, TNF-α and IL1-α, secreted by activated monocytes and macrophages, enhance the production of IL-8 and VEGF in tumor cells *in vitro* [71, 83, 84, 87]. Our previous report [82] also

showed that protein levels of NF-κB, TNF-α, and IL1-α were elevated in both the TAMs and lung cancer cells after coculture and that IL-8 expression was still induced in cancer cells in the absence of macrophages by exogenously added recombinant human TNF-α and IL1-α. These findings show that TNF-α and IL1-α are involved in IL-8 mRNA induction in cancer cells/TAMs cocultures through autocrine and paracrine regulation. Using a reporter gene assay and electrophoretic mobility shift assay (EMSA), we also found that both NF-κB and AP-1 are involved in controlling IL-8 gene expression in lung cancer cells cocultured with TAMs. This multiple control of IL-8 gene expression in cocultures is consistent with the results of a previous study [88]. We can conclude that autocrine and paracrine effects on tumor angiogenesis are mediated, in part, through the NF-κB pathway and can be modulated by TNF-α and IL1-α.

As illustrated in Fig. 4, cancer cells attract macrophages that may produce inflammatory cytokines, such as TNF-α and IL1-α, which are then secreted into the surrounding environment. Increased TNF-α and IL1-α levels might induce lung cancer cells to activate NF-κB and subsequently increase IL-8 expression in cancer cells. Interestingly, lung cancer cells might regulate the production of IL-8 by themselves or by adjacent lung cancer cells, and induce more IL-8 production in an autocrine fashion, which would induce more angiogenesis in lung cancer.

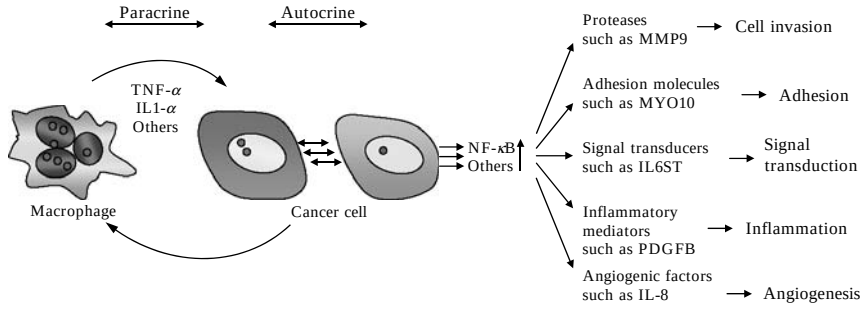


FIG. 4. Possible interactions between macrophages and cancer cells. Macrophages may first be attracted by chemokines derived from cancer cells, then the activated macrophages produce angiogenic factors, such as tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α) and interleukin1-α (IL1-α), and stimulate the cancer cells to produce more angiogenic factors and other factors. Meanwhile, stimulated cancer cells, by providing TNF-α, IL1-α, or other factors, may also stimulate neighboring cancer cells and macrophages to produce angiogenic factors and other factors. The autocrine and paracrine effects on cancer cells after interaction with macrophages are mediated partly through the NF-κB pathway, which may be involved in regulating cell invasion, adhesion, signal transduction, inflammation, and angiogenesis.

8. Effect of TAMs on Stromal Cells in the Tumor Microenvironment

In addition to cancer cells, TAMs interact with stromal cells, including fibroblast and endothelial cells, in the tumor microenvironment. It has been shown that fibroblasts play a prominent role in the tumor progression and metastasis [89]. Cocultures of fibroblasts and NSCLC cells show increased levels of IL-8 mRNA and protein in both the cancer cells and fibroblasts [88], demonstrating that cancer cells stimulate stromal cells to express larger amounts of angiogenic factors. However, little is known about the effect of TAMs on fibroblasts. Our previous study [85] demonstrated that both fibroblasts and bronchial epithelial cells sensitized by macrophages show a significant increase in IL-8 mRNA levels. However, in contrast to the results obtained from the cancer cell/TAMs cocultures, induction of IL-8 expression in normal lung fibroblasts and bronchial epithelial cells might be not through TNF-α or IL1-α. It is reasonable to speculate that other pathways regulate IL-8 induction in fibroblasts or bronchial epithelial cells. In terms of endothelial cells, as far as we are aware, no reports have been published about their interaction with TAMs. Nevertheless, our unpublished data show that several important angiogenic factors are induced in endothelial cells after interaction with TAMs.

9. A Global View on Changes in Gene Expression in Cancer Cells After Interaction with TAMs

To examine the global changes in protumorigenic gene expression in cancer cells after interaction with TAMs, microarray approach is a good choice [90]. Using this system, we are able to perform large-scale analyses of the genes involved in the interaction between cancer cells and TAMs, and this information should help in exploring the complex interactions between cancer cells and TAMs that orchestrate the process of tumor progression and metastasis. In our previous study, 50 genes showing significant up-regulation in cancer cell after their interaction with macrophage were identified using cDNA microarray [16]. Most of these changes had never been previously reported in cancer cell/macrophage cocultures. However, many of the genes involved had been previously reported to be associated with angiogenesis and metastasis, including IL-6 [91], IL-8 [82], MMP-9 and uPA receptor [92], stanniocalcin-1 (STC-1) [93], intracellular adhesion molecule-1 (ICAM-1) [94], and MMP-1 [95]. As mentioned above, the interaction between macrophages and cancer cells can upregulate IL-8 expression. This process is mediated, in part, through the NF-κB pathway [82, 85]. The microarray

analysis further supported the idea that IL-6, IL-8, M-CSF, MMPs, and ICAM-1 are involved in the NF-κB pathway [96, 97]. Because inflammatory cells may be involved in regulating the production of angiogenic factors by cancer cells, anti-inflammatory agents may have the potential to impede IL-8 induction and suppress angiogenesis initiated by inflammatory cells. Some nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), such as aspirin, have been shown to reduce the risk of developing colorectal and breast cancers [98, 99]. We have tested several anti-inflammatory drugs commonly used clinically in our previous studies and found that most inhibit the expression of angiogenic factor IL-8 [16, 82, 86]. Although their possible mechanisms of action are quite different [100–105], their inhibitory effect is, for the most part, finally mediated through the NF-κB pathway (Fig. 4). On the basis of the above results, TAMs might therefore be a potential target of chemotherapy using anti-inflammatory agents.

10. Implication of TAMs in Immunotherapy of Human Cancers

Since macrophages can infiltrate tumor tissue or have a tendency to be recruited to the tumor site, this suggests a new approach to cancer immunotherapy. Macrophages are known to have antitumor activity and are thought to have the potential to mediate tumor cytotoxicity and to stimulate antitumor effects of other immune-related cells. However, in the majority of human cancers, cancer cells can escape these macrophage-associated defense mechanisms. The possible mechanisms by which cancer cells escape macrophage-associated antitumor activity include [106–108]: (1) cancer cells do not express specific surface antigens that can be recognized by macrophages; (2) TAMs are modified by the tumor microenvironment, loose their cytotoxicity toward cancer cells, and are even redirected to protumorigenesis pathways; (3) after interaction with cancer cells, TAMs become suppressive for tumor-specific T- and NK-cell cytotoxicity.

Although there is evidence that the antitumor activity of TAMs can be suppressed and their protumorigenesis activity stimulated by the tumor microenvironment in the majority of human cancers, there is still a lot of potential to enhance antitumor activity by stimulation or activation of TAMs. A number of basic and clinical studies (including clinical trials) using activated macrophages in the immunotherapy of human cancers have been reported (reviewed in Ref. [109]).

One approach is to activate macrophages using biological response modifiers, such as muramyl tripeptide phosphatidylethanolamine (MTP-PE), GM-CSF, M-CSF, or IFN-γ, both *in vivo* (injection of patients with biological response modifiers) or *in vitro* (adoptive transfer of macrophages

treated with biological response modifiers). Asano *et al.* [110] showed that liposomal MTP-PE increased cytokine expression in monocytes and prolonged relapse-free survival time in osteosarcoma patients with lung metastasis in a Phase II clinical study. GM-CSF therapy in patients with lymphoma, breast cancer, or neuroblastoma was shown to increase antibody-dependent cytotoxicity and endogenous TNF-α levels [111], but produced no clinical response (regression of tumor) in Phase I and II studies [109]. In terms of adoptive cellular immunotherapy, although biological responses, including increases in cytokine levels, have been shown, clinical responses have been almost absent [112–114].

The second approach is to use gene transfer to induce and enhance the antitumor effect of TAMs. Recently, genetic modification of tumor cells with cytokines, adhesion molecules, or MHC molecules has resulted in activation of immune cells, induction of immune responses, and facilitation of cancer cell recognition and killing. Dranoff *et al.* [115] showed that transfection of the GM-CSF gene into murine melanoma cells initiated an effective and long-lasting anti-tumor response. Sanda *et al.* [116] also showed that vaccination with prostate cancer cells transfected with GM-CSF resulted in a significant increase in tumor-free survival of mice inoculated with the tumor. Morita *et al.* [117] showed that transfection of M-CSF into Lewis lung carcinoma cells prolonged the survival of mice injected with the transfected carcinoma cells compared to those injected with nontransfected cells and prevented lung metastasis. Dong *et al.* [118] showed that inoculation of mice with human prostate cancer cells transfected with IFN-β inhibited tumor growth and lymph node metastases. In animal studies, increased TAM infiltration of the tumor and inhibition of angiogenesis were found to correlate with GM-CSF production. In addition to these animal studies, several human clinical trials of gene therapy have been recently performed [119–122]. Treatment of patients with renal cell carcinoma with irradiated autologous GM-CSF transfected renal cell carcinoma cells resulted in a decrease in lung metastasis [120]. Vaccination with irradiated autologous melanoma cells transfected with the GM-CSF gene also resulted in extensive cancer cell destruction in melanoma patients [119]. Furthermore, using the tendency of TAMs to accumulate around the tumor nest, several investigators have started to transfect macrophages with genes encoding colony stimulation factor-1 (CSF-1), INF-γ, tumor antigens, antiangiogenic agents, and prodrug activation enzymes to enhance tumoricidal effects [123–126]. The results showed that these macrophages can effectively deliver gene therapy to the tumor mass but the clinical response remains to be determined. In conclusion, although a number of animal or human studies have demonstrated that gene therapy can enhance the tumoricidal effect of TAMs or other immune-related cells, further clinical trials are required to elucidate its effectiveness in human cancer.

11. Concluding Remarks

Macrophages can be recruited to tumors by a variety of cytokines secreted by tumor cells and become TAMs that can play a role in stimulating tumor growth and progression or, in contrast, in killing tumor cells and inhibiting metastasis. The exact role that TAMs play in the tumor depends on the state of macrophage activation, modification of macrophage function by the tumor microenvironment, the status of tumor development, the anatomic locus of macrophage infiltration, and the gene expression profile and phenotype of the TAMs. How TAMs are "educated" in the tumor microenvironment to show protumorigenesis or antitumor activity is a complex process and still under investigation. The interactions between TAMs and cancer cells and between TAMs and other stromal cells have recently been shown to be important in the modification of TAM function. The gene expression changes seen after interaction between cancer cells, TAMs, and other stromal cells may be involved in the regulation of the protumorigenesis or antitumor effects of TAM. The ability to direct TAMs toward antitumor effects may be helpful in the treatment of human cancer, and limited clinical studies have shown a potential effect of this immunotherapeutic treatment. Further studies to understand the mechanism of the modification of TAM function in the tumor are needed and should provide important information that may permit the development of more potent immunotherapies for human cancers.

References

[1] Tuxhorn JA, Ayala GE, Rowley DR. Reactive stroma in prostate cancer progression. J Urol 2001; 166:2472–2483.

[2] Gupta RA, Dubois RN. Colorectal cancer prevention and treatment by inhibition of cyclooxygenase-2. Nat Rev Cancer 2001; 1:11–21.

[3] Kelly CP, Keates S, Siegenberg D, Linevsky JK, Pothoulakis C, Brady HR. IL-8 secretion and neutrophil activation by HT-29 colonic epithelial cells. Am J Physiol 1994; 267: G991–G997.

[4] Connolly DT, Stoddard BL, Harakas NK, Feder J. Human fibroblast-derived growth factor is a mitogen and chemoattractant for endothelial cells. Biochim Biophys Acta 1987; 144:705–712.

[5] Fukumura D, Xavier R, Sugiura T, Chen Y, Park EC, Lu N. Tumor induction of VEGF promoter activity in stromal cells. Cell 1998; 94:715–725.

[6] Leek RD, Lewis CE, Whitehouse R, Greenall M, Clarke J, Harris AL. Association of macrophage infiltration with angiogenesis and prognosis in invasive breast carcinoma. Cancer Res 1996; 56:4625–4629.

[7] Etoh T, Shibuta K, Barnard GF, Kitano S, Mori M. Angiogenin expression in human colorectal cancer: The role of focal macrophage infiltration. Clin Cancer Res 2000; 6:3545–3551.

[8] Arenberg DA, Keane MP, DiGiovine B, Kunkel SL, Strom SR, Burdick MD, et al. Macrophage infiltration in human non-small-cell lung cancer: The role of CC chemokines. Cancer Immunol Immunother 2000; 49:63–70.
[9] Volodko N, Reiner A, Rudas M, Jakesz R. Tumour-associated macrophages in breast cancer and their prognostic correlations. Breast 1998; 7:99–105.
[10] Lissbrant IF, Stattin P, Wikstrom P, Damber P, Egevad JE, Bergh A. Tumor associated macrophages in human prostate cancer: Relation to clinicopathological variables and survival. Int J Oncol 2000; 17:445–451.
[11] Salvesen HB, Aksleen LA. Significance of tumor-associated macrophages, vascular endothelial growth factor and thrombospodin-1 expression for tumour angiogenesis and prognosis in endometrial carcinomas. Int J Cancer 1999; 84:539–543.
[12] Lee AHS, Happerfield LC, Bobrow LG, Millis RR. Angiogenesis and inflammation in invasive carcinoma of the breast. J Clin Pathol 1997; 50:669–673.
[13] Hanada T, Nakagawa M, Emoto A, Nomura T, Nasu N, Nomura Y. Prognostic value of tumour-associated macrophage count in human bladder cancer. Int J Urol 2000; 7:263–269.
[14] Nishie A, Ono M, Shono T, Fukushi J, Otsubo M, Onoue H, et al. Macrophage infiltration and hemeoxygenase-1 expression correlate with angiogenesis in human gliomas. Clin Cancer Res 1999; 5:1107–1113.
[15] Shimura S, Yang G, Ebara S, Wheeler TM, Frolov A, Thompson TC. Reduced infiltration of tumour-associated macrophages in human prostate cancer: Association with cancer progression. Cancer Res 2000; 60:5857–5861.
[16] Chen JJW, Lin Y-C, Yao P-L, Yuan A, Chen HY, Shun CT, et al. Tumor-associated macrophages: The double-edged sword in cancer progression. J Clin Oncol 2005; 23:1–12.
[17] Koukourakis MI, Giatromanolaki A, Kakolyris S, O'Byrne KJ, Apostolikas N, Skarlatos J, et al. Different patterns of stromal and cancer cell thymidine phosphorylase reactivity in non-small-cell lung cancer: Impact on tumour neo-angiogenesis and survival. Br J Cancer 1998; 77:1696–1703.
[18] Orre M, Rogers PA. Macrophages and microvessel density in tumors of the ovary. Gynecol Oncol 1999; 73:47–50.
[19] Leek RD, Landers RJ, Harris AL, Lewis CE. Necrosis correlates with high vascular density and focal macrophage infiltration in invasive carcinoma of the breast. Br J Cancer 1999; 79:991–995.
[20] Hashimoto I, Kodama J, Seki N, Hongo A, Miyagi Y, Yoshinouchi M, et al. Macrophage infiltration and angiogenesis in endometrial cancer. Anticancer Res 2000; 20:4853–4856.
[21] Tsutsui S, Yaduda K, Suzuki K, Tahara K, Higashi H, Era S. Macrophage infiltration and its prognostic implications in breast cancer: The relationship with VEGF expression and microvessel density. Oncol Rep 2005; 14:425–431.
[22] Takanami I, Takeuchi K, Kodaira S. Tumor-associated macrophage infiltration in pulmonary adenocarcinoma: Association with angiogenesis and poor prognosis. Oncology 1999; 57:138–142.
[23] Koch AE, Polverini PJ, Kunkel SL, Harlow LA, DiPietro LA, Elner VM, et al. Interleukin-8 as a macrophage-derived mediator of angiogenesis. Science 1992; 258:1798–1801.
[24] Pusztai L, Clover LM, Cooper K, Starkey PM, Lewis CE, McGee JOD. Expression of tumour necrosis factor alpha and its receptors in carcinoma of the breast. Br J Cancer 1994; 70:289–292.
[25] Xiong M, Elson G, Legarda D, Leibovich SJ. Production of vascular endothelial growth factor by murine macrophages. Am J Pathol 1998; 153:587–598.

[26] Talks KL, Turley H, Gatter KC, Maxwell PH, Pugh CW, Ratcliffe PJ, et al. The expression and distribution of the hypoxia-inducible factors HIF-1 and HIF-2 in normal human tissues, cancers and tumor-associated macrophages. Am J Pathol 2000; 157:411–421.

[27] Goede V, Brogelli L, Ziche M, Augustin HG. Induction of inflammatory angiogenesis by monocyte chemoattractant protein-1. Int J Cancer 1999; 82:765–770.

[28] Fujimoto J, Sakaguchi H, Aoki I, Tamaya T. Clinical implications of expression of interleukin 8 related to angiogenesis in uterine cervical cancers. Cancer Res 2000; 60:2632–2635.

[29] Makitie T, Summanen P, Tarkkanen A, Kivela T. Tumor-infiltrating macrophages (CD68 + cells) and prognosis in malignant uveal melanoma. Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci 2001; 42:1414–1421.

[30] Orre M, Rogers PAW. Macrophages and microvessel density in tumors of the ovary. Gynecol Oncol 1999; 73:47–50.

[31] Rossi ML, Jones NR, Candy E, Nicoll JA, Compton JS, Hughes JT, et al. The mononuclear cell infiltrate compared with survival in high-grade astrocytomas. Acta Neuropathol 1999; 78:189–193.

[32] White ES, Strom SRB, Wys NL, Arenberg DA. Non-small cell lung cancer cells induce monocytes to increase expression of angiogenic activity. J Immunol 2001; 166:7549–7555.

[33] Ueno T, Toi M, Saji H, Muta M, Bando H, Kuroi K, et al. Significance of macrophage chemoattractant protein-1 in macrophage recruitment, angiogenesis, and survival in human breast cancer. Clin Cancer Res 2000; 6:3282–3289.

[34] Al-Sarireh B, Eremin O. Tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs): Disordered function, immune suppression and progressive tumor growth. J R Coll Surg Edinb 2000; 45:1–16.

[35] Semeraro N, Montemurro P, Conese M, Giordano D, Stella M, Restaino A, et al. Procoagulant activity of mononuclear phagocytes from different anatomical sites in patients with gynecological malignancies. Int J Cancer 1990; 45:251–254.

[36] Sunderkotter C, Steinbrink K, Goebeler M, Bhardwaj R, Sorg C. Macrophages and angiogenesis. J Leukoc Biol 1994; 55:410–422.

[37] van-Netten JP, Ashmead BJ, Parker RL, Thornton IG, Fletcher C, Cavers D, et al. Macrophage-tumor cell associations: A factor in metastasis of breast cancer? J Leukoc Biol 1993; 54:360–362.

[38] Mussoni L, Riganti M, Acero R, Erroi A, Conforti G, Mantovani A, et al. Macrophages associated with murine tumours express plasminogen activator activity. Int J Cancer 1988; 41:227–230.

[39] Xu Y, Hagege J, Doublet JD, Callard P, Sraer JD, Ronne E, et al. Endothelial and macrophage upregulation of urokinase receptor expression in human renal cell carcinoma. Hum Pathol 1997; 28:206–213.

[40] Hildenbrand R, Wolf G, Bohme B, Bleyl U, Steinborn A. Urokinase plasminogen activator receptor (CD87) expression of tumor-associated macrophages in ductal carcinoma *in situ*, breast cancer, and resident macrophages of normal breast tissue. J Leukoc Biol 1999; 66:40–49.

[41] Hildenbrand R, Dilger I, Horlin A, Stutte HJ. Urokinase and macrophages in tumour angiogenesis. Br J Cancer 1995; 72:818–823.

[42] Davies B, Miles DW, Happerfield LC, Naylor MS, Bobrow LG, Rubens RD, et al. Activity of type IV collagenases in benign and malignant breast disease. Br J Cancer 1993; 67:1126–1131.

[43] Davies B, Waxman J, Wasan H, Abel P, Williams G, Krausz T, et al. Levels of matrixmetalloproteases in bladder cancer correlate with tumor grade and invasion. Cancer Res 1993; 53:5365–5369.

[44] Naylor MS, Stamp GW, Davies BD, Balkwill FR. Expression and activity of MMPS and their regulators in ovarian cancer. Int J Cancer 1994; 58:50–56.
[45] Quinn JMW, McGee J, Athanasou NA. Human tumour associated macrophages differentiate into osteoclastic bone resorbing cells. J Pathol 1998; 184:31–36.
[46] Young MR, Wright MA, Coogan M, Young ME, Bagash J. Tumor-derived cytokines induce bone marrow suppressor cells that mediate immunosuppression through transforming growth factor beta. Cancer Immunol Immunother 1992; 35:14–18.
[47] Metzger Z, Hoffeld JT, Oppenheim JJ. Macrophage-mediated suppression. I. Evidence for participation of both hydrogen peroxide and prostaglandins in suppression of murine lymphocyte proliferation. J Immunol 1980; 124:983–988.
[48] Akdis CA, Blaser K. IL-10-induced anergy in peripheral T cell and reactivation by microenvironmental cytokines: Two key steps in specific immunotherapy. FASEB J 1999; 13:603–609.
[49] Shih JY, Yuan A, Chen JJW, Yang PC. Tumor-associated macrophage: Its role in cancer invasion and metastasis. J Cancer Mol 2006; 2:101–105.
[50] Migita T, Sato E, Saito K, Mizoi T, Shiiba K-I, Matsuno S, et al. Differing expression of MMPs-1 and 9 and urokinase receptor between diffuse and intestinal type gastric carcinoma. Int J Cancer 1999; 84:74–79.
[51] Kerr KM, Johnson SK, King G, Kennedy MM, Weir J, Jeffrey R. Partial regression in primary carcinoma of the lung: Does it occur? Histopathology 1998; 33:55–63.
[52] Funada Y, Noguchi T, Kikuchi R, Takeno S, Uchida Y, Gabbert HE. Prognostic significance of CD8 + T cell and macrophage peritumoral infiltration in colorectal cancer. Oncol Rep 2003; 10:309–313.
[53] Welsh TJ, Green RH, Richardson D, Waller DA, O'Byrne KJ, Bradding P. Macrophage and mast-cell invasion of tumor cell islets confers a marked survival advantage in non–small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 2005; 23:8959–8967.
[54] Ohno S, Inagawa H, Dhar DK, Fujii T, Ueda S, Tachibana M, et al. The degree of macrophage infiltration into the cancer cell nest is a significant predictor of survival in gastric cancer patients. Anticancer Res 2003; 23:5015–5022.
[55] Mantovani A. Tumor-associated macrophages in neoplastic progression: A paradigm for the *in vivo* function of chemokines. Lab Invest 1994; 71(1):5–16.
[56] Tartour E, Fridman WH. Cytokines and cancer. Int Rev Immunol 1998; 16:683–704.
[57] Bonta IL, Ben-Efraim S, Mozes T, Fieren MW. Tumour necrosis factor in inflammation: Relation to other mediators and to macrophage antitumour defence. Pharmacol Res 1991; 24:115–130.
[58] Martin JH, Edwards SW. Changes in mechanisms of monocyte/macrophage-mediated cytotoxicity during culture. Reactive oxygen intermediates are involved in monocyte-mediated cytotoxicity, whereas reactive nitrogen intermediates are employed by macrophages in tumor cell killing. J Immunol 1993; 150:3478–3486.
[59] Albina JE, Reichner JS. Role of nitric oxide in mediation of macrophage cytotoxicity and apoptosis. Cancer Metastasis Rev 1998; 17:39–53.
[60] Chambers VC, Weiser RS. The ultrastructure of sarcoma I cells and immune macrophages during their interaction in the peritoneal cavities of immune C57BL-6 mice. Cancer Res 1972; 32:413–419.
[61] Dingemans KP, Pels E, Den-Otter W. Destruction of murine lymphoma cells by allogeneic immune peritoneal macrophages *in vitro*: An ultrastructure study. J Nat Cancer Inst 1981; 66:67–79.
[62] Cui S, Reichner JS, Mateo RB, Albina JE. Activated murine macrophages induce apoptosis in tumor cells through nitric oxide-dependent or -independent mechanisms. Cancer Res 1994; 54:2462–2467.

[63] Onodera S, Suzuki K, Matsuno T, Kaneda K, Takagi M, Nishihira J. Macrophage migration inhibitory factor induces phagocytosis of foreign particles by macrophages in autocrine and paracrine fashion. Immunology 1997; 92:131–137.
[64] Pozzi LM, Weiser WY. Human recombinant migration inhibitory factor activates human macrophages to kill tumour cells. Cell Immunol 1992; 145:372–379.
[65] Kamimura A, Kamachi M, Nishihira J, Ogura S, Isobe H, Dosaka-Akita H, et al. Intracellular distribution of macrophage migration inhibitory factor predicts the prognosis of patients with adenocarcinoma of the lung. Cancer 2000; 89:334–341.
[66] Shinohara H, Yano S, Bucana CD, Fidler IJ. Induction of chemokine secretion and enhancement of contact-dependent macrophage cytotoxicity by engineered expression of granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor in human colon cancer cells. J Immunol 2000; 164:2728–2737.
[67] Narvaiza I, Mazzolini G, Barajas M, Duarte M, Zaratiegui M, Qian C, et al. Intratumoral coinjection of two adenoviruses, one encoding the chemokine IFN-gamma-inducible protein-10 and another encoding IL-12, results in marked antitumoral synergy. J Immunol 2000; 164:3112–3122.
[68] Mantovani A, Sica A, Sozzani S, Allavena P, Vecchi A, Locati M. The chemokine system in diverse forms of macrophage activation and polarization. Trends Immunol 2004; 25:677–686.
[69] Coussens LM, Werb Z. Inflammation and cancer. Nature 2000; 420:860–867.
[70] Leek RD, Hunt NC, Landers RJ, Lewis CE, Royds JA, Harris AL. Macrophage infiltration is associated with VEGF and EGFR expression in breast cancer. J Pathol 2000; 190:430–436.
[71] Ono M, Toris H, Fukushi J, Nishie A, Kuwano M. Biological implications of macrophage infiltration in human tumor angiogenesis. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol 1999; 43:S69–S71.
[72] Vacca A, Ribatti D, Ruco L, Giacchetta F, Nico B, Quondamatteo F, et al. Angiogenesis extent and macrophage density increase simultaneously with pathological progression in B-cell non-Hodgkin's lymphomas. Br J Cancer 1999; 79:965–970.
[73] Folkman J. Clinical applications of research on angiogenesis. N Engl J Med 1995; 333:1757–1763.
[74] Folkman J, Sning Y. Angiogenesis. J Biol Chem 1992; 267:10931–10934.
[75] Weidner N. Intratumor microvessel density as a prognostic factor in cancer. Am J Pathol 1995; 147:9–19.
[76] Weidner N, Semple JP, Welch WR, Folkman J. Tumor angiogenesis and metastasis correlation in invasive breast carcinoma. N Engl J Med 1991; 324:1–8.
[77] Macchiarini P, Gonatanini G, Hardin MJ, Squartini F, Angiletti GA. Relation of neovascularization to metastasis of non-small cell lung cancer. Lancet, 1992; 340:145–146.
[78] Fidler IJ, Ellis LM. The implication of angiogenesis for the biology and therapy of cancer metastasis. Cell 1994; 79:185–188.
[79] Hanahan D, Folkman J. Patterns and merging mechanisms of the angiogenic switch during tumorigenesis. Cell 1996; 86:353–364.
[80] Friesel RE, Maciag T. Molecular mechanisms of angiogenesis: Fibroblast growth factor signal. FASEB J 1995; 9:919–925.
[81] Olofsson B, Pajusola K, Kaipainen A, von Euler G, Joukov V, Saksela O, et al. Vascular endothelial growth factor B, a novel growth factor for endothelial cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1996; 93:2576–2581.
[82] Chen JJW, Yao P-L, Yuan A, Hong TM, Shun CT, Kuo ML, et al. Up-regulation of tumor interleukin-8 expression by infiltrating macrophages: Its correlation with tumor angiogenesis and patient survival in non-small cell lung cancer. Clin Cancer Res 2003; 9:729–737.

[83] Liss C, Fekete MJ, Hasina R, Lam CD, Lingen MW. Paracrine angiogenic loop between head-and-neck squamous-cell carcinomas and macrophages. Int J Cancer 2001; 93:781–785.
[84] Torisu H, Ono M, Kiryu H, Furue M, Ohmoto Y, Nakayama J, et al. Macrophage infiltration correlates with tumor stage and angiogenesis in human malignant melanoma: Possible involvement of TNF-alpha and IL-1-alpha. Int J Cancer 2000; 85:182–188.
[85] Yao PL, Lin YC, Wang CH, Huang YC, Liao WY, Wang SS, et al. Autocrine and paracrine regulation of IL-8 expression in lung cancer cells. Am J Respir Cell Mol Biol 2005; 32:540–547.
[86] Yoshida S, Ono M, Shono T, Izumi H, Ishibashi T, Suzuki H, et al. Involvement of interleukin-8, vascular endothelial growth factor, and basic fibroblast growth factor in tumor necrosis factor alpha-dependent angiogenesis. Mol Cell Biol 1997; 17:4015–4023.
[87] Anderson IC, Mari SE, Broderick RJ, Mari BP, Shipp M. The angiogenic factor interleukin 8 is induced in non-small cell lung cancer/pulmonary fibroblast cocultures. Cancer Res 2000; 60:269–272.
[88] Hoffmann E, Dittrich-Breiholz O, Holtmann H, Kracht M. Multiple control of interleukin-8 gene expression. J Leukoc Biol 2000; 72:847–855.
[89] Kalluri R, Zeisberg M. Fibroblasts in cancer. Nat Rev Cancer 2006; 6(5):392–401.
[90] Chen JJW, Wu R, Yang PC, Huang JY, Sher YP, Han MH, et al. Profiling expression patterns and isolating differentially expressed genes by cDNA microarray system with colorimetry detection. Genomics 1998; 51:313–324.
[91] Salgado R, Junius S, Benoy I, Van Dam P, Vermeulen P, Van Marck E, et al. Circulating interleukin-6 predicts survival in patients with metastatic breast cancer. Int J Cancer 2003; 103:642–646.
[92] Montuori N, Mattiello A, Mancini A, Taglialatela P, Caputi M, Rossi G, et al. Urokinase-mediated posttranscriptional regulation of urokinase-receptor expression in non-small cell lung carcinoma. Int J Cancer 2003; 105:353–360.
[93] Wascher RA, Huynh KT, Giuliano AE, Hansen NM, Singer FR, Elashoff D, et al. Stanniocalcin-1: A novel molecular blood and bone marrow marker for human breast cancer. Clin Cancer Res 2003; 9:1427–1435.
[94] Dosquet C, Coudert MC, Lepage E, Cabane J, Richard F. Are angiogenic factors, cytokines, and soluble adhesion molecules prognostic factors in patients with renal cell carcinoma? Clin Cancer Res 1997; 3:2451–2458.
[95] Shiozawa J, Ito M, Nakayama T, Nakashima M, Kohno S, Sekine I. Expression of matrix metalloproteinase-1 in human colorectal carcinoma. Mod Pathol 2000; 13:925–933.
[96] Baltathakis I, Alcantara O, Boldt DH. Expression of different NF-κB pathway genes in dendritic cells (DCs) or macrophages assessed by gene expression profiling. J Cell Biochem 2001; 83:281–290.
[97] Kelly RW, King AE, Critchley HOD. Cytokine control in human endometrium. Reproduction 2001; 121:3–19.
[98] Giovannucci E, Egan KM, Hunter DJ, Stampfer MJ, Colditz GA, Willett WC, et al. Aspirin and the risk of colorectal cancer in women. N Engl J Med 1995; 333:609–614.
[99] Harris RE, Namboodiri KK, Farrar WB. Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs and breast cancer. Epidemiology 1996; 7:203–205.
[100] Keifer JA, Guttridge DC, Ashburner BP, Baldwin AS, Jr. Inhibition of NF-kB activity by thalidomide through suppression of IkB kinase activity. J Biol Chem 2001; 276:22382–22387.
[101] Liu SF, Ye X, Malik AB. Inhibition of NFκB activation by pyrrolidine dithiocarbamate prevents *in vivo* expression of proinflammatory genes. Circulation 1999; 100:1330–1337.

[102] Yoo CG, Lee S, Lee CT, Kim YW, Han SK, Shim YS. Effect of acetylsalicylic acid on endogenous IκB kinase activity in lung epithelial cells. Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol 2001; 280:L3–L9.
[103] Mukaida N, Morita M, Ishikawa Y, Rice N, Okamoto S, Kasahara T, et al. Novel mechanism of glucocorticoid-mediated gene repression. Nuclear factor-kappa B is target for glucocorticoid-mediated interleukin 8 gene repression. J Biol Chem 1994; 269:13289–13295.
[104] Chang MMJ, Juarez M, Hyde DM, Wu R. Mechanism of dexamethasone-mediated interleukin-8 gene suppression in cultured airway epithelial cells. Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol 2001; 280:L107–L115.
[105] Hsu AL, Ching TT, Wang DS, Song X, Rangnekar VM, Chen CS, et al. The cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitor celecoxib induces apoptosis by blocking Akt activation in human prostate cancer cells independently of Bcl-2. J Biol Chem 2000; 275:11397–11403.
[106] Dirkx AEM, Egbrink GAO, Wagstaff J, Griffioen AW. Monocyte/macrophage infiltration in tumors: Modulators of angiogenesis. J Leukoc Biol 2006; 80:1183–1196.
[107] Bingle L, Brown NJ, Lewis CE. The role of tumor-associated macrophages in tumor progression: Implications for new anticancer therapies. J Pathol 2002; 196:254–265.
[108] Wahl LM, Kleinman HK. Tumor-associated macrophages as targets for cancer therapy. J Natl Cancer Inst 1998; 90:1583–1584.
[109] Klimp AH, de Vreies EGF, Scherphof GL, Daemen T. A potential role of macrophage activation in the treatment of cancer. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol 2002; 44:143–161.
[110] Asano T, Kleinerman ES. Liposome-encapsulated MTP-PE: A novel biologic agent for cancer therapy. J Immunother 1993; 14:286–292.
[111] Nagler A, Shur I, Barak V, Fabian I. Granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor dependent monocyte-mediated cytotoxicity post-autologous bone marrow transplantation. Leuk Res 1996; 20:637–643.
[112] Andreesen R, Scheibenbogen C, Brugger W, Krause S, Meerpohl HG, Leser HG, et al. Adoptive transfer of tumor cytotoxic macrophages generated *in vitro* from circulating blood monocytes: A new approach to cancer immunotherapy. Cancer Res 1990; 50:7450–7456.
[113] Hennemann B, Scheibenbogen C, Andreesen R. Biological response to intrahepatic adoptive immunotherapy with autologous interferon activated macrophages. Eur J Cancer 1995; 31A:852.
[114] Faradji A, Bohbot A, Frost H, Schmitt-Goguel M, Siffert JC, Dufour P, et al. Phase I study of liposomal MTP-PE-activated autologous monocytes administered intraperitoneally to patients with peritoneal carcinomatosis. J Clin Oncol 1991; 9:1251–1260.
[115] Dranoff G, Jaffee E, Lazenby A, Golumbek P, Levitsky H, Brose K, et al. Vaccination with irradiated tumor cells engineered to secrete murine granulocyte macrophage colony-stimulating factor stimulates potent, specific, and long-lasting anti-tumor immunity. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1993; 90:3539–3543.
[116] Sanda MG, Ayyagari SR, Jaffee EM, Epstein JI, Clift SL, Cohen LK, et al. Demonstration of a rational strategy for human prostate cancer gene therapy. J Urol 1994; 151:622–628.
[117] Morita T, Ikeda K, Douzono M, Yamada M, Kimura F, Kawakami K, et al. Tumor vaccination with macrophage colony-stimulating factor-producing Lewis lung carcinoma in mice. Blood 1996; 88:955–961.
[118] Dong Z, Greene G, Pettaway C, Dinney CP, Eue I, Lu W, et al. Suppression of angiogenesis, tumorigenicity, and metastasis by human prostate cancer cells engineered to produce interferon-beta. Cancer Res 1999; 59:872–879.

[119] Soiffer R, Lynch T, Mihm M, Jung K, Rhuda C, Schmollinger JC, et al. Vaccination with irradiated autologous melanoma cells engineered to secrete human granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor generates potent antitumor immunity in patients with metastatic melanoma. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1998; 95:13141–13146.

[120] Simons JW, Jaffee EM, Weber CE, Levitsky HI, Nelson WG, Carducci MA, et al. Bioactivity of autologous irradiated renal cell carcinoma vaccines generated by *ex vivo* granulocyte- macrophage colony-stimulating factor gene transfer. Cancer Res 1997; 57:1537–1546.

[121] Nabel GJ, Gordon D, Bishop DK, Nickoloff BJ, Yang ZY, Aruga A, et al. Immune response in human melanoma after transfer of an allogeneic class I major histocompatibility complex gene with DNA–liposome complexes. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1996; 93:15388–15393.

[122] Mahvi DM, Sondel PM, Yang NS, Albertini MR, Schiller JH, Hank J, et al. Phase I/IB study of immunization with autologous tumor cells transfected with the GM-CSF gene by particle-mediated transfer in patients with melanoma or sarcoma. Hum Gene Ther 1997; 8:875–891.

[123] Lei H, Ju DW, Yu Y, Tao Q, Chen G, Gu S, et al. Induction of potent antitumor response by vaccination with tumor lysate-pulsed macrophages engineered to secrete macrophage colony-stimulating factor and interferon-gamma. Gene Ther 2000; 7:707–713.

[124] Bartholeyns J, Lopez M. Immune control of neoplasia by adoptive transfer of macrophages: Potentiality for antigen presentation and gene transfer. Anticancer Res 1994; 14:2673–2676.

[125] Huang S, Xie K, Bucana CD, Ullrich SE, Bar-Eli M. Interleukin 10 suppresses tumor growth and metastasis of human melanoma cells: Potential inhibition of angiogenesis. Clin Cancer Res 1996; 2:1969–1979.

[126] Griffiths L, Binley K, Iqball S, Kan O, Maxwell P, Ratcliffe P, et al. The macrophage—a novel system to deliver gene therapy to pathological hypoxia. Gene Ther 2000; 7:255–262.

This page intentionally left blank

INDEX

A

Abnormal pregnancies, inhibin in, 13–14
Activin A, 3–4
  clinical applications, 15
  concentration in gestational diseases, 14
  in ovulation induction and inhibins, 8–9
  in pre eclampsia, 14–15
  in women with PCOS, 10–11
Activin AB, 3
Activin [B, C, D, E], 3–4, 6
Acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL), 62
Adjuvant docetaxel *versus* epirubicin-bsed regimen trial (ADEBAR trial), 40
Adrenalectomy in cancer patients, 117
Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), 100, 108, 110
α1-Adrenoreceptors, 102
AGO guidelines, for breast cancer, 40–41
Alexa dyes, 58
Allele-specific primer extension (ASPE) process, 61
Alzheimer's disease (AD)
  and dementia
    diagnosis of, 140
    therapeutic strategies for, 141
  high gonadotropin and low estrogen level in, 144–147
  pathogenic mechanisms of, 141–142
  prevalence and sex steroids role in, 142–144
Amenorrhoea in women, 10
γ-Aminobutyric acid (GABA), 109–110
Amyloid-β protein (Aβ), 141
Amyloid-β protein precursor (AβPP), 142
Anemia, 111–112
Angiogenesis, 31
  definition of, 210
Anorexia, 120
Anthracycline-based chemotherapy, 40
Anthracycline-docetaxel based chemotherapy, 32, 40
Antibody profiling, 63
Antigen-presenting cells (APCs), 82, 162, 168, 172
Antineoplastic chemotherapy, 10
Antioxidant, and brain function, 107–108
Anxiety, 103, 106, 113, 116
Apoptosis, 65, 88, 94, 116, 121
Appetite, and brain function, 114
Arachidonic acid, 105
Areflexia, 111
Arylformamidase (AF) in Trp degradation pathway, 159
Ascorbic acid, 110
Assay standardization and validation, 91. *See also* Quality assurance (QA) and quality control (QC) program
Asthma, 112
Astroglial 5-HT2A receptor, 105
Ataxia, 111. *See also* Vitamin B_{12}, physiological effects of
Autoimmune oophoritis, 10
Azoospermia, 18

B

Basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF), 210
4-1BB-mediated IDO induction, 163–164
Bcl-2 proteins family, 65
Bead-based arrays formats, 53–54
Bin1-Amphiphysin2 gene, 177
Binge eating disorder, 120
BODIPY dyes, 58
Brain function
  appetite and, 114
  dietary modification and, 99–121
  emotion and, 114–115
  glucocorticoids and, 116–118
  meal composition and
    antioxidant, 107–108
    carbohydrate, 102–103
    fat, 103–106
    minerals and trace elements, 111–113
    phytochemicals, 108

Brain function (*cont.*)
protein, 106–107
vitamins, 108–111
meal frequency and, 113
meal size and, 113, 122
metabolic acidosis and, 115–116
monoamine and, 118–119
stress and, 119–122
Breast cancer
AGO guidelines for, 40–41
Chemo N0 trial, 34–37, 41
clinical therapy trials, 34–42
MINDACT, 42
NNBC-3 clinical trial, 32, 37–41
TAILORx, 42
uPA and PAI-1 in
clinical decision making, 40–42
clinical relavance of, 31, 33–36
predictive impact, 35–36
prognostic impact of, 34–35
Bulimia nervosa, 120

C

Calcium homeostasis, 115
Cancer. *See* Breast cancer
Cancer cells and TAMs interactions, effects of, 201
Carbohydrate, and brain function, 102–103
Cardiac arrhythmias, 112
Cardiac risk assessment system, 52
β-Carotene, 108
Catecholamines, 116
CD4+ and CD8+ T cells, 82–84
Cell-based microarrays, 51
Cells thawing, 79–80, 82
Central nervous system
importance of folate in, 109
omega-3 deficiency effect on, 106
oxidative stress effects on, 107
Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), 166
Chemo N0 clinical trial, 34–37, 41
Chromogranins B (CGB), 104–105
Chronic metabolic acidosis (CMA), 115–116
Chronic mild stress model, 120
Clomiphene citrate challenge test, 12
CMF chemotherapy, 35–36
Cobalamin, 108, 111
Cognitive and motor disability, 111
Cognitive impairment and dementia, 140–141
Colony stimulation factor-1 (CSF-1), 215
Colorectum cancer, 33
Corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH), 100
Cortisol, 100–107, 110, 114–122
CpG oligodeoxynucleotides in IDO induction, 163
Cretinism, 111
Cryopreservation, in immune monitoring, 79, 82, 90
CTLA-4-Fc fusion protein, role in IDO induction, 162
Cushing's syndrome, 117
Cutaneous sensation loss, 111. *See also* Vitamin B_{12}, physiological effects of
Cyanins dyes, 58
Cyclophosphamide, 35, 40
Cysteine-amino acid-cysteine (CXC), 210
Cystic fibrosis transmembrane regulator (CFTR) gene, 61
Cytidyl guanosyl (CpG), 163
Cytokine flow cytometry (CFC) assays, in immune monitoring, 82–84, 88
Cytokines, 76
immune biomarkers profiling in, 85–86
profiling, 63
Cytolytic T-lymphocyte antigen-4 (CTLA-4), 162

D

Dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA), 143
Delayed-type hypersensitivity (DTH) test, 93
Dementia. *See also* Vitamin B_{12}, physiological effects of
causes and symptoms of, 140
hormone replacement therapy for, 145
treatment strategies for, 141
Dendritic cell-based vaccines, 76
Dendritic cells (DCs), 161
Depression, 104–106, 109–110, 113, 117. *See also* Meal composition, and brain function
Dietary modification, and brain function, 99–122
Docosahexaenoic acid (DHA), 104–105
Dopamine, 105–106, 109–110, 112, 119. *See also* Polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs)
Down's syndrome, 2, 16–17

E

E. coli, 65
Eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA), 104–106
Electrophoretic mobility shift assay, 212
ELISpot assays, 62
Emotions, and brain function, 114–115
EMSA. *See* Electrophoretic mobility shift assay
Endotoxin lipopolysaccharides, 103
Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA), 34–37, 41, 50, 62, 86
Enzyme-linked immunospot (ELISPOT) assays, in immune monitoring, 82–84
Epidermal growth factor (EGF), 7, 203
Epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), 210
Epinephrine, 119
Epirubicin, 40
Epitope profiling, 63
Esophagus cancer, 33
Estradiol, 8–12
Estrogen, role in AD pathogenesis, 139, 143–145
Extracellular receptor kinase (ERK), 147

F

Fat
  and brain function, 103–106
  monounsaturated fatty acids, 104
  polyunsaturated fatty acids, 104–106
$FE_{100}C$ chemotherapy, 40
Fibrinolytic system. *See* Plasminogen activator system
Flow cytometry
  based assays, 50
  high-content profiling applications, 59–67
    multiplex assays of molecular assemblies, 64–66
    multiplexed nucleic acid endpoint assays, 61–62
    multiplexed protein endpoint assays, 62–63
    multiplexing for suspension arrays principles, 59–61
    throughput, 66–67
  immune biomarkers profiling in, 88–89
  multiplexed bead-based applications, 63
  and suspension arrays, 53–56
Fluorescein, 58
Fluorescence technology, 56–59
5-Fluorouracil, 35, 40
Folate, in central nervous system, 109
Folic acid, 108–109
Follicle stimulating hormone (FSH), 2–4, 145
  in GnRH-deficient women
    inhibins control by, 8
  induced inhibin secretion, 7
  secretory profiles of, 7
Follistatin-related gene (FLRG) product, 4
Free fatty acid (FFA), 102, 104
Freshly harvested specimens, in immune monitoring, 82. *See also* Immune monitoring assays
FSHβ mRNA levels, 6
FSH radioimmunoassay (RIA), 3

G

Garlic extracts, preventive effects of, 108
Gene expression
  changes in cancer cells, 213–214
  mechanism in TAMs, 211–212
Genomics, immune biomarkers profiling in, 86–87
Glucocorticoids (GC) hormone, 100
  and brain function, 116–118
Gluconeogenesis, 117
Glycogenolysis, adrenaline-induced, 100
GM-CSF. *See* Granulocyte macrophage colony stimulating factor
GM-CSF therapy for tumor treatment, 215
GnRH-deficient women, inhibin B control by FSH in, 8
GnRH-induced FSH secretion, 6
Gonadotropin releasing hormone (GnRH), 145
Gonadotropins, role in AD pathogenesis, 139–140, 144–146
Good laboratory practice (GLP), 76, 78, 89–90, 94
Granulocyte macrophage colony stimulating factor, 203
Granulosa cell tumor, 2

H

HER2 oncoprotein, 34
High-content cellular imaging, 52–53

Hippocampus and Alzheimer's disease, 141
Hormone replacement therapy (HRT) for AD, 143–144
HPG axis and feedback loop, 145
Human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG), 13–16
Human papillomaviruses (HPV), 62
Human reproduction
  inhibins diagnostic markers in, 1–19
  men's reproductive function, 17–19
  pregnancy, 6–12
  women's reproductive function, 6–12
Hybrid bead-based systems and planar arrays, 49–52
3-Hydroxyanthranilic acid oxidase (3HAO), 158
5-Hydroxyindoleacetic acid, 118
5-Hydroxytryptamine (5-HT)1A receptors, 103
5-Hydroxytryptophan, 118
Hyperactive reflexes, 111. *See also* Vitamin B_{12}, physiological effects of
Hypercholesterolemia, causes of, 107
Hypercortisolemia, symptoms of, 117
Hyperphagia, 118. *See also* Glucocorticoids (GC) hormone
Hypertriglyceridemia, 107. *See also* Hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal, activation of
Hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA), activation of, 100
Hypothalamic-pituitary-gonadal axis (HPG), 145
Hypothyroidism, 111. *See also* Iodine, and brain function

I

IFN-γ, 86
  in cardiovascular disease development, 182
  in IDO induction, 162, 165
IFN regulatory factor (IRF), 161
IGF-binding protein-2/3 (IGFBP-2/3), 12
IGF-I, 12
IGF-II, 12
IL-2, 86
IL-4, 86
IL-5, 86
IL-10, 86
IL-8 expression in cocultures, 211–212
IL-8. *See* Interleukin-8
Immune biomarkers, profiling in
  genomics and proteomics, 86–87
  multiplexing for cytokines, 85–86
  polychromatic flow cytometry, 88–89
Immune monitoring. *See also* Immune monitoring assays
  assays available for adaptation to, 80–81
  clinical trials schema for, 95
  of clinical trials with biotherapies, 75–95
  future of, 94–95
  QA and QC program, 89–91, 94
  rationale for, 78–80
  requirements, 79–80
  significance, 80
  technologies available for adaptation to, 77–78
Immune monitoring assays
  attributes of, 84–85
  CFC, 82–84
  cryopreserved and freshly harvested specimens, 82
  discrepancies in interpretation, 93–94
  ELISPOT, 82–84
  and immune biomarkers, 85–89
  interpretation, 91–94
  QA and QC program and, 89–91, 94
  selection of, 80–85
  single-cell assays, 82–84
  statistical analysis, 92–93
  tetramers, 82–84
Immunoneutralization, of activin B, 6
Immunotherapy, approaches of, 214–215
Indo gene, molecular biology of, 160–161
Indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase (IDO), 156
  biochemistry of, 160–162
  defensive behavior against pathogens, 167
  in depression pathogenesis, 183–184
  expression of
    autoimmune diseases, 179–180
    cancer immune evasion, 176–179
    transplantation, 180–181
  in fetus rejection during pregnancy, 174–175
  immunosuppressive effects, 167–174
  induction of, 162–164
  inhibitor and chemotherapeutic drugs combination, effects of, 178–179
  mediated suppression by
    innate and adaptive immunity, 168–171
    mechanism of, 171–174
  in Trp degradation pathway, 157–160

Inhibin A, 2–3. *See also* Inhibins
clinical applications of measurement of, 15
concentration in gestational diseases, 14
ovarian production of, 9
POF and, 10
in pre eclampsia, 14–15
in women with PCOS, 10–11
Inhibin B, 2–3. *See also* Inhibins
concentration in
men's reproductive function, 18–19
women's reproductive function, 7–8
control by FSH in GnRH-deficient women, 8
ovarian production of, 9
POF and, 10
in women with PCOS, 10–11
Inhibins
concept and history of, 2–5
diagnostic markers in human reproduction, 1–19
in men's reproductive function, 17–19
in pregnancy
abnormal pregnancies, 13–14
Down's syndrome, 16–17
pre-eclampsia, 14–16
in women's reproductive function
and activin A in ovulation induction, 8–9
and activin in polycystic ovary syndrome, 10–11
control by FSH in GnRH-deficient women, 8
effects on pituitary FSH secretion, 6–7
during menstrual cycle, 7–8
premature ovarian failure, 9–10
reproductive aging and, 11–12
Insulin-induced hypoglycemia, 100
Insulin-like growth factor (IGF), 7
Insulin resistance, 101, 107, 120
Intellectual performance, iodine impact on, 111
Interferon (IFN), 156
Interferon-stimulated response elements (ISRE), 164, 165
Interleukin-8, 202
Intestinal calcium absorption, 115
In vitro fertilization (IVF), 9
Iodine, and brain function, 111
IRF-1 in IDO induction, 164
Iron, and brain function, 111–112
Ischemic heart disease, 112

K

Kidney cancer, 33
Kynurenine aminotransferase (KAT), 158
Kynurenine 3-hydroxylase (K3H), 158
Kynurenines in human biological fluids, measurement of, 164–166
Kynurenines pathway
in autoimmune diseases treatment, 179–180
cardiovascular disease and, 182
HIV immunoescape by, 181–182
immune modulatory functions of, 173–174
immunosuppressive effect of, 168
clinical implications of, 176–184
measurement, in cancer patients, 178
neurological and psychiatric diseases and, 183–184
and nitric oxide, 166–167
role in pregnancy, 175
in Trp degradation, 157–160

L

Large neutral amino acids (LNAAs), 119
Leuprolide acetate treatment and LH reduction, 147
Level of evidence (LOE-I), 32, 34, 36
Limbio ataxia, 111
α-Linolenic acid, dietary deficiency in, 105
Lipopolysaccharide (LPS) in IDO expression, 164
Liver cancer, 33
L-tryptophan, 118–119, 122
Lung cancer, 33
Luteinizing hormone (LH), 2, 7, 145
in AD pathogenesis, 146–147
Luteinizing hormone receptors (LHR), 145

M

Macrophage colony stimulating factor (M-CSF), 168, 204
Macrophages
chemotactic proteins, 201
function of, 205
infiltration and tumor-associated angiogenesis, 202
role of, 200–201
Magnesium, and brain function, 111–112
Matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs), 203–204

Meal composition, and brain function, 101–113
  antioxidant, 107–108
  carbohydrate, 102–103
  fat, 103–106
  minerals and trace elements, 111–113
  phytochemicals, 108
  protein, 106–107
  vitamins, 108–111
Meal frequency, and brain function, 113
Meal size, and brain function, 113, 122
Mean fluorescence intensity (MFI), 88
Memory loss, 108–111, 113, 116, 118. *See also* Vitamin B_{12}, physiological effects of
Menstrual cycle, inhibins during, 7–8
Metabolic acidosis, and brain function, 115–116
Methotrexate, 35
Microarray In Nodenegative Disease may Avoid Chemo Therapy (MINDACT), 42
Microchip-based immunoassay systems, 51
Microvessel count (MVC), 202
Microvessel density (MVD), 202
Migration inhibitory factor (MIF), 203
Minerals, and brain function, 111–113
  iodine, 111
  iron, 111–112
  magnesium, 112
  zinc, 112–113
Mitogen activated protein kinase (MAPK), 147
MMP-9, activities of, 204
Molecular assemblies, multiplex assays of, 64–66
Molecular equivalents of soluble fluorochrome (MESF) units, 88
Monoamine, and brain function, 118–119
Mononuclear phagocytes, function of, 208
Monounsaturated fatty acids (MFAs), and brain function, 104
Morris water maze performance, 108
Multiparametric analysis, 48
Multiple analyte profiling
  high-content cellular imaging, 52–53
  planar arrays and hybrid bead-based systems, 49–52
  suspension arrays and flow cytometry, 53–56
Multiplex assays of molecular assemblies, 64–66
Multiplex bead sets, 59–60
Multiplex cytokine analysis, 50
Multiplexed bead-based analysis, 62
Multiplexed nucleic acid endpoint assays, 61–62
Multiplexed protein endpoint assays, 62–63
Multiplexing for suspension arrays principles, 59–61

N

Natural killer (NK) cells, 77, 163
  kynurenine induced inhibition of, 169
Neuroendocrine stress, 100, 103. *See also* Fat
Neuropsychiatric disorders, 112
Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD), 157
Night eating syndrome, 120
Nitric oxide, role in IDO degradation, 166–167
Nitric oxide synthase (NOS), 166
NKT cells, 77
N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA), 183
Node negative breast cancer 3-trial
  histomorphological risk assessment, 38–39
  tumor biological risk assessment, 39
  and uPA and PAI-1, 32, 37–41
Node-negative primary breast cancer, 32, 36–40
  predictive factors, 41
  prognostic factors, 41
Nonobese diabetic (NOD), 167
Non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC), 203
Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), 214
β-Noradrenergic systems, 114
Norepinephrine, 119
Nucleic acid analysis, 63

O

Oleic acid, 104
Oligonucleotide ligation assays (OLAs) process, 61
Omega-3 deficiency, effect on central nervous system, 106
Oophorectomy, 10
Osteopenia, 115–116
Ovary cancer, 33
Overeating, during stress, 120–121

Ovulation induction, inhibins and activin A in, 8–9
Oxidative stress, 101, 107, 121

P

Paracrine and autocrine, role and effects of, 211–212
Parkinson's disease, 119
Patient prognosis and TAM density association, 201–205
Peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC), 79, 88, 90–91
Peripheral neuropathy, 111
Pharmacodynamic profiling, 63
Phosphoprotein signaling profiles, 53
Phytochemicals, and brain function, 108
Pituitary FSH secretion, inhibins effects on, 6–7
Placebo-controlled trial, in depression treatment, 106, 108, 117
Planar arrays
  formats, 53–54
  and hybrid bead-based systems, 49–52
Planar protein arrays, 51
Plasminogen activator inhibitors type 1 (PAI-1). *See* uPA and PAI-1 in breast cancer
Plasminogen activator inhibitors type 2 (PAI-2), 32
Plasminogen activators uPA. *See* uPA and PAI-1 in breast cancer
Plasminogen activator system, 31–32
Platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF), 203
Polychromatic flow cytometry, immune biomarkers profiling in, 88–89
Polycystic ovary syndrome (PCOS), inhibins and activin in, 2, 10–11
Polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs), 104–106
  and brain function, 104–106
  cerebral gene expression regulation and, 105
Prednisolone, in cancer patients, 118
Pre-eclampsia, 14–16
Pregnancy
  abnormal pregnancies, 13–14
  Down's syndrome, 16–17
  inhibins in, 12–17
  pre-eclampsia, 14–16
Premature ovarian failure (POF), and inhibins, 9–10
Proenzyme plasminogen, 32
Propioception sense, 111
Protein, and brain function, 106–107
Proteomics, immune biomarkers profiling in, 86–87
Protumorigenesis effects and prognosis, TAMs mechanism in, 203–204
Psychological stress, 100–101, 121
Psychoses, 111. *See also* Vitamin B_{12}, physiological effects of

Q

Quality assurance (QA) and quality control (QC) program
  and assay quality, 89–91, 94
  assay standardization, 90–91
  assay validation, 91
  in practice, 89–90
Quantum dots (QDs), 58–59
Quinolinic acid role
  in depression pathogenesis, 183
  in Trp degradation pathway, 159

R

Reproductive aging, and inhibins, 11–12
Restless legs syndrome, 112
Rhodamine dyes, 58

S

S-adenosylmethionine synthesis, 109
Serotonin, in HPA axis regulation, 118
Sertoli cell, 2, 17–19, 33
Severe Combined Immunodeficiency (SCID) mice, 65
Signal transducer and activator of transcription 1 (STAT1), 162
  in IDO induction, 164
Single base chain extensions (SBCE) process, 61
Single-cell assays, in immune monitoring, 76–77, 82–84, 88
Single nucleotide polymorphism (SNP), 48–49
Stomach cancer, 33
Stress
  and brain function, 119–122
  cortisol levels and, 100

Stress (*cont.*)
cortisol protective role during, 120
high-fat diet effects on, 103
meal compositions and, 102
pituitary-adrenal responses to, 100
Stromal macrophage, role of, 206
Surface plasmon resonance imaging, 52
Surrogate markers, 87
Suspension arrays
and flow cytometry, 53–56
principles of multiplexing for, 59–61

T

TAM density in carcinoma patients, high and low islets in, 206
Tau protein, 142
Taxane in chemotherapy, uPA and PAI-1 testing of, 40
T-cell receptor (TCR), 82–83
Tetramers assays, in immune monitoring, 82–84
Th1 and Th2-type cytokines, 86
Thawing of cells, 79–80, 82
Tissue-type plasminogen activator (tPA), 32
Toll-like receptors (TLR), 163
Trace elements, and brain function, 111–113
Transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β), 4, 7, 203
Transgenic rodent models for AD pathogenesis, 142
Trial Assigning IndividuaLized Options for Treatment, Rx (TAILORx), 42
Trier Social Stress Test, 103
Triiodothyronine, role in fetus neurological development, 111
Trophoblastic cells, 16
Trp degradation pathway, kynurenine role in, 157–160
Trp depletion theory, 171–172
Trp 2,3-dioxygenase (TDO), in Trp degradation, 157–160
Trp 5-hydroxylase, role in depression symptomatology, 183
Trp pyrrolase. *See* Trp 2,3-dioxygenase, in Trp degradation
Tryptophanhydroxylase enzyme, 118
Tryptophan (Trp), 102–103, 118–119, 157
Tumor
growth-promoting factors, 205
microenvironment, 208–209
Tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs), 200
activation of, 201, 210
antitumor activity mechanism, 205–208
cancer cell interaction, 211–212
effect
on cancer cells, 209–211
on stromal cells, 213
function of, 201, 205
immunotherapy implication of, 214–215
patient prognosis and density of, 201–205
polarization of, 208–209
procoagulant activity and fibrin deposition of, 203
protumor function of, 204–205
role of, 208, 216
tumoricidal effects of, 205, 209–211
Tumor cell dissemination, 31
Tumor-infiltrating macrophages (TIMs), activation of, 210
Tumor islet TAMs, role and effects of, 206
Tumor marker utility grading system (TMUGS), 34
Tumor microvessel density and TAM density, 202–203
Tumor necrosis factor (TNF), 163

U

uPA and PAI-1 in breast cancer
clinical NNBC-3 trial and, 37–40
clinical relevance, 31, 33–36
determination of, 37
PCR-based mRNA analysis of, 37
predictive impact of, 35–36
prognostic impact of, 34–35
role in tumor invasion and metastasis, 33
system, 32–33
use in clinical decision making, 40–42
Urinary 17-hydroxycorticosteroids, 111
Urokinase-type plasminogen activator, upregulation of (uPA), 204

V

Vascular endothelial cell growth factor (VEGF), 12, 34, 202
Vibration sense, 111

Vitamin B_6, physiological effects of, 109–110
Vitamin B_{12}, physiological effects of, 110
Vitamin C, 108–110
Vitamin E, 111
Vitamins, and brain function, 108
  folic acid, 109
  vitamin B_6, 109–110
  vitamin B_{12}, 110
  vitamin C, 110
  vitamin E, 111

W

Women's Health Initiative Memory Study (WHI), 144
Women's reproductive function, inhibins in. *See also* Inhibins
  and activin A in ovulation induction, 8–9
  and activin in polycystic ovary syndrome, 10–11
  control by FSH in GnRH-deficient women, 8
  effects on pituitary FSH secretion, 6–7
  during menstrual cycle, 7–8
  premature ovarian failure, 9–10
  reproductive aging and, 11–12
Wound healing, 31

Z

Zinc, and brain function, 112–113